

Indology
CONFIDENTIAL

A
Sanskrit Primer

EDWARD DELAVAN PERRY

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS PUBLISHERS
PRIVATE LIMITED • DELHI

Fourth Edition: Delhi, 1936
Reprint: Delhi, 1978, 1982, 1986, 1988, 1992, 1994, 1997, 1999, 2004

© MOTILAL BANARSIDASS PUBLISHERS PRIVATE LIMITED
All Rights Reserved

ISBN: 81-208-0206-3 (Cloth)
ISBN: 81-208-0207-1 (Paper)

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS

41 U.A. Bungalow Road, Jawahar Nagar, Delhi 110 007
8 Mahalaxmi Chamber, 22 Bhulabhai Desai Road, Mumbai 400 026
236, 9th Main III Block, Jayanagar, Bangalore 560 011
120 Royapettah High Road, Mylapore, Chennai 600 004
Sanas Plaza, 1302 Baji Rao Road, Pune 411 002
8 Camac Street, Kolkata 700 017
Ashok Rajpath, Patna 800 004
Chowk, Varanasi 221 001

Printed in India
BY JAINENDRA PRAKASH JAIN AT SHRI JAINENDRA PRESS,
A-45 NARAINA, PHASE-I, NEW DELHI 110 028
AND PUBLISHED BY NARENDRA PRAKASH JAIN FOR
MOTILAL BANARSIDASS PUBLISHERS PRIVATE LIMITED,
BUNGALOW ROAD, DELHI 110 007

Preface to the Edition of 1936.

The Primer, originally published in 1885 by Ginn and Company, Boston, is based upon an excellent little work by Professor Georg Bühler of Vienna: *Leitfaden für den Elementarcursus des Sanskrit, Wien, 1883*. I became acquainted with this book while in Germany, and after using it with a class in Columbia College was convinced of its great practical value. On the other hand it seemed likely to be less useful to classes in America as keeping throughout to the native system of grammar, whereas the admirable Sanskrit Grammar of William Dwight Whitney presented the language in a much more logical and scientific form. It seemed therefore advisable to attempt a combination of Bühler's practical exercises and Whitney's presentation of the actual structure of the language. To this end the book was entirely rewritten for the use of English-speaking students, nothing being retained that did not seem likely to meet the real needs of those for whom it was designed. Occasionally, however, as the book would probably be used by persons who would not have the guidance of a competent teacher, explanations were added which normally would be given by the instructor. In many cases not only the substance but also the actual wording of Whitney's rules was incorporated into the text of the Primer — of course with his consent.

The experiment tried with many misgivings in 1885 may be said to have proved successful, since the book has been in steady demand for fifty years. Two years ago Messrs. Ginn and Company found it no longer practicable for them to continue its publication, and the Columbia University Press agreed to take it over.

In the original preface my deep obligations to Professors Bühler, Whitney and Lanman, and to the first of my former pupils in Sanskrit, Professor A. V. Williams Jackson, likewise to printers in Berlin, Gebrüder Unger (Theodor Grimm), were pressed. Since then Professors H. F. Burton of the University of Rochester, Louis H. Gray of Columbia University, and A. W. Ryder of the University of California, with Dr. Charles J. Ogden of Columbia University, have given me similar and most welcome assistance. My further thanks are due, and most gladly expressed to the two publishing houses mentioned above, who negotiated the transfer of rights with the greatest courtesy and skill.

The book has been carefully revised to remove all still remaining errors.

E. D. P

Columbia University
in the City of New York:
June 2, 1936.

Table of Contents, in systematic grammatical arrangement.

The figures in heavy type refer to paragraphs.

- Introductory suggestions, p. xi.**
- I. Alphabet and Sounds.**
Characters, 1—20. — Classification of Sounds, and Pronunciation, 21—47. — Light and Heavy Syllables, 48. — Accent, 56.
- II. Changes of Sounds. Guṇa and Vṛddhi.**
49—54.
- III. Rules of Euphonic Combination.**
Rules of Vowel Combination, 105, 106, 156—161, 164. — General Laws concerning Finals, 239—242. — Deaspiration, 242. — Transferral of Aspiration, 244, 249, 428. — Surd and Sonant Assimilation, 147, 148, 266, 267. — Combinations of Final *s* and *r*, 95, 117—123, 129. — Conversion of *s* to *ṣ*, p. 27 (note**), 191, 192, 342, 352. — Conversion of *n* to *ṇ*, p. 32 (note**), 166. — Conversion of Dental Mutes to Linguals and Palatals, 149, 150, p. 99 (note), 342. — Combinations of *n*, p. 29 (note), 138—140, 184. — Change of *ch* to *cch*, p. 27 (note*), 165. — Combinations of *m*, p. 29 (note). — Final *ṁ* [and *ṅ*] 184. — Final *k*, *t*, *p*, 266. — Final *t*, 148—151.
- IV. Declension.**
Gender, Number, Case, 83—89. — Case-endings, 90, 91. — Pada-endings, 91, 241.
- V. Substantives and Adjectives.**
Vowel-stems:
Stems in *a*, *m*, *n*., 103, 111. — Stems in *i*, *m*., 113, 115; *n*., 114, 115.

— Stems in *u*, *m*., 128; *n*., 136, 137. — Stems in *i* and *u*, *f*., 185—187. — Stems in *ā*, *ī*, *ū*: (a) Root-words. In *ā*, 212, 213; in *ī*, 189, 212, 214; in *ū*, 197, 212, 214. (b) Derivative Stems, *f*. In *ā*, 162; in *ī*, 183; in *ū*, 198. — Stems in *r*, 201—205, 208. — Stems in Diphthongs: *go*, 209; *nāu*, 211; *rāi*, 277.

Consonant-stems:

General, 237—242. — (a) Root-stems, 243, 244, 246—250. — (b) Derivative Stems. In *as*, *is*, *us*, 252—254. In *an* (*an*, *man*, *van*), 265. — In *in* (*in*, *min*, *vin*), 251. — In *ant* (*ant*, *mant*, *vant*) 256—264. — Perfect Participles in *vāns*, 268. — Comparatives in *yas*, 255.

Irregular Nouns: 269—284.

Comparison, 337—345.

Formation of Feminine-stems, 187, 251, 255, 262—264, 268.

VI. Numerals.

328—336.

VII. Pronouns.

223—236, 285—288, 413.

VIII. Conjugation.

Voice, Tense, Mode, Number, Person, 57—65. — Verbal Adjectives and Nouns, 66—68. Secondary Conjugation, 69—70. — Mode and Tense-stems, 71.

IX. Present-System.

Conjugation Classes, 72—80.

First Conjugation.

General, 383—387.

I. Root-class (Hindu second or *ad*-class), 404—412, 414—429.

II. Reduplicating Class (H. third or *hu*-class), 430—440.

III. Nasal Class (H. seventh or *rudh*-class), 441—446.

IV. *Nu* and *u*-Classes (H. fifth and eighth, or *su* and *tan*-classes), 388—395.

V. *Nā*-Class (H. ninth or *krī*-class), 399—403.

Second, or *a*-Conjugation.

VI. *a*-Class (H. first or *bhū*-class), 92—94, 97—102, 134, 135, 152—154, 178—182, 188, 193—196, 199, 200, 206, 207, 210, 222, 260.

VII. Accented *ā*-Class (Hindu sixth or *tud*-class), 107—110, 152—154 etc. (as for *a*-class).

VIII. *ya*-Class (H. fourth or *div*-class), 124—127, 131—134, 152—155 etc. (as for *a*-class).

IX. Accented *yā*-Class or Passive Conjugation, 168—176, 188, 199, 200, 210, 222.

[Causative and Denominative Conjugation (partly = H. tenth or *cur*-class), 141—146, 152—154 etc. (as for *a*-class); also 215—221.]

X. Perfect-System.

447—471, 474.

Periphrastic Perfect, 472, 473.

XI. Aorist-System.

General, 486. — Simple Aorist: Root-aorist, 487; *a*-aorist, 488. — Reduplicated Aorist, 489, 490. — Sibilant Aorist: *s*-aorist, 491; *iṣ*-aorist, 492; *siṣ*-aorist, 493; *sa*-aorist, 494. — Aorist Passive, 495, 496.

XII. Future-System.

General, 475. — Simple Future, 476—481. — Conditional, 482. — Periphrastic Future, 483—485.

XIII. Verbal Adjectives and Substantives: Participles, Infinitive, Gerund.

Passive Participle in *ta* or *na*, 289—301. — Past Active Participle in *tavant* or *navant*, 302, 303. — Gerunds: Absolutes, 304—313. — Infinitive, 314—322. — Future Passive Participles: Gerundives, 323—327.

XIV. Derivative or Secondary Conjugations.

General, 497. — Passive, 498. — Causative, 507, 508. — Intensive, 499—502. — Desiderative, 503—506. — Denominative, 509, 510.

XV. Periphrastic Conjugation.

Perfect, 472, 473. — Future, 483—485.

XVI. Verbal Prefixes: Adverbs and Prepositions.

81, 82, 167, 190, 395—397.

XVII. Formation of Compound Stems.

Classification, 346—353. — Copulative Compounds, 354—357. — Determinative Compounds, 358; Dependent, 359—361; Descriptive, 362—365. — Secondary Adjective Compounds, 366—370; Possessive, 371—377; with Governed Final Member, 378. — Adjective Compounds as Nouns and Adverbs, 350, 379—381. [Dvandva-compounds, p. 136 (note); Tatpuruṣa-compounds, p. 137 (note **); Karmadhāraya-compounds, p. 137 (note *); Dvigu-compounds, 380; Bahuvrīhi-compounds, p. 142 (note); Avyayībhāva-compounds, 381.]

XVIII. Syntactical Rules.

Position of Modifiers, p. 35 (note). — Repetition of Words, p. 67 (note *). — Agreement of Adjectives, 245. — Force of Cases, 104, 112. — Prepositions with Cases, 82, 130. — *kim* with Instrumental (and Genitive), p. 89 (note). — Construction with Comparatives, 345. — Numerals, 333. — Pronouns, 225, 234—236. — *iti*, p. 47 (note). — Force of Tenses: Present, 96; Imperfect, 182; Perfect, 474; Aorist, 486. — Force of Modes: Imperative, 194—196; Optative, 207. — Causative, 221. — Passive, 177. — Past Passive Participle, 290. — Past Active Participle, 303. — Gerund, 311—313. — Infinitive, 320—322. — Future Passive Participle, 327.

Appendix.

Hindu Names of Letters. — Modern Hindu Accentuation of Sanskrit.

Suggestions for using the Primer.

The Primer can be finished by earnest students in sixteen or seventeen weeks, reckoning three lessons per week, with here and there an hour for review. After that LANMAN'S Sanskrit Reader, an introduction to which this work is partly intended to be, should be taken up. Students are strongly recommended to provide themselves with WHITNEY'S Sanskrit Grammar at the outset.

It seemed advisable to leave the Introduction undivided into lessons, as different teachers may prefer to impart the alphabet, etc., to their scholars at different rates of speed. Some of the exercises for translation may be found rather too long to be completed in one lesson. In such cases it will probably be better, after requiring the translation of only so many sentences as the pupil may reasonably be expected to master in the preparation of one day's lesson, to proceed directly to the next lesson in the following hour, leaving the untranslated sentences for a review.

The vocabularies prefixed to each exercise are not exhaustive, since words which have been treated of immediately before are sometimes omitted from them. The glossaries at the end of the book will, it is hoped, be found complete for the exercises; but the meaning of compound words must in most cases be learned from their elements; and proper names have often been omitted, their Sanskrit forms being discernible from the transliteration.

The table of contents in systematic grammatical arrangement is designed to facilitate the finding of any desired article; it may also be found useful as an outline for a rapid grammatical review.

Arrangement of Vocabularies. The vocabularies are arranged

in strict alphabetic order (see below). All nouns, whether substantives or adjectives, are given in the stem-form. All verb-forms are placed under the root; prepositional compounds of verbs likewise, and not in the alphabetic place of the preposition. Of verbal adjectives and nouns, some important ones have been given in their alphabetic places, but the meaning of most of them must be learned from their respective roots. Pronouns are given generally in the form of the nominative.

Alphabetic Order. The alphabetic order is that given in § 1, but the following points are to be noticed here:

The *visarga* stands next after the vowels; but a *visarga* regarded as equivalent to a sibilant and exchangeable with it has the alphabetic place of that sibilant.

The sign *ñ*, representing "the *anusvāra* of more independent origin", has its place before all the mutes etc.; thus *dañc* and *dañstrā* stand before *dakṣa*.

The sign *m̄*, representing an assimilated *m*, is placed according to its phonetic value. 1. If *m̄*, resulting from the assimilation of *m* to a semivowel, sibilant, or *h*, represent a nasal semivowel or *anusvāra*, then its place is like that of *ñ*. Thus *puñs* comes before *puṇya* and *sañçaya* before *sakrt*. 2. But if *m̄* be the product of *m* assimilated to a mute, representing *ñ*, *ṇ*, *ṅ*, *n*, or *m*, then its place is that of the nasal so represented.

Introduction.

Alphabet.

1. Sanskrit is commonly written in what is called the *Devanāgarī* alphabet. The characters of this, and the European characters which will be used in transliterating them, are as follows:

Vowels.

		short	long
simple	palatal	अ <i>a</i>	आ <i>ā</i>
	labial	इ <i>i</i>	ई <i>ī</i>
	lingual	उ <i>u</i>	ऊ <i>ū</i>
	dental	ऋ <i>r̄</i>	ॠ <i>r̄̄</i>
	diphthongs	palatal	ए <i>e</i> ऐ <i>āi</i>
	labial	ओ <i>o</i> औ <i>āu</i>	

Visarga : *h*.

Anusvāra : *ñ* or *m̄*.

Consonants.

		surd	surd asp.	sonant	sonant asp.	nasal
Mutes	guttural	क <i>k</i>	ख <i>kh</i>	ग <i>g</i>	घ <i>gh</i>	ङ <i>ṅ</i>
	palatal	च <i>c</i>	छ <i>ch</i>	ज <i>j</i>	झ <i>jh</i>	ञ <i>ñ</i>
	lingual	ट <i>t</i>	ठ <i>ṭh</i>	ड <i>ḍ</i>	ढ <i>ḍh</i>	ण <i>ṇ</i>
	dental	त <i>t</i>	थ <i>th</i>	द <i>d</i>	ध <i>dh</i>	न <i>n</i>
	labial	प <i>p</i>	फ <i>ph</i>	ब <i>b</i>	भ <i>bh</i>	म <i>m</i>

Semivowels	{	palatal य y	lingual र r
		dental ल l	labial व v.

Sibilants: palatal श ष; lingual ष ष; dental स s.

Aspiration ह h.

2. The above order is that in which the sounds are catalogued by native grammarians; and European scholars have adopted it as the alphabetic order, for dictionaries, etc. The writing runs from left to right.

3. The theory of the *devanāgarī* mode of writing is syllabic and consonantal. That is, it regards as the written unit, not the simple sound, but the syllable; and further, it regards as the substantial part of the syllable the consonant (or the consonants) preceding the vowel — this latter being merely implied, as is the case with short अ a, except when initial, or, if written, being written by a subordinate sign attached to the consonant.

4. Hence follow these two principles:

A. The forms of the vowel-characters given above are used only when the vowel forms a syllable by itself, or is not combined with a preceding consonant: that is, when it is initial, or preceded by another vowel. In combination with a consonant, other modes of representation are used.

B. If more than one consonant precede a vowel, forming with it a single syllable, their characters must be combined into a single character.

5. According to the Hindu mode of dividing syllables, each syllable must end in a vowel, or *visarga*, or *anusvāra*, except at the end of the word; and as ordinary Hindu usage does not divide the words of a sentence in writing, a final consonant is combined into one syllable with the initial vowel or consonant of the following word, so that a syllable ends in a consonant only at the end of the sentence.

Thus the sentence *kṣetreṣu siktābhir meghānām adbhir dhānyam prarūḍham* — ‘by the water which drops from the clouds upon the fields the grain grows tall’ — would be considered as consisting of the syllables *kṣe tre ṣu si ktā bhi rme ghā nā ma dbhi rdhā nyam pra rū ḍham*. Each of these syllables would be indicated by a single group of signs, without any reference whatever to the division of the words composing the sentence; and the syllables are always written independently, with more or less closeness of approach; either like this:

के चेषु सिक्ताभिर्मैघानामद्भिर्धान्यं प्ररूढम् — or thus: केचेषु-सिक्ताभिर्मैघानामद्भिर्धान्यं प्ररूढम्.

6. In Sanskrit works printed in Europe, the common practice is to separate the words so far as this can be done without any alteration of the written form. Thus, इन्द्राय नमः *indrāya namaḥ*; but तत्सवितुर्वरेण्यम् *tat savitur varenyam*, because the final त् t and र् r are not written with their full forms. But some few works have been printed, in which, by a free use of a sign called *virāma* (see below, § 8), the individual words are separated. In transliterated texts there is no good reason for printing otherwise than with all the words separated.

7. Under A. Vowels combined with preceding consonants are written as follows:

1. a: Short a has no written sign at all; the consonant-sign itself implies a following a, unless some other vowel-sign is attached to it (or else the *virāma* — see below, § 8). Thus the consonant-signs given above are really the signs for ka, kha, ca, cha, etc. (as far as ह ha).
2. ā: का kā. चा cā. धा dhā etc.
3. i and ī: कि ki. पि pi. धि dhi. — की kī. पी pī. धी dhī. The hook above, turning to the left or to the right, is historically the essential part of the character, having been originally

the whole of it; the hooks were only later prolonged, so as to reach all the way down beside the consonant. Observe that the *i*-hooks and the *u*-hooks, respectively above and below the line, are analogous in turning to the left for the short vowel and to the right for the long.

4. *u* and *ū*: कू *ku*. चु *cu*. बु *bu*. — कू *kū*. चू *cū*. भू *bhū*. Owing to the necessities of combination, consonant and vowel-sign are sometimes disguised; thus, दु *du*, दू *dū*; रु *ru*, रू *rū*; हु or ऊ *hu*, हू *hū*.
5. *r* and *r̄*: कृ *kr*. पृ *pr*. — कृ *kṛ*. तृ *tṛ*. With the *h*-sign, the vowel-hook is usually attached to the middle; thus, हृ *hr*. 6. *l*: क्ल *kl*.
7. Diphthongs. *e*: के *ke*. पे *pe*. ये *ye*. *āi*: कै *kāi*. धै *dhāi*.
o: को *ko*. भो *bho*. *āu*: कौ *kāu*. रौ *rāu*.

In some printed texts the signs for *o* and *āu* are separated, the $\bar{\ } \cup$ or $\bar{\ } \wedge$ being placed over the consonant-sign, and not over the perpendicular stroke; thus, को *ko*, कौ *kāu*.

8. A consonant-sign may be made to signify the sound of that consonant alone, without an added vowel, by writing beneath it a stroke called the *virāma* ('rest', 'stop'); thus, क् *k*, ह् *h*, द् *d*. Strictly, the *virāma* should be used only at the end of a sentence; but it is often used by scribes, or in print, in the middle of a word or sentence, to avoid awkward or difficult combinations; thus, लिट्भिः *liṭbhīḥ*, लिट्सु *liṭsu*.

9. Under B. The combinations of consonants are in general not difficult. The perpendicular and horizontal lines are common to almost all; and if two or more are to be combined, the following method is pursued. The characteristic part of a consonant-sign that is to be added to another is taken (to the exclusion of the perpendicular or of the horizontal framing-line, or of both), and they are put together according to convenience, either side by side,

or one above the other: in some combinations either arrangement is allowed. The consonant to be pronounced first is set first in the one arrangement, and above in the other arrangement. Only the consonant at the right of a horizontal group, and that at the top of a perpendicular group, are written in full.

Examples of the horizontal arrangement are:

ग् *gga*, ज् *jja*, प् *pya*, न् *nma*, त् *ttha*, भ् *bhya*, स्क *ska*, ष् *ṣna*.

Examples of the perpendicular arrangement are: क् *kka*, च् *cca*, क् *kva*, ज् *ñja*, प् *pta*, त् *tna*.

10. In some combinations there is more or less abbreviation or disguise of the independent form of a consonant-sign.

Thus, of क् *k* in क्त *kta*; and in कण् *kṇa*, क्य *kya* etc.;

of त् *t* in त्त *tta*;

of द् *d* in द्ग *dga*, द्द *dda*, द्ध *ddha*, द्भ *dbha* etc.;

of म् *m* and य् *y*, when following other consonants

thus, क्य *kya*, क्म *kma*, क्ण *kṇma*, द्म *dma*, द्य *dya*, ह्म *hma*,

ह्य *hya*, थ्य *thya*, ध्य *dhya*;

of श् *ṣ*, which generally becomes ष् when followed by a consonant; thus, च् *ṣca*, ण् *ṣna*, ञ् *ṣṇa*, ष्य *ṣya*.

The same change is usual when a vowel-sign is added below; thus, सु *su*, शृ *ṣṛ*.

11. Other combinations, of not quite obvious value, are ण् *ṇna*, ष्ट *ṣṭa*, ष्ठ *ṣṭha*; and the compounds of ह् *h*, as ह्ण *hṇa*, ह्ण *hna*.

12. In a case or two, no trace of the constituent letters is recognizable; thus, क् *kṣa*, ज् *jña*.

13. The semivowel र् *r*, in making combinations with other consonants, is treated in a wholly peculiar manner, analogous with that of the vowels. 1. As the first of a group of consonants it is written with a hook above, opening to the right (like the subjoined sign of *r*); thus, र्क *rka*, र्प *rpta*. When a compound consonant

thus containing *r* as its first member is followed by one of the vowels *i*, *ī*, *e*, *o*, *āi*, *āu*, with or without a nasal symbol, the *r*-sign must stand at the extreme right; thus, **के** *rke*, **की** *rko*, **कौ** *rkāu*, **किं** *rki*, **कीं** *rkī*, **कं** *rkam*, **कांसि** *rkānsi*, **भीं** *rbbim*.

2. If pronounced after another consonant or consonants, *r* is indicated by a slanting stroke below, to the left; thus, **ग्र** *gra*, **प्र** *pra*, **स्र** *sra*, **द्र** *dra*. And, with modifications of the preceding consonant-sign like those noted above, **त्र** *tra*, **य्र** *gra*. In the middle of a group, *r* has the same sign as at the end; thus, **ग्र्य** *grya*, **स्र्य** *srva*.

3. When **र** *r* is to be combined with a following **च** *r*, it is the vowel which is written in full, with its initial character, and the consonant in subordination to it; thus, **र्च** *rr*, **निर्च** *nirrti*.

14. Combinations of three, four, or even five consonants (this latter excessively rare) are made according to the same rules; thus, **त्त्वा** *ttva*, **द्दद्या** *ddhya*, **द्व** *dvya*, **द्र** *drya*, **प्स्वा** *psva*, **त्स्य** *tsya*, **स्य** *cyca*, **श्थ्या** *sthya*; **न्क्वा** *ñkva*, **श्र** *strya*, **त्स्य** *tsmya*; **त्स्य** *rtsnya*.

15. Both MSS. and type-fonts differ considerably in their management of consonant-combinations, but a little practice will enable one who is thoroughly familiar with the simple signs and with the principles of combination to decipher, as well as to make for himself, all such groups.

16. A sign (¢) called the *avagraha*, or 'separator', is used in printed texts to mark the elision of initial *a* after final *e* or *o* (see below, § 119, 158): thus **ते** *te* 'bruvan'. But some texts, especially those printed in India, dispense with this sign.

In our transliteration this sign will be represented by the inverted comma, as in the example just given. In the MSS. the ¢ is also used as a hyphen, and sometimes as a mark of hiatus.

17. The sign ° is used to mark an omission of something easily understood (whether from the context, or from previous knowledge),

and thus becomes a mark of abbreviation; thus, **गतस्** °**तम्** °**तेन** *gatas -tam -tena*, i. e. *gatam gatena* etc.

18. The only signs of punctuation are ; and ¶.

19. The numeral figures are

१ 1, २ 2, ३ 3, ४ 4, ५ 5, ६ 6, ७ 7, ८ 8, ९ 9, ० 0.

In combination, to express larger numbers, they are used precisely as are European digits; thus, २४ 24, ४८५ 485, ७६२० 7620. This system of notation originated in India, and was brought to Europe by the Arabs, who call it the Indian system, as we style it the Arabic.

20. In writing Sanskrit the Hindus generally begin at the left of the letter, and make the horizontal top-stroke last; thus, **र**, **ग**, **श**; **३**, **३**, **३**; **।**, **क**, **क**. But often the horizontal stroke is made first, and the perpendicular stroke added without raising the pen from the paper; thus, **र**, **व**; **र**, **क**.

System of Sounds: Pronunciation.

21. The Sanskrit is used in India to this day very much as Latin was used in Europe in the previous century: it is a common medium of communication between the learned, be their native tongues what they may, and it is not the vernacular of any district whatever. Hence it is not strange that the pronunciation of Sanskrit words varies greatly among scholars from different parts of India; and probably no one system represents the true ancient mode of utterance with much exactness.

I. Vowels.

22. A. The *a*, *i*, and *u*-vowels. These three occur both short and long, and are to be pronounced in the 'Italian' manner — as in (*or*-) *gan* and *father*, *pin* and *pique*, *pull* and *rule*, respectively. The

a-vowel stands in no relation of kindred with any of the classes of consonantal sounds. But the *i*-vowel is distinctly palatal, and the *u*-vowel as distinctly labial.

23. B. The *r* and *l*-vowels. Both of these are plainly the result of abbreviating syllables containing a *r* or *l* along with another vowel: *r* is to be sounded like the *re* in the English *fibre*, *l* like *le* in *able*.

24. C. The diphthongs. 1. The *e* and *o*, which are always long, should receive the long *e* and *o*-sounds of the English *they* and *bone*, without true diphthongal character. In their origin, both were doubtless in the main pure diphthongs (*e* = *a* + *i*, *o* = *a* + *u*); but they lost this character at a very early period.

2. The *āi* and *āu* are spoken like the *ai* in English *aisle* and *au* in German *Baum* (*ou* in English *house*); that is, as pure diphthongs with long prior element. They were originally, doubtless, distinguished from *e* and *o* only by the length of the first element.

II. Consonants.

25. A. Mutes. In each series of mutes there are two surd members, two sonants, and one nasal (also sonant); e. g., in the labial series, the surds *p* and *ph*, the sonants *b* and *bh*, and the sonant *m*.

26. The first and third members of each series are the ordinary corresponding surd and sonant mutes of European languages; thus, *k* and *g*, *t* and *d*, *p* and *b*.

27. Nor is the character of the nasal any more doubtful. What *m* is to *p* and *b*, or *n* is to *t* and *d*, that is also each other nasal to its own series of mutes: a sonant expulsion of breath into and through the nose, while the mouth-organs are in the mute-contact.

28. The second and fourth of each series are aspirates; thus,

beside the surd mute *k* we have the corresponding surd aspirate *kh*, and beside the sonant *g*, the corresponding aspirate *gh*. It is usual among European scholars to pronounce both classes of aspirates as the corresponding non-aspirates with a very closely following *h*; e. g., *th* nearly as in *boathouse*, *ph* as in *haphazard*, *dh* as in *madhouse*. This is inaccurate; but the question of the original pronunciation of this entire group of sounds is one of great difficulty, and still unsettled.

29. The aspirates are not double letters.

The several mute-series will now be taken up in detail.

30. 1. Gutturals: *k*, *kh*, *g*, *gh*, *ṅ*. These are the ordinary English *k* and *g* ("hard")-sounds, with their corresponding aspirates and nasal; the last, like *ng* in *singing*.

31. 2. Palatals: *c*, *ch*, *j*, *jh*, *ñ*. This whole series is derivative, being generated by the corruption of original gutturals. (The palatal mute *c* and the sibilant *ç* often represent two successive stages of corruption of *k*; the corresponding degrees of corruption of *g* are both represented by *j*.) For this reason the euphonic treatment of the palatals is in many respects peculiar. The palatal mutes *c* and *j* are pronounced with the compound sounds of English *ch* and *j*, as in *church* and *judge*. See also § 28.

32. 3. Linguals: *t*, *th*, *ḍ*, *ḍh*, *ṇ*. The lingual mutes are said to be uttered with the tip of the tongue turned up and drawn back into the dome of the palate, somewhat as the English (or rather American) smooth *r*, e. g. in *very* is pronounced. In practice European Sanskritists make no attempt to distinguish them from the dentals: *t* is pronounced like *t*, *ḍ* like *d*, and so on.

33. 4. Dentals: *t*, *th*, *d*, *dh*, *n*. These are practically the equivalents of our so-called dentals *t*, *d*, *n*.*

* But the Hindus generally use linguals to represent the English dentals; thus, लण्डन *lanḍana* = 'London.'

34. 5. Labials: *p, ph, b, bh, m*. These are exactly the equivalents of the English *p, b, m*.

35. B. Semivowels: *y, r, l, v*. 1. The palatal semivowel *y* stands in the closest relationship with the vowel *i* (short or long): the two exchange with one another in cases innumerable. Very probably the Sanskrit *y* had everywhere more of an *i*-character than our *y*.

36. 2. The *r* is clearly a lingual sound. It thus resembles the English smooth *r*, and like this seems to have been untrilled.

37. 3. The *l* is a sound of dental position, quite as in English.

38. 4. The labial *v* is pronounced as English or French *v* by the modern Hindus — except when preceded by a consonant (except *r*) in the same syllable, when it sounds like English *w*; and European scholars follow the same practice (with or without the same exception). But strictly the *v* stands related to an *u*-vowel precisely as *y* to an *i*-vowel: that is, it is a *w*-sound in the English sense, or perhaps more like the *ou* in French *oui*. The rules of Sanskrit euphony affecting this sound, and the name "semivowel", have no application except to such a *w*-sound: a *v*-sound (German *w*) is no semivowel, but a spirant, like the English *th*-sounds and *f*. The four semivowels are always sonant.

39. C. Sibilants: *ç, ś, s*. 1. The *s* is of plain character: a dental, and exactly like the English *s* (as in *lesson* — never as in *ease*).

40. 2. The *ś* is the sibilant pronounced in the lingual position. It is, therefore, a kind of *sh*-sound, and by Europeans is pronounced as ordinary English *sh*, no attempt being made to give it its proper lingual quality.

41. 3. The *ç* is by all native authorities described as palatal. It is the usual *sh*-sound of English, though the Hindus are said

to speak it somewhat differently nowadays. By Europeans it is variously pronounced — perhaps oftener as *s* than as *sh*.

42. All three sibilants are always surd.

43. D. Aspiration: *h*. This is usually pronounced like the ordinary European surd aspiration *h*. But its true value in the euphony of the language is that of a sonant. It is not an original sound of the language, but comes in most cases from an older *gh*, in some few cases from *dh* or *bh*. It appears to include in itself two stages of corruption of *gh*: one corresponding with that of *k* to *c*, the other with that of *k* to *ç*.

44. E. Visarga: *ḥ*. The *ḥ* appears to be merely a surd breathing, a final *h*-sound (in the European sense of *h*), uttered in the articulating position of the preceding vowel. The *visarga* is not original, but always a mere substitute for final *s* or *r*.

45. F. Anusvāra. The *anusvāra*, *ñ* or *ṁ*, is a nasal sound lacking that closure of the organs which is required to make a nasal mute; in its utterance there is nasal resonance along with some degree of openness of the mouth. European scholars give the *anusvāra* the value of the nasal in the French *-an, -on, -en, -in*, etc., which is a mere nasal coloring of the preceding vowel.

46. Two different signs, $\underset{\cdot}{\text{a}}$ and $\underset{\cdot}{\text{ā}}$, are used in the MSS. to indicate the *anusvāra*. Most commonly $\underset{\cdot}{\text{a}}$ is employed; $\underset{\cdot}{\text{ā}}$ will not often be met with in printed texts, except to mark the change of a nasal mute to *anusvāra* before a following semivowel, particularly *l*; thus, तालं लब्धान् *tālṁ labdhān*. Cf. § 139.

47. It is convenient in transliteration to distinguish the assimilated *m* (in all cases) by a special sign *ṁ*, from the *anusvāra* of more independent origin, represented by *ñ*.

Light and Heavy Syllables.

48. For metrical purposes syllables (not vowels) are distinguished as 'heavy' and 'light'. A syllable is heavy if its vowel is long, or short and followed by more than one consonant ("long by position"). *Visarga* and *anusvāra* are here counted as full consonants. The aspirated mutes, of course, do not count as double letters.

Changes of Sounds. *Guṇa* and *Vṛddhi*.

49. The changes to which both the vowels and the consonants of Sanskrit are subject are very numerous. Among the vowel-changes, the most regular and frequent are the so-called *guṇa* and *vṛddhi*, which are of frequent occurrence in derivation and inflection.

50. The following table exhibits these changes:

Simple vowels	अ <i>a</i> आ <i>ā</i>	इ <i>i</i> ई <i>ī</i>	उ <i>u</i> ऊ <i>ū</i>	ऋ <i>r</i>
<i>Guṇa</i>	अ <i>a</i> आ <i>ā</i>	ए <i>e</i>	ओ <i>o</i>	अर् <i>ar</i>
<i>Vṛddhi</i>	आ <i>ā</i>	ऐ <i>ai</i>	औ <i>au</i>	आर् <i>ār</i>

51. Theoretically the changes of *r̄* would coincide with those of *r*, and the *vṛddhi* of *l* would be *āl*; but actual cases of these are quite unknown. The *guṇa* of *l* is *al* (just as that of *r* is *ar*), but it occurs only in one root, *kḷp*. As will be seen in the sequel, the *guṇa*-sound coincides with the result of the combination of an अ *a* with the simple vowel corresponding to that *guṇa*; thus, अ *a* combines with a following इ *i* or ई *ī* into ए *e*, which is also the *guṇa* of इ *i* and ई *ī*. The *vṛddhi*, in like manner, is identical with the result of combining an अ *a* with the corresponding *guṇa*; thus, अ *a* combines with a following ए *e* into ऐ *ai*, the *vṛddhi* of इ *i* and ई *ī*. For the present the table is to be learned outright.

52. In all gunating processes अ *a* remains unchanged — or,

as it is sometimes expressed, अ *a* is its own *guṇa*; आ *ā* remains unchanged for both *guṇa* and *vṛddhi*.

53. The *guṇa*-increment does not, except in exceedingly rare instances, take place in a heavy syllable (see § 48) ending in a consonant: e. g., चित् *cit* may become चैत् *cet*, and नी *nī* may become नै *ne*; but चिन्त् *cint* or निन्द् *nind* or जीव् *jiv* may not become चैन्त् *cent* or नैन्द् *nend* or जैव् *jev*.

54. Other changes of vowels and consonants occur very frequently, in the making-up of single words from roots, by means of suffixes and endings, and in the formation of compound words by the union of two or more stems — a process of the very greatest frequency in Sanskrit. Furthermore, in the form in which the language is handed down to us by the literature, the words composing a sentence or paragraph are adapted to and combined with each other by nearly the same rules as those which govern the making of compounds, so that it is impossible to take apart and understand the simplest sentence in Sanskrit without understanding those rules. The most important of the rules for such combination will be given piecemeal in the lessons.

Roots and Stems.

55. A knowledge on the student's part of the meaning and application of the terms *root*, *stem*, *personal ending*, etc., is presupposed. The formative processes by which both inflectional forms and derivative stems are made, by the addition of endings to bases and roots, are more regular and transparent in Sanskrit than in any other Indo-European language.*

In the present work, which aims preeminently to give the student considerable practical acquaintance with the language within a brief compass of lessons, not every given form will be explained by analysis. But wherever any explanation of forms is given, it will of course be according to this method.

Accent.

56. The phenomena of accent are, by the Hindu grammarians of all ages alike, described and treated as depending on a variation of tone or pitch; of any difference of stress involved, they make no account. These accents are marked only in certain Vedic texts, and employed only in their recitation, whereas the accents used nowadays by Hindus in the pronunciation of Sanskrit (and left undenoted in writing) are mainly ictus-accents, i. e. variations of stress. The principles of the latter system will be given in an appendix. The older system of accents has great etymological importance; the latter none whatever; and only the older system will be referred to in the following. Here it will be enough to state that the primary tones or accent-pitches of the older system are two: a higher, or acute; and a lower, or grave. A third, called *svarita*, is always of secondary origin, being ordinarily the result of actual combination of an acute vowel and a grave vowel into one syllable. It is uniformly defined as compound in pitch, a union of higher and lower tone within the limits of a single syllable. It is thus identical in physical character with the Greek and Latin circumflex, and fully entitled to be called by the same name. Whenever, in the sequel, accent is mentioned, without further definition, the acute accent is to be understood; and it will be designated by the ordinary acute sign.

Conjugation of Verbs.

57. The Sanskrit verb exhibits the closest analogy with that of Greek, being developed in tense-systems, as outgrowths of certain tense-stems. In the older stage of the language, i. e. in the so-called Vedic period, the modal ramifications of each tense-stem are as numerous as in Greek; but in the later stage, the Sanskrit proper (also called the classical language), these outgrowths have

been lopped off to so very great an extent, that with one insignificant exception, the precativè or aorist optative, only the present-system still retains any modal variety whatever.

58. There is a simple or ordinary conjugation of verbal roots, which we call **primary**; and there are certain more or less fully developed **secondary** or **derivative** conjugations (§ 69).

59. **Voices.** There are two voices, active and middle, which extend throughout the whole system of conjugation. For the present-system alone there is a special passive inflection; the middle forms outside that system, and sometimes even within it, are liable to be used likewise in a passive sense. An active form is called by the Hindu grammarians *parasmāi padam* 'word for another'; a middle form, *ātmane padam* 'word for one's self.' Some verbs are conjugated in both voices, others in one only; sometimes some of the tenses are inflected only in one voice, others only in the other voice, or in both; of a verb usually inflected in one voice sporadic forms of the other occur; and sometimes the voice differs as the verb is compounded with certain prepositions.

60. **Persons and Numbers.** There are three persons: first, second, and third; and, as with substantives, adjectives, and pronouns, three numbers: singular, dual, and plural. All these persons and numbers are made from every tense and mode—except that the first persons of the imperative are really subjunctive forms.

61. The native grammarians denote as the first person what we call the third; and as we are wont to speak of the verb λέγω, the verb ἔρχομαι, the verb *amo*, etc., so the Hindus use for instance भवति *bhāvati* (3rd sing. pres. indic. of √bhū) to signify the whole system of verbal forms from that root, since भवति heads the list of forms in the native grammar, as λέγω, or ἔρχομαι, or *amo*, does in Greek or Latin. The Hindus even make substantives out of

such catchword forms, and inflect them according to the needs of expression.

62. In the following, the conjugation-class of verbs will be indicated by the 3rd sing. pres. ind., placed in parenthesis after the root; thus, भू *bhū* (भवति *bhāvati*).

63. Tenses and modes. The scheme of tenses and modes put forth by the Hindus holds good only for the later language, and even there utterly confounds the ideas of mode and tense.

64. The only logical arrangement of the modes and tenses in Sanskrit is shown in the following table (which includes only the classical speech):

- I. Present-System: a. Indicative. b. Imperfect. c. Imperative. d. Optative. e. Participle.
- II. Perfect-System. a. Indicative. b. Participle.
- III. Aorist Systems (of triple formation). a. Indicative. b. Optative (sometimes = "Precative").
- IV. Future Systems.
 - A. Sibilant Future. a. Indicative. b. Preterit (= "Conditional"). c. Participle.
 - B. Periphrastic Future. a. Indicative.

65. The tenses here distinguished as imperfect, perfect, and aorist receive those names from their correspondence in mode of formation with tenses so called in other languages of the family, especially in Greek, and not at all from any differences of time designated by them. In no period of the Sanskrit language is there any expression of imperfect or pluperfect time — nor of perfect time, except in the older language, where the "aorist" has this value; in the later speech, imperfect, perfect, and aorist (of rare use) are so many indiscriminated past tenses or preterits.

Verbal Adjectives and Substantives.

66. Participles. The participles belonging to the tense-systems have been already indicated in the table at § 64. There is, besides, a participle formed directly from the root of the verb, which is prevailingly of past and passive (sometimes neuter) meaning. Moreover, future passive participles, or gerundives, of several different formations, are made, but without connection with the future-stems.

67. Infinitive. The classical Sanskrit has a single infinitive. It is really an accusative case of a verbal noun, having nothing whatever to do with the tense-systems.

68. Gerund. A so-called gerund, or absolutive, is especially frequent, and is, like the infinitive, a stereotyped case-form (instrumental) of a derivative verbal noun. Its value is that of an indeclinable active participle, with indeterminate, but oftenest past, temporal force.

Secondary Conjugations.

69. The secondary conjugations are as follows: 1. Passive; 2. Intensive; 3. Desiderative; 4. Causative. In these, not the simple root, but a conjugation-stem, underlies the whole system of inflections. Yet in them all is plainly visible the character of a present-system, expanded into a more or less complete conjugation; the passive is palpably a present-system. Compare § 58—59.

70. Under the same general head belong: 5. Denominative conjugation, which results from the conversion of noun-stems, both substantive and adjective, into conjugation-stems; 6. Compound conjugation, resulting from the prefixion of prepositions to roots, or from the addition of auxiliary verbs to noun-stems; and 7. Periphrastic conjugation, from the looser combination of auxiliaries with verbal nouns and adjectives.

71. The characteristic of *ā* proper (i. e. finite or personal) verb-form is its personal ending. By this alone is determined its character as regards person and number, and in part also as regards mode and tense. But the distinctions of mode and tense are mainly made by the formation of mode and tense-stems, to which, instead of to the bare root, the personal endings are appended.

Conjugation - Classes.

72. Of the whole conjugation, the present-system is the important and prominent part. Its forms are very much more frequent than those of all the other systems together. As there is also great variety in the manner in which different roots form their present-stems, this, as being their most conspicuous difference, is made the basis of their principal classification; and a verb is said to be of this or that conjugation, or class, according to the way in which its present-stem is made.

73. Of these conjugation-classes there are nine, including the passive, which is really a present-system only. The first five exhibit coincidences enough to justify their inclusion into one conjugation, and the remaining four will compose likewise a second conjugation. The chief distinctions between the two groups are as follows:

74. In the first, the classes have in common, as their fundamental characteristic, a shift of accent: the tone is now upon the personal ending, now upon the root or the class-sign. Along with this goes a variation in the stem itself, which has a stronger, or fuller, form when the accent rests upon it, and a weaker, or briefer, form when the accent is on the ending. We distinguish these forms as the strong and the weak stem-forms respectively.

75. In the second conjugation, on the contrary, the accent has a fixed place, remaining always upon the same syllable of the

stem, and never being shifted to the endings; and the distinction of strong and weak forms is unknown. Moreover, the present-stem of every verb in the four classes of this conjugation ends in *a*. There are also other points of difference.

76. The classification current among the Hindu, and hitherto among the European, grammarians comprises ten conjugation-classes, arranged according to no intelligible principle whatever. The native "tenth class" is really no present-class at all, but a causative, i. e. a derivative conjugation, which extends beyond the limits of the present-system. Probably the fact that by no means all conjugation-stems formed by the causative sign had really a causative value induced the natives to adopt such a present-class. The Hindu scheme also quite omits the passive.

77. The Hindu first, sixth, fourth, and tenth classes form the so-called first conjugation of their scheme, which corresponds, except as regards the tenth class, with our second conjugation. The remainder of the classes form the natives' second conjugation, which agrees in the main with our first.

78. The classes are then as follows:

First Conjugation.

I. The root-class (second or *ad*-class, of the Hindus); its present-stem is coincident with the root itself; thus, *अद्* *ad*, 'eat'; *इ* *i*, 'go'; *द्विष्* *dvish*, 'hate'.

II. The reduplicating class (third or *hu*-class); the root is reduplicated to form the present-stem; thus, *जुहु* *juhu* from *हु* *hu*, 'sacrifice'; *ददा* *dadā* from *दा*, 'give'.

III. The nasal class (seventh or *rudh*-class); a nasal, extended to the syllable *na* [*na*] in strong forms, is inserted before the final consonant of the root; thus, *रन्ध्* *rundh* (or *रन्ध्* *runadh*) from *रध्* *rudh*, 'hinder'.

IV. a. The *nu*-class (fifth or *su*-class); the syllable नु *nu* is added to the root; thus, सुनु *sunu* from √सु *su*, 'press.'

b. A very small number of roots (only half-a-dozen) ending already in न् *n*, and also one very common and irregularly inflected root not so ending (कृ *kr*, 'make'), add उ *u* alone to form the present-stem. This is the eighth or *tan*-class of the Hindu grammarians; it is best ranked as a sub-class, the *u*-class; thus, तनु *tanu* from √तन् *tan*, 'stretch.'

V. The *nā*-class (ninth or *kri*-class); the syllable ना *nā* (or, in weak forms, नी *nī*) is added to the root; thus, क्रीणा *kriṇā* (or क्रीणी *kriṇī*) from √क्री *kri*, 'buy'. See note**, p. 32.

Second Conjugation.

VI. The *a*-class, or unaccented *a*-class (first or *bhū*-class); the added class-sign is *a* simply; and the root, which bears the accent, is strengthened by *guṇa* throughout, if it be capable of taking *guṇa* (see §§ 52—53); thus, भव *bhāva* (through the intermediate stage *bhō-a*) from √भू *bhū*, 'be.'

VII. The *ā*-class, or accented *a*-class (sixth or *tud*-class); the added class-sign is *ā*, as in the preceding class; but it has the accent, and the unaccented root is not strengthened by *guṇa*; thus, तुद *tudā* from √तुद् *tud*, 'thrust.'

VIII. The *ya*-class (fourth or *div*-class); *ya* is added to the root, which has the accent; thus, दीव्य *divya* from √दीव् *div* (by the Hindus given as दिव् *div*), 'play.'

IX. The passive conjugation is also properly a present-system only, having a class-sign which is not extended into the other systems; though it differs markedly from the remaining classes in having a specific meaning, and in being formable from all transitive verbs, but with endings of the middle voice only. It forms

its stem by adding an accented *yā* to the root; thus, from √अद् *ad*, अद्य *adyā*; from √रुद् *rudh*, रुध्य *rudhyā*.

79. Roots are not wholly limited, even in the later language, to one mode of formation of their present-stem, but are sometimes reckoned as belonging to two or more different conjugation-classes.

80. The verbs of our second conjugation show much greater simplicity of formation and inflection and are far more frequent and numerous than those of our first; their paradigms will therefore be given before those of our first.

Prepositions and Prepositional Prefixes.

81. Prepositions, or, more strictly speaking, adverbial prefixes, are used with verbs quite as frequently in Sanskrit as in Greek; and more than one may be prefixed. Thus when √बुध् *budh* + अनु *anu* is given in the vocabulary, this signifies that the preposition अनु is prefixed to the proper verbal form; and the 3rd sing. pres. ind. act. of the verb would then be अनुबोधति *anubodhati*; so धा + सम्-आ (or समा) *sam-ā*, 3rd sing. समादधाति *samādadhāti*. The rules prevailing in Greek for the prefixion of prepositions, etc., to verbal forms will be found to hold good in Sanskrit.

82. There is in Sanskrit no proper class of prepositions (in the modern sense of the term); no body of words having as their exclusive office the "government" of nouns. But many adverbial words are used with nouns in a way which approximates them to the more fully developed prepositions of other languages. Words are used prepositionally along with all the noun-cases, except the dative (and of course the nominative and vocative). But in general their office is directive only, determining more definitely, or strengthening, the proper case-use of the noun.

Declension.

83. The declension of substantives and that of adjectives correspond so closely that the two classes of words must be treated together. The pronouns and numerals, on the other hand, exhibit here as in the kindred languages many striking peculiarities.

84. Numbers and Genders. There are three numbers, singular, dual, and plural; and the usual three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter. The dual is used much more extensively than in Greek, where it appears in a moribund state.

85. Cases. The cases are eight in number, given generally in the following order: nominative, accusative, instrumental, dative, ablative, genitive, locative, and vocative. The object sought in the arrangement is simply to set next to one another those cases which are to a greater or less extent, in one number or another, identical in form; and, putting the nominative first, as leading case, there is no other order by which that object could be attained.

For the uses of the cases in detail see Wh. §§ 267—305.

86. The stems of substantives and adjectives may for convenience be classified as follows: I. Stems in अ *a*. II. Stems in इ *i* and उ *u*. III. Stems in आ *ā*, ई *ī*, and ऊ *ū*: namely, A. radical-stems, and a few others inflected like them; B. derivative stems. IV. Stems in ए *r* (or अर *ar*). V. Stems in consonants.

87. Strong and weak cases. In stems ending in consonants, and those in ए *r* (or अर *ar*), there is seen a distinction of stem-form in different cases. Sometimes the stem-forms are two, when they are called strong and weak respectively; sometimes three: strong, middle, and weakest. As is the case with verbs, this variation of stem-form often goes hand-in-hand with a shift of accent.

88. In the masculine and feminine, the strong cases are the nom. and acc., both sing. and dual, and the nom. pl. The rest

are weak; or, if there be the distinction of three stem-forms, then the instr., dat., abl., gen., and loc. sing., the gen. and loc. du., and the gen. pl. (all of which take endings beginning with a vowel), are weakest; and the instr., dat., and abl. du., the instr., dat., abl., and loc. pl. (whose endings begin with consonants), are middle.

89. In the neuter, the only strong cases are the nom. and acc. pl.; if there be the triple distinction, then the nom. and acc. sing. are middle, and the same cases in the dual are weakest. Otherwise the cases are classified as in the masculine.

90. Case-endings. The normal scheme of case-endings, as recognized by the native grammarians (and conveniently to be assumed as the basis of special descriptions), is this:

	Singular		Dual		Plural	
	m. f.	n.	m. f.	n.	m. f.	n.
N.	<i>s</i>	<i>m</i>	<i>āu</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>i</i>
A.	<i>am</i>	<i>m</i>	<i>āu</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>i</i>
I.		<i>ā</i>	<i>bhyām</i>		<i>bhis</i>	
D.		<i>e</i>	<i>bhyām</i>		<i>bhyas</i>	
Ab.		<i>as</i>	<i>bhyām</i>		<i>bhyas</i>	
G.		<i>as</i>	<i>os</i>		<i>ām</i>	
L.		<i>i</i>	<i>os</i>		<i>su</i>	

It applies entire to consonant-stems, and to the radical division of *ī* and *ū*-stems; and to other vowel-stems, with considerable variations and modifications. The endings which have almost or quite unbroken range, through stems of all classes, are *bhyām* and *os* of the dual, and *bhis*, *bhyas*, *ām*, and *su* of the plural.

91. Pada-endings. The case-endings *bhyām*, *bhis*, *bhyas*, and *su* — i. e. those of the middle cases — are called *pada* ("word")-endings. The treatment of stem-finals before them is generally the same as in the combinations of words with one another.

Lesson I.

92. Verbs. Present Indicative active. Unaccented *a*-class. A number of roots conjugated in this class have medial short *अ* *a*. Inasmuch as “*अ* *a* is its own *guna*”, these roots merely add an *अ* *a* to form the present-stem; e. g., *वद्* *vad*, present-stem *वद्* *vāda*. The final *अ* *a* of the stem is lengthened in the three first persons.

Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
1. वदामि <i>vādāmi</i>	वदावस् <i>vādāvas</i>	वदामस् <i>vādāmas</i>
2. वदसि <i>vādasi</i>	वदथस् <i>vādathas</i>	वदथ <i>vādatha</i>
3. वदति <i>vādati</i>	वदतस् <i>vādatas</i>	वदन्ति <i>vādanti</i>

93. The ending of the 3rd plur. is properly *अन्ति anti*; it suffers abbreviation, however, by the loss of its *अ* *a*, in verbs whose stem ends in *अ* *a*.

94. As a heavy syllable ending in a consonant cannot be gunated, a root like *जीव् jīv* makes its 3rd sing. *जीवति jīvati*; *निन्द् nind* makes *निन्दति nindati*, etc. See § 53.

95. Euphonic rule. At the end of a word standing in the final position of a sentence, or alone, *स्* *s* and *र्* *r* always become *visarga* : *ḥ*; and generally also before *क्* *k*, *ख्* *kh*, *प्* *p*, *फ्* *ph*, and before sibilants [*श्* *ṣ*, *ष* *ṣ*, *स्* *s*], whether these stand in the same word, or as initial in the following word; e. g. *वदतस् पुनर् vadatas punar* becomes always *वदतः पुनः vadataḥ punaḥ*.

96. Force of the present. The present indicative signifies
1. Present time. 2. Immediate futurity. 3. Past time, in lively narration (“historical present”).

Vocabulary I.

Verbs to be conjugated like *वद् vad*:

<i>चर् car</i> (intr.) go, wander, graze (of cattle); (tr.) perform, commit.	<i>पत् pat</i> fall; fly.
<i>जीव् jīv</i> live.	<i>यज् yaj</i> sacrifice (<i>c. acc. pers. et instr. rei</i>).
<i>त्यज् tyaj</i> leave, abandon.	<i>रक्ष् rakṣ</i> protect.
<i>दह् dah</i> burn.	<i>वद् vad</i> speak, say.
<i>धाव् dhāv</i> run.	<i>वस् vas</i> dwell.
<i>नम् nam</i> (intr.) bow, bend one's self; (tr.) honor, reverence.	<i>वह् vah</i> (tr.) carry, bear; (intr.) flow, blow, proceed.
<i>पच् pac</i> cook.	<i>शंस् śaṁs</i> praise.

Adverbs and Conjunctions.

<i>अतस् atas</i> } hence	<i>ततस् tatas</i> } thence therefore thereupon	<i>यतस् yatas</i> } whence. wherefo.
<i>इतस् itas</i> }		
<i>अत्र atra</i> } here	<i>तत्र tatra</i> } there thither	<i>यत्र yatra</i> } where whither
<i>इह iha</i> } hither		
<i>इत्थम् ittham</i> } in this way so	<i>तथा tathā</i> } in that way so	<i>यथा yathā</i> } in which way as
<i>कुतस् kutas</i> } whence? why?	<i>कुत्र kutra</i> } where? <i>क्वा kva</i> } whither?	<i>कथम् katham</i> how? <i>कदा kadā</i> when?
<i>अधुना adhunā</i> now	<i>तदा tadā</i> then	<i>यदा yadā</i> when, if
<i>अद्य adya</i> to-day	<i>सर्वत्र sarvatra</i> everywhere	<i>सदा sadā</i> always
<i>एवम् evam</i> so, thus	<i>इति iti</i> so, thus	<i>तु tu</i> but, however
<i>एव eva</i> just, exactly	<i>च ca</i> (postpos.) -que	<i>पुनर् punar</i> again, but

Exercise I.

अथ जीवामः । १ । सदा पचथः । २ । अत्र रक्षति । ३ । अधुना रक्षामि । ४ । यदा धावथ तदा पतथ । ५ । क्व यजन्ति । ६ । तत्र चरथः । ७ । कृतः शंससि । ८ । त्वजामि कथम् । ९ । पुनः पतावः । १० । दहसि । ११ । पुनर्वदन्ति । १२ । तत्र वसावः । १३ । सर्वत्र जीवन्ति ॥ १४ ॥

15. *Today¹ they abandon². 16. Now¹ ye go². 17. Always¹ I protect². 18. We two bow¹ again². 19. Whither¹ runnest² thou? 20. We sacrifice. 21. They two cook. 22. Ye abandon. 23. He burns. 24. Now¹ we live². 25. Ye two praise. 26. Why² do ye bend¹? 27. There¹ they fly². 28. Where¹ do ye dwell²?

Lesson II.

97. Verbs. Unaccented *a*-class, cont'd. Roots of this class which end in a vowel, and consonant-roots not forming heavy syllables (§ 53), gunate their vowels in forming their present-stems; e. g., जि *ji* and नी *nī* form जे *je* and ने *ne*; द्रु *dru* and भू *bhū* form द्रो *dro* and भो *bho*; स्मृ *smṛ* forms स्मर् *smar*; चित् *cit* and बुध् *budh* form चैत् *cet* and बोध् *bodh*; वृष् *vṛṣ* forms वर्ष् *varṣ*.

98. With the class-sign अ *a*, a final ए *e* of the gunated root unites to form अय *aya* — see § 159; so ओ *o* with अ *a* becomes अव *ava*; अर् *ar* with अ *a* yields अर *ara*. Thus, जि *ji*, 3rd sing. जयति *jāya-ti*; भू *bhū* भवति *bhāvati*; स्मृ *smṛ* स्मरति *smārti*.

99. Roots in consonants: बुध् *budh*, 3rd sing. बोधति *bōdhati*; चित् *cit*, चेतति *cētati*; वृष् *vṛṣ*, वर्षति *vārṣati*.

100. The roots गम् *gam* and यम् *yam* make the present-stems गच्छ *gáccha* and यच्छ *yáccha***.

* The superior figures indicate the position in the Sanskrit sentence of equivalents for the words so designated. By this indication is avoided the necessity of applying euphonic rules which have not yet been stated. The order of words in Sanskrit is very free, and rarely influences the meaning of the sentence. From the figures the number of words required in the Sanskrit sentence will readily be seen. Words in Italics are not to be translated.

** As a rule, the grammarians do not allow क् *ch* to stand in

101. The root सद् *sad*, 'sit', makes the present-stem सीद् *sīda*. The root गुह् *guh*, 'hide', makes गूहति *gūhati*.

102. Several roots in final आ *ā* form their present-stem by a peculiar process of reduplication; thus, स्था *sthā*, 3rd sing. तिष्ठति *tīṣṭhati*** ; पा *pā* पिबति *pībati*; घ्रा *ghrā* जिघ्रति *jīghrati*. The final आ *ā* of the root is shortened in the reduplicated stem, except in the first persons.

103. Masculines and Neuters in अ *a*.

a. Masculines: देव *deva*, 'god'.

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
N.	देवस् <i>devas</i>	देवौ <i>devāu</i>	देवास् <i>devās</i>
Acc.	देवम् <i>devam</i>	"	देवान् <i>devān</i>
Voc.	देव <i>deva</i>		

b. Neuters: फल *phala*, 'fruit'.

N.	फलम् <i>phalam</i>	फले <i>phale (a + ī)</i>	फलानि <i>phalāni</i>
Acc.	"	"	"
Voc.	फल <i>phala</i>		

In the dual and plural of all declensions the vocative is like the nominative.

that form after a vowel, but require it to be doubled, becoming च्च *cch*. An aspirate is doubled by prefixing the corresponding non-aspirate. Cf. § 165.

** The dental sibilant स् *s* is changed to the lingual ष् *ṣ*, if immediately preceded by any vowel save अ *a* and आ *ā*, or by क् *k* or र् *r* — unless the स् *s* be final, or followed by र् *r*. Thus, तिष्ठति *tī-stha-ti* becomes तिष्ठति *tīṣṭhati* (the change of थ् *th* to ठ् *ṭh* — a process of assimilation — will be explained below). So अग्निसु *agni-su* becomes अग्निषु *agniṣu*; and धनुसा *dhanus-ā* becomes धनुषा *dhanuṣā*.

The nasalization of the alterant vowel, or in other words, its being followed by *anusvāra*, does not prevent its altering effect upon the sibilant; thus, हवींषि *havīṅṣi*. And the alteration takes place in the initial of an ending after the final स् *s* of a stem, whether the latter be regarded as also changed to ष् *ṣ* or as converted into *visarga*; thus, हविषु *haviṣ-ṣu* or हविःषु *haviḥ-ṣu* instead of हविस्सु *haviṣ-su*.

104. Force of cases. 1. The nominative is *casus subjectivus*.
2. The accusative is *casus objectivus*, denoting chiefly the nearer or direct, sometimes however the more remote, object; sometimes also the *terminus ad quem*, and extent of time and space.

105. Euphonic combination of vowels.

1. अ a or आ ā + अ or आ = आ. e. g. गता अपि *gatā api* = गतापि *gatā 'pi*.
2. अ or आ + इ i or ई ī = ए e. e. g. गता + इति *iti* = गतेति *gate 'ti*.
3. अ or आ + उ u or ऊ ū = ओ o. e. g. गता + उत *uta* = गतोत *gato 'ta*.
4. अ or आ + अर r = अर ar. e. g. महा *mahā* + अरिः *rṣih* = महर्षिः *maharṣih*.
5. अ or आ + ए e or ऐ āi = ऐ āi. e. g. गता + एव *eva* = गतैव *gatāi 'va*.
6. अ or आ + ओ o or औ āu = औ āu. e. g. गता + ओषधिः *oṣadhih* = गतौषधिः *gatāu 'ṣadhih*.

106. It will be the practice everywhere in this work to separate independent words in transliteration, but not in the *devanāgarī* text; and if an initial vowel of a following word has coalesced with a final of the preceding, this will be indicated by an apostrophe — single if the initial vowel be the shorter, double if it be the longer, of the two different initials which in every case of combination yield the same result. To aid the beginner, a point • will sometimes be placed, in the *devanāgarī*, under a long vowel formed by two coalescing vowels; thus, अग्नि-नारीयाम् *agninā 'rīnām*.

Vocabulary II.

Verbs, a-class:
गम् *gam* (*gacchati*) go.
घ्रा *ghrā* (*jighrati*) smell.

जि *ji* (tr. and intr.) conquer, win.
द्रु *dru* run.
नी *nī* lead, guide.

पा *pā* (*pibati*) drink.

भू *bhū* become, be, exist.

यम् *yam* (*yacchati*) furnish, give.

वृष् *vṛṣ* rain, give rain; (fig.)
shower down; overwhelm.

स्मृ *smṛ* remember, think on.

स्था *sthā* (*tiṣṭhati*) stand (intr.).

Subst. Masc.:

गज *gaja* elephant.

गन्ध *gandha* odor, perfume.

ग्राम *grāma* village.

नर *nara* man (*vir* and *homo*).

नृप *nṛpa* king.

पुत्र *putra* son.

Neut.:

कीर *kṣīra* milk.

गृह *grha* house.

जल *jala* water.

दान *dāna* gift, present.

नगर *nagara* city.

Interj.:

हे *he* O, ho.

Exercise II.

सदा देवान् स्मरन्ति । १। गृहं* गच्छामः । २। जलं पिबति पुत्रः । ३।
नृपी जयतः । ४। कदा फलानि यच्छथः । ५। कुत्राधुना गजं नयामि । ६।
नयन्ति देवाः । ७। नयथ हे देवाः । ८। नरः फले यच्छति । ९। अ-
धुना जिघ्रामि गन्धम् । १०। देवं यजावः । ११। पुत्र ग्रामं गच्छन्ति । १२।
तत्र गृहे भवतः । १३। सर्वत्र दानानि वर्षन्ति नृपाः ॥ १४ ॥

15. The man¹ drinks³ milk². 16. The king³ leads² the elephant¹.
17. Two houses¹ fall². 18. The god³ gives² water¹. 19. Ye both
think² on (स्मृ) the two gods¹ (*accus.*). 20. The king³ wins² the
village¹. 21. The two elephants¹ smell³ the perfume². 22. They
cook² fruits¹. 23. The man³ reverences² the gods¹. 24. The two
elephants¹ live². 25. The gods² give¹ rain (वृष्).

* Final म् *m* is commonly written as *anusvāra* if the following word begins with a consonant; but the Hindus pronounce it as म् *m* in such cases. At the end of a sentence *anusvāra* should not be written for म् *m*, though this is a habit common in the MSS.

Final radical म् *m*, in internal combination, is assimilated to a following mute or spirant. In the former case it becomes the nasal of the same class with the mute; in the latter it becomes *anusvāra*.—
Final radical न् *n*, in internal combination, becomes *anusvāra* before a sibilant.

Lesson III.

107. Verbs. Accented *á*-class. Roots of this class form their present-stem by adding an accented *á* to the root, which is not gunated. The inflection of these stems is precisely like that of stems belonging to the preceding class, except as to the position of the accent; thus, *क्षिप् क्षिप*, present-stem *क्षिप क्षिपा*, pres. ind. *क्षिपामि क्षिपामी*, *क्षिपसि क्षिपसि*, *क्षिपति क्षिपति*, etc.

108. Several roots in *च* *r* of this class (by the Hindus written with *च* *r̄*) form stems in *इर ira*; e. g., *कृ kr*, 'strew', *किरति kirati*. The roots in *इ i* and *उ u* and *ऊ ū* change those vowels into *इय iy* and *उव uv*, respectively, before the class-sign; thus, *क्षि ksi*, *क्षियति ksīyati*; *सु su*, *सुवति suvati*; *धू dhū*, *धुवति dhuvati*.

109. For the root *इष् is*, 'desire', *इच्छ ich* is regarded as a substitute in the present-stem; thus, *इच्छति icchati* (§ 100, note). Likewise, *च* *r̄* makes its present *चच्छति r̄chati*; and *प्रच्छ prach*, sometimes given as *पृच्छ prch*, makes *पृच्छति pr̄chati*.

110. A number of roots following this class are strengthened in the present by a penultimate nasal; thus, *सिच् sic*, present ind. *सिच्चति sīncati*. The nasal is always assimilated in class to the following consonant; thus *ञ ñ* is used before palatals, *न् n* before dentals, *म् m* before labials; and *ऩ ñ* before sibilants and *ह h*.

III. Masculines and Neuters in *अ a*, cont'd.

a. Masculines:

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
I.	<i>देवेन devēna</i>	<i>देवाभ्याम् devābhyām</i>	<i>देवैस् devāis</i>
D.	<i>देवाय devāya</i>	" "	<i>देवेभ्यस् devēbhyas</i>
Ab.	<i>देवात् devāt</i>	" "	" "
G.	<i>देवस्य devasya</i>	<i>देवयोस् devayos</i>	<i>देवानाम् devānām</i>
L.	<i>देवे dece</i>	" "	<i>देवेषु deveṣu</i>

b. Neuters follow exactly the declension of masculines in the above cases; thus, *फलान् phalāna*, *फलाय phalāya*, etc.

112. Force of cases. 1. The instrumental answers the questions *wherewith?* and *whereby?* and expresses accompaniment, agent, or means. 2. The dative denotes the remoter object, and direction. It is also used as *dativus commodi*; very frequently also to denote end or purpose. Sometimes (and oftenest with copula omitted) it is predicative, in the sense of 'makes for, tends toward'. 3. The ablative answers the question *whence?* and very frequently denotes cause. 4. The genitive is *casus adjectivus*, denoting all kinds of belonging (e. g. *gen. subjectivus, objectivus, partitivus*). 5. The locative denotes the place where, or the time when, an action occurs. It is often used absolutely, in agreement with a participle expressed or understood, as the ablative is used in Latin and the genitive in Greek. It is also used as *terminus ad quem*.

Vocabulary III.

Verbs, *á*-class:

इष् is (*icchati*) wish, desire.

कृष् kr̄ṣ (*kr̄ṣati*) plough.

क्षिप् k̄ṣip (*k̄ṣipati*) hurl, cast, throw.

दिश̄ diṣ (*diṣati*) show, point out.

प्रच्छ̄ prach̄ (*pr̄chati*) ask, ask about.

विश̄ viṣ (*viṣati*) enter.

सिच् sic (*sīncati*) drip, drop; moisten.

सृज् sr̄j (*sr̄jati*) let go; create.

स्पर्श̄ spr̄ṣ (*spr̄ṣati*) touch; (in certain connections) wash.

a-class:

गुह̄ guh (*ḡhati*, § 101) hide, conceal.

सद् sad (*s̄idati*, § 101) sit.

Subst. Masc.:

कट kata mat.

कुन्त k̄unta spear.

बाल̄ bāla child, boy.

मार्ग̄ mārga road, way, street.

मेघ̄ megha cloud.

शर̄ ṣara arrow.

हस्त̄ hasta hand.

Neut.:

क्षेत्र̄ k̄setra field.

धन̄ dhana money, riches.

लाङ्गल̄ lāṅgala plough.

विष̄ viṣa poison.

सुख̄ sukha fortune, luck, happiness.

Exercise III.

धनानि गृहेषु गृह्णन्ति। १। कुन्तान् हस्ताभ्यां क्षिपामः। २। नृपाय नरौ
मार्गं दिशतः। ३। मार्गेण** ग्रामं गच्छावः। ४। सुखिनेह गृहे तिष्ठति
पुत्रः। ५। जलं सिञ्चति मेघः। ६। धनेन सुखमिच्छन्ति नराः। ७। ह-
स्तयोः फले तिष्ठतः। ८। जलं हस्तेन स्पृशसि। ९। नरौ कटे सीदतः। १०।
क्षेत्राणि लाङ्गुलैः कृषन्ति। ११। नगरं नृपौ विशतः। १२। नरः पुत्रेण
मार्गे गच्छति। १३। नरान्सृजति देवः॥ १४॥

15. The boy⁴ asks³ the men¹ about the road² (acc.). 16. The
clouds¹ drop⁴ water³ on the fields² (loc.). 17. The two men¹ go⁴
by two roads² (instr.) into the city³. 18. The king⁴ gives³ the two
men¹ money². 19. The man's¹ sons² sit⁴ on mats³. 20. The gods⁴
give³ the water² of the clouds¹. 21. We wash³ (use स्पृश्) both
hands² with water¹. 22. Both men¹ lead⁴ their sons² (dual) home³
(गृह). 23. The two boys³ point out⁴ the road² to the city¹ (gen.).

Lesson IV.

113. Masculines in इ i. अग्नि agni, 'fire'.

Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
N. अग्निस् agnis	अग्नी agnī	अग्नयस् agnayas
A. अग्निम् agnim	" "	अग्नीन् agnīn
I. अग्निना agninā	अग्निभ्याम् agnibhyām	अग्निभिस् agnibhis
D. अग्नये agnaye	" "	अग्निभ्यस् agnibhyas
A. अग्नेस् agnes	" "	" "
G. " "	अग्न्योस् agnyos	अग्नीनाम् agnīnām
L. अग्नौ agnāu	" "	अग्निषु agniṣu* †
V. अग्ने agne		

* See note to § 102.

** The dental nasal न् n, when immediately followed by a vowel,
or by न् n or म् m or य् y or र् r, is turned into the lingual
ण् ṅ if preceded in the same word by the lingual sibilant or semi-
vowel or vowels — i. e. by ष् ṣ, र् r, ञ् ṅ, or ञ् ṅ: and this, not

114. Neuters in इ i. वारि vāri, 'water'.

Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
N. वारि vāri	वारिणी vāriṇī	वारीणि vāriṇi
A. " "	" "	" "
I. वारिणा vāriṇā*	वारिभ्याम् vāribhyām	वारिभिस् vāribhis
D. वारिणे vāriṇe	" "	वारिभ्यस् vāribhyas
Ab. वारिणस् vāriṇas	" "	" "
G. " "	वारिणोस् vāriṇos	वारीणाम् vāriṇām
L. वारिणि vāriṇi	" "	वारिषु vāriṣu
V. वारि vāre or वारि vāri		

115. Masculine and neuter adjectives in इ i are declined like
the substantives above. But neuter adjectives (never substantives)
may, in the dat., abl., gen., and loc. sing., and the gen. and loc.
dual, substitute the corresponding forms of masculines.

116. Euphonic changes of स् s and र् r. These two sounds
stand to each other in the practical relation, in external combination,
of corresponding surd and sonant: in countless cases स् s becomes
र् r in situations requiring or favoring the occurrence of a sonant;
and, less often, र् r becomes स् s where a surd is required. In
internal combination the two are far less interchangeable. The s
is extremely common as an etymological final, the r not common.

117. A. Final स् s. 1. Before a sonant, either vowel or conso-
nant (except र् r — see below), स् s is changed to the sonant र् r
— unless, indeed, it be preceded by अ a or आ ā; thus, अग्निस्

only if the altering letter stands immediately before the nasal, but
at whatever distance before the latter it may be found: unless, in-
deed, there intervene a palatal (except च y), a lingual, or a dental.
Thus, नगरेण nagareṇa, मार्गेण mārgēṇa, पुष्पाणि puṣpāṇi.

* See preceding note.

अच *agnis atra* becomes अपिरच *agnir atra*; अपिस् दहति *agnis dahati* becomes अपिर्दहति *agnir dahati*. See also § 95.

118. 2. Final अस् *as*, before any sonant consonant or before initial short अ *a*, is changed to ओ *o* — and the initial अ *a* is dropped; thus, नृपस् जयति *nṛpas jayati* becomes नृपो जयति *nṛpo jayati*; नृपस् अच *nṛpas atra* = नृपो अच *nṛpo atra*.

119. It is the practice in our system of transliteration to render the sign ऽ, which denotes this dropping of an initial अ *a*, by an inverted comma.

120. 3. Before any initial vowel other than short अ *a*, final अस् *as* loses its स् *s*, becoming simple अ *a*; and the hiatus thus occasioned remains; thus, नृपस् इच्छति *nṛpas icchati* becomes नृप इच्छति *nṛpa icchati*; ततस् उदकम् *tatas udakam* = तत उदकम् *tata udakam*.

121. 4. Final आस् *ās* before any sonant, whether vowel or consonant, loses its स् *s*, becoming simply आ *ā*; and the hiatus thus occasioned remains; thus, नृपास् इच्छन्ति *nṛpās icchanti* = नृपा इच्छन्ति *nṛpā icchanti*; नृपास् जयन्ति *nṛpās jayanti* = नृपा जयन्ति *nṛpā jayanti*.

122. B. Final र् *r*. 1. Final र् *r* in general shows the same form which स् *s* would exhibit under the same conditions: thus पुनर् *punar* standing at the end of a sentence becomes पुनः *punaḥ*; गीर् *gīr*, गीः *gīḥ*. But original final र् *r*, after अ *a* or आ *ā*, maintains itself before vowels and sonant consonants; thus, पुनरच *punar atra*, पुनर्जयति *punar jayati*.

123. 2. A double र् *r* is nowhere admitted: if such would occur, either by retention of an original र् *r* or by conversion of स् *s* to र् *r*, the first र् *r* is omitted, and the preceding vowel, if short, is made long by compensation; thus, पुनर् रामः *punar rāmaḥ* = पुना रामः *punā rāmaḥ*; अपिस् रोचते *agnis rocate* = अभी रोचते *agnī rocate*; धेनुस् रोचते *dhenus rocate* = धेनू रोचते *dhenū rocate*.

Vocabulary IV.

Verbs:

कृत *kṛt* (*kṛntāti*) cut, cut off.

मुच *muc* (*muñcāti*) free, deliver, release.

Subst.:

अग्नि *agni*, m., fire; (as proper name) Agni, the god of fire.

अरि *ari*, m., enemy.

असि *asi*, m., sword.

ऋषि *ṛṣi*, m., seer.

कवि *kavi*, m., poet.

गिरि *giri*, m., mountain.

जन *jana*, m., man; (pl.) people.

दुःख *duḥkha*, n., misery, misfortune.

रुह *ruh* (*róhati*) grow.

लिप *lip* (*limpāti*) smear.

लुप *lup* (*lumpāti*) break to pieces, devastate, plunder.

पाणि *pāni*, m., hand.

पाप *pāpa*, n., sin.

राम *rāma*, m., *nom. pr.*, name of a hero.

वृक्ष *vrkṣa*, m., tree.

शिव *śiva*, m., *nom. pr.* name of a god.

सत्य *satya*, n., truth, righteousness.

हरि *hari*, m., *nom. pr.*, name of a god.

Exercise IV.

सदा देवा जनाकुञ्चन्ति पापात् । १ । नृपस्त्र पुत्री क्व वसतः । २ ।
अग्निर्दुःखात्पुत्रं रचति । ३ । नृपो ऽसिनारः* पाणी कृन्तति । ४ ।
ऋषयो हरिं शंसन्ति । ५ । अरयो जनानां धनं लुम्पन्ति । ६ ।
जलं गिरिः (abl.) पतति । ७ । शरान्विषेण लिम्पथ । ८ । वृक्षा गिरी रोहन्ति । ९ ।
ऋष्योः पुत्री तत्र मार्गे तिष्ठतः । १० । हरिः कविभ्यां दानानि यच्छति । ११ ।
ऋषिभी (§ 123) रामो वसति । १२ । अग्निनारीणां गृहाणि नृपा
दहन्ति । १३ । हरिं चीरेण यजतः ॥ १४ ॥

15. *Śiva*¹ dwells³ in the mountains². 16. *Both* enemies¹ hurl⁴
spears² at the king³ (*dat.*) 17. *Rāma*¹ touches⁴ his two sons³ with
his hands². 18. Fire¹ burns³ the trees². 19. Seers¹ speak² the
truth³. 20. *Through* righteousness¹ happiness³ arises⁴ (भू) for man-

* Modifiers generally precede the word which is modified.

kind² (अन, gen. pl.). 21. The seer's¹ two hands² touch water³.
22. Fruits¹ are³ (use स्था) on the trees². 23. People¹ remember³
Hari². 24. Rāma¹ hurls⁴ the sword³ from his hand² (abl.).

Lesson V.

124. Verbs. Unaccented *ya*-class. Roots of this class form their present-stem by adding च *ya* to the root, which bears the accent. Thus from नह *nah* is made the present-stem नह्य *nāhya*; from लुभ् *lubh*, लुभ्य *lūbhya*.

125. The inflection of stems of this class follows the model of वह् *vad*.

126. Certain आ *ā*-roots, because of their peculiar exchanges with इ *i* and ई *ī*-forms, especially in the formation of the present-stem, are given by the Hindu grammarians as ending in ए *e* or ऐ *ai* or औ *o* (cf. § 132), and by them assigned to the भू *bhū*, or *a*-class. Thus धा *dhā*, 'suck' (Hindu धे *dhe*), forms धयति *dhāyati*; the root हू *hū* or ह्रा *hvā* (Hindu ह्रे *hve*) forms ह्यति *hvāyati*; गा *gā* (Hindu गै *gāi*) makes गायति *gāyati*.

127. For the root दृश् *dr̥ṣ*, 'see', is substituted in the present-system another root पश् *paṣ*, which makes पश्यति *pācyati*.

128. Masculines in उ *u*. भानु *bhānu*, 'sun'.

Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
N. भानुस् <i>bhānuḥ</i>	भानू <i>bhānū</i>	भानवस् <i>bhānavas</i>
A. भानुम् <i>bhānum</i>	" "	भानून् <i>bhānūn</i>
I. भानुना <i>bhānunā</i>	भानुभ्याम् <i>bhānubhyām</i>	भानुभिस् <i>bhānubhis</i>
D. भानवे <i>bhānave</i>	" "	भानुभ्यस् <i>bhānubhyas</i>
Ab. भानोस् <i>bhānos</i>	" "	" "
G. " "	भान्वोस् <i>bhānvos</i>	भानूनाम् <i>bhānūnām</i>
L. भानौ <i>bhānāu</i>	" "	भानुषु <i>bhānuṣu</i>
V. भानो <i>bhāno</i>		

Masculine adjectives in उ *u* are similarly declined.

129. Euphonic Changes of स् *s*, cont'd. 1. Final स् *s*, the dental sibilant, whether original or representing final र् *r*, before the palatal surd mutes [च् *c*, छ् *ch*], is assimilated, becoming palatal श् *ṣ*. Thus नरस् चरति *naras carati* becomes नरश्चरति *naraṣ carati*; नरस् छलेन *naras chalena* becomes नरश्छलेन *naraṣ chalena*. 2. Before a lingual surd mute [ट् *ṭ*, ठ् *ṭh*], in like manner, it would become lingual ष् *ṣ*, but the case almost never occurs. 3. Before the dental surd mutes [त् *t*, थ् *th*], since it is already of the same class with them, it of course remains unchanged; thus, रामस् तिष्ठति *rāmus tiṣṭhati*.

130. The preposition आ *ā* is sometimes used with the ablative (much less often with the accusative), in the sense of 'hither from', 'all the way from'; but far more usually to signify 'all the way to', 'until'. As a prefix to verbs, आ *ā* means 'to', 'unto', 'at'.

Vocabulary V.

Verbs:	
अस् <i>as</i> (<i>āsyati</i>)	throw, hurl.
क्रुष् <i>kruṣ</i> (<i>kṛipyati</i> — w. gen. or dat.)	be angry.
क्रुध् <i>krudh</i> (<i>krūdyati</i> — w. gen. or dat.)	be angry.
गम् <i>gam</i> + आ <i>ā</i> (<i>āgacchati</i>)	come.
तृ <i>tr</i> (<i>tāyati</i>)	cross over.
नश् <i>naṣ</i> (<i>nācyati</i>)	perish.
पश् <i>paṣ</i> (<i>pācyati</i>)	see.
रुह् <i>ruh</i> (<i>rōhati</i>)	rise, spring up, grow.
+ आ <i>ā</i> (<i>ārōhati</i>)	climb, mount, ascend.
लिख् <i>likh</i> (<i>likhāti</i>)	scratch; write.
लुभ् <i>lubh</i> (<i>lūbhya</i> — w. dat. or loc.)	desire, covet.
शुष् <i>ṣuṣ</i> (<i>śuṣyati</i>)	dry up.
स्निह् <i>snih</i> (<i>snihyati</i> — w. gen. or loc.)	feel inclined to, love.
हू <i>hū</i> or ह्रा <i>hvā</i> (<i>hvāyati</i>)	call.

Subst.:

अन्न <i>anna</i> , n., food, fodder.
अश्व <i>aśva</i> , m., horse.
उदधि <i>udadhi</i> , m., ocean.
गुरु <i>guru</i> , m., teacher.
पत्र <i>patra</i> , n., leaf, letter.
परमु <i>paraṃ</i> , m., axe.
पाद <i>pāda</i> , m., foot; quarter; ray, beam.
बाहु <i>bāhu</i> , m., arm.
बिन्दु <i>bindu</i> , m., drop.

भानु <i>bhānu</i> , m., sun.
मणि <i>maṇi</i> , m., jewel.
रत्न <i>ratna</i> , n., jewel.
राशि <i>rāṣi</i> , m., heap.
वायु <i>vāyu</i> , m., wind.
विष्णु <i>viṣṇu</i> , m., <i>nom. pr.</i> name of a god.
शत्रु <i>śatru</i> , m., enemy.
शिखर <i>śikhara</i> , m., summit.
शिष्य <i>śiṣya</i> , m., pupil, scholar.
सूक्त <i>sūkta</i> , n., Vedic hymn.

Exercise V.

कवयो धने लुभन्ति । १ । अग्निः सूक्तानि पश्यति* । २ । गुरु शि-
ष्ययोः क्रुध्यतः । ३ । नृपा अरिभ्यः क्रुप्यन्ति । ४ । अपिबद्धो तिष्ठति । ५ ।
परमुना वृषाङ्कनथ । ६ । जलस्य बिन्दवो गिरिः पतन्ति । ७ । विष्णुमू-
षिर्यजति नृपाय । ८ । नृपो ऽश्वमारोहति । ९ । क्षेत्रेषु जलं शुष्यति । १० ।
गुरवः शिष्याणां स्निह्यन्ति । ११ । नृपाणां शत्रवो ऽसिना मञ्चन्ति । १२ ।
बालो गुरवे पत्रं लिखति । १३ । जना मणीनां राशीनिच्छन्ति । १४ ।
आ गिरिर्वृक्षा रोहन्ति । १५ । बाहुभ्यां जलं नरास्तरन्ति । १६ । बालौ
गृहे ह्ययति नरः । १७ । कवेः पुत्रो ग्रामस्य मार्गं गजं पश्यतः ॥ १८ ॥

19. Now⁴ the sun's¹ rays³ climb⁵ the mountains³. 20. A drop²
of water¹ falls⁴ down from the cloud³. 21. O¹ men², we see⁴
the city³. 22. Both kings¹ love³ poets² (*gen. or loc.*). 23. The
wind¹ blows⁴ (वह्) from the summits³ of the mountains². 24. The
king¹ hurls⁴ spears³ at his enemies² (*dat. or loc.*). 25. The scholar¹
bows³ before his teacher² (*acc.*). 26. Two men¹ come³ with their
sons² (*instr.*). 27. The two kings¹ desire⁴ the poet's² jewels³ (*dat.
or loc.*). 28. O¹ seer,² we sacrifice⁴ to Viṣṇu³ (*acc.*). 29. The two

* Orthodox Hindus maintain that the Vedic hymns, etc., were
revealed to their reputed authors, who thus 'saw' them.

cook² food¹ with fire². 30. The seers¹ praise⁴ Viṣṇu² with hymns³.
31. In the city¹ the king² calls⁴ his enemies³.

Lesson VI.

131. Verbs. *ya*-class, cont'd. The roots of this class which end
in अम् *am* lengthen their अ *a* in forming their present-stem; thus,
तम् *tam*, ताम्यति *tāmyati*; भ्रम् *bhram*, भ्राम्यति *bhrāmyati* — but this
last makes also forms according to the unaccented *a*-class; thus
भ्रमति *bhrāmati*, etc. The root मद् *mad* has the same lengthen-
ing: माद्यति *mādyati*.

132. Certain *ā*-roots (five — by the Hindus written with final *o*)
make present-stems with an accented *yá*; thus, दा *dā*, द्याति *dyāti*.

133. The root व्यध् *vyadh* is abbreviated to विध् *vidh* in the
present-system: विध्यति *vidhyati*.

134. The root क्रम् *kram*, said by the natives to form its
present-stem according to this class, really forms it only according
to the *a*-class, and the root-vowel is lengthened in the active voice,
but not in the middle; thus, क्रामति *krāmati*, but middle क्रमते
krāmate.

135. The root चम् *cam*, used only with the preposition आ *ā*,
forms आचामति *ācāmati*.

136. Neuters in उ *u*. मधु *madhu*, 'honey'.

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
N.	मधु <i>madhu</i>	मधुनी <i>madhunī</i>	मधूनि <i>madhūni</i>
A.	" "	" "	" "
I.	मधुना <i>madhunā</i>	मधुभ्याम् <i>madhubhyām</i>	मधुभिस् <i>madhubhis</i>
D.	मधुने <i>madhune</i>	" "	मधुभ्यस् <i>madhubhyas</i>
Ab.	मधुनस् <i>madhunās</i>	" "	" "
G.	" "	मधुनोस् <i>madhunos</i>	मधुनाम् <i>madhūnām</i>
L.	मधुनि <i>madhuni</i>	" "	मधुषु <i>madhuṣu</i>
V.	मधु or मधो		

137. Neuter adjectives (but not substantives) in उ u may take the forms proper to the masculine in the dat., abl.-gen., loc. sing., and gen.-loc. dual.

138. Changes of final न् n. Before initial ज् j and श् ś, न् n becomes ज् ñ; thus, तान् जनान् tān janān becomes ताञ्जनान् tāñ janān; तान् शत्रून् tān śatrūn = ताञ्शत्रून् tāñ śatrūn. In the last case, however, च् ch is almost always substituted for the initial श् ś; thus, ताञ्शत्रून् tāñ śatrūn.

139. Final न् n, before an initial ल् l, is assimilated and becomes nasalized l, which is written लँ ñl, or (what is the same thing) ऌ ñ; thus तान् लोकान् tān lokān becomes तालँ लोकान् tāñl lokān or तां लोकान् tāñ lokān.

140. Before the surd palatal, lingual, and dental mutes there is inserted after final न् n a sibilant of each of those classes respectively, before which न् n becomes anusvāra; thus for तान् च tān ca we find तांश्च tāñś ca; for तान् तथा tān tathā, तांस्तथा tāñś tathā.*

Vocabulary VI.

Verbs:	चम् cam + आ ā (ācāmati) sip,
चर (r̥cchāti — § 109) go to; fall to one's lot, fall upon.	चाम् cham + आ ā (ācāmati) sip,
क्रम kram + आ ā (ākrāmati) stride up to, attack.	तम् tam (tāmyati) be sad.
	तुष् tuṣ (tūṣyati) rejoice, take pleasure in (w. instr.).
	दीव् div (divyati) play.

* This rule really involves an historic survival, the large majority of cases of final न् n in the language being for original ns. Practically, the rule applies only to न् n before च् c and त् t, since cases involving the other initials are excessively rare.

धम् bhram (bhrāmyati — § 131) wander about.	ग्रम् gram (grāmyati) become weary.
मद् mad (mādyati) get drunk.	हृ ह्र (h̥rati) take away, steal, plunder.
व्यध् vyadh (vidhyati) hit, pierce.	
शम् śam (śāmyati) become quiet, be exhausted, go out.	

Subst.:

अक्ष akṣa, m., die, dice.	क्षत्रिय kṣatriya, m., warrior, man of the second caste.
अधर्म adharmā, m., injustice, wrong.	नृपति nr̥pati, m., king.
अलि ali, m., bee.	नेत्र netra, n., eye.
अश्रु aśru, n., tear.	मधु madhu, n., honey.
अक्ष रक्षā, m., bear.	मुख mukha, n., mouth, face.
कोप kopa, m., anger.	मृत्यु mṛtyu, m., death.
	वसु vasu, n., wealth, money.

Exercise VI.

अक्ष मधुने लुभन्ति । १ । क्षत्रियधुना पाणिना जलमाचामति । २ । नृपा अबैस्रच दीवन्ति । ३ । अलिर्मधुना मावति । ४ । नरा विषेणासीं लिम्बन्ति । ५ । रामः क्षत्रियान्परशुनाक्रामति । ६ । गुरुः शिष्यांश्च शंसामः । ७ । अरयो जनानां वसूनि हरन्ति । ८ । नरौ मृत्युमृच्छतः । ९ । बालश्च नेत्राभ्यामश्रुणि पतन्ति । १० । जलेनापिः शाम्यति । ११ । क्षत्रियैरश्वी शाम्यतः । १२ । गुरुः शिष्यस्य पापान्ताम्यति । १३ । गवा नगरे आम्यन्ति । १४ । मधुना क्षीरेण च लुभन्ति बालाः ॥ १५ ॥

16. The warriors¹ play³ for money² (instr.). 17. The king's² horses³ become weary⁵ on the road⁴ to-day¹. 18. The warrior¹ pierces⁴ his enemy³ with the spear². 19. Bees¹ are fond of³ (तुष्) honey². 20. The water² of his tears¹ moistens⁴ (सिच) his feet³. 21. There² bees¹ are flitting about³ (धम्). 22. Two men¹ are cooking⁵ honey² and⁴ fruits³. 23. When¹ the teacher's² anger³ ceases⁴, then⁵ the scholars⁷ rejoice⁶. 24. Tears¹ stand⁴ in the warriors³

- eyes³. 25. The enemies¹ overwhelm⁴ (वृष्) the king² with arrows³.
26. A quarter² of the injustice¹ falls upon⁴ (च) the king³ (acc.).

Lesson VII.

141. **Causative Verbs (native "cur-class").** The Hindu grammarians describe a certain present-system which they assign to a so-called "cur-class". This is, however, in fact no present-class at all, but a causative or secondary conjugation, which is not confined to the present-system. But many formations of this sort have no causative value; and it is chiefly these that are grouped by the Hindus in their cur-class, which also includes some denominative-stems in *āya*, with causative accent. For practical purposes it is well enough to consider these verbs here.

142. The causative-stem is formed by adding अय *āya* to the root, which is usually strengthened; and the strengthening process is in the main as follows:

143. 1. Medial or initial इ *i*, उ *u*, and ऋ *r* have the *guṇa*-strengthening, if capable of it; thus, चुर *cur*, चोरयति *corāyati*; विद् *vid*, वेदयति *vedāyati*; but पीड् *pīḍ*, पीडयति *pīḍāyati*.

144. 2. A final vowel has the *vr̥ddhi*-strengthening; thus, धृ *dhṛ*, धारयति *dhārāyati*. Before अय *āya*, ऐ *ai* and औ *au* become आय् *āy* and आव् *āv* respectively; thus, भी *bhī*, भावयति *bhāvāyati*; भू *bhū*, भावयति *bhāvāyati*.

145. 3. Medial or initial अ *a* in a metrically light syllable is sometimes lengthened, and sometimes remains unchanged; thus, क्श् *kṣal*, caus. क्षालयति *kṣālāyati*; but जन् *jan*, caus. ज्ञयति *jāyati*.

146. The inflection is the usual one of *a*-stems.

147. **Rules of euphonic combination.** In external combination an initial sonant of whatever class (even a vowel or semivowel or nasal) requires the conversion of a preceding final surd to a sonant.

148. Final त् *t*. 1. Final त् *t* becomes ह् *d*, before any initial sonant, except the palatals, the nasals, and ल् *l*: thus, मेघात् अच *meghāt atra* becomes मेघाद् अच *meghād atra*; पापात् रक्षति *pāpāt rakṣati* or भ्राम्यति *bhrāmyati* or गोपायति *gopāyati* becomes पापाद् रक्षति *pāpād rakṣati* or पापाद्भ्राम्यति *pāpād bhrāmyati* or पापान्नोपायति *pāpād gopāyati*.

149. 2. Final त् *t* is assimilated to an initial palatal, lingual, or ल् *l* in the next word; thus it becomes च् *c* before च् *c* and छ् *ch*, ज् *j* before ज् *j*, and ल् *l* before ल् *l*: e. g., मेघात् च *meghāt ca* becomes मेघाच्च *meghāc ca*; मेघात् जलम् *meghāt jalam* becomes मेघाज्जलम् *meghāj jalam*; पापात् लोकात् *pāpāt lokāt* becomes पापालोकात् *pāpāl lokāt*.

150. 3. Before initial श् *ś*, final त् *t* becomes च् *c*, and the श् *ś* then becomes छ् *ch*; thus, नृपात् शत्रुः *nṛpāt śatruḥ* becomes नृपाच्छत्रुः *nṛpāc śatruḥ*.

151. 4. Before initial nasals त् *t* becomes न् *n*: thus, गृहात् नयति *grhāt nayati* becomes गृहान्नयति *grhān nayati*. But the change into ह् *d* is also permitted, though hardly used; thus, गृहात् नयति *grhād nayati*.

Vocabulary VII.

Verbs:	तुल् <i>tul</i> (<i>tolāyati</i>) weigh.
कथय <i>kathaya</i> (denom. stem — <i>kathāyati</i>) relate, tell.	दण्डय <i>danḍaya</i> (denom. — <i>danḍāyati</i>) punish.
क्श् <i>kṣal</i> (<i>kṣālāyati</i>) wash.	नी + आ <i>nī + ā</i> (<i>ānāyati</i>) bring.
गणय <i>gaṇaya</i> (denom. — <i>gaṇāyati</i>) number, count.	पीड् <i>pīḍ</i> (<i>pīḍāyati</i>) torment, vex.
चुर <i>cur</i> (<i>corāyati</i>) steal.	पूज् <i>pūj</i> (<i>pūjāyati</i>) honor.
तद् <i>taḍ</i> (<i>tāḍāyati</i>) strike, beat.	पृ <i>pr</i> (<i>pārāyati</i>) overcome evils; prevail.

Subst.:	
जनक <i>janaka</i> , m., father.	
दण्ड <i>danḍa</i> , m., stick; punishment.	
पुण्य <i>punya</i> , n., merit.	
फल <i>phala</i> , n., fruit; reward.	
रामायण <i>rāmāyaṇa</i> , n., a noted poem.	

रूपक <i>rūpaka</i> , n., gold-piece.
लोक <i>loka</i> , m., world, people (sing. and pl.).
साधु <i>sādhu</i> , m., holy man, saint.
सुवर्ण <i>suvarṇa</i> , n., gold.
सूत <i>sūta</i> , m., driver, charioteer.
स्तेन <i>stena</i> , m., thief.

Adverb: इव *iva* as, like (postpos.).

Exercise VII.

स्तेनः सुवर्णं नृपस्य गृहाञ्चोरयति।१। गुरुर्दण्डेन शिष्यांस्ताडयति।२। सूतो ऽश्वान्पोडयति।३। ऋषिर्जलेन पाणी चालयति।४। ग्रामाज्जनान्नगरं नयन्ति।५। नरौ रूपकाणि गणयतः।६। नृपाच्छत्रूणां दण्डो भवति।७। रामस्य पुत्री जनेभ्यो रामायणं कथयतः।८। सुवर्णं पाणिभ्यां तोलयामः।९। जनकः पुत्रान्कोपाद्दण्डयति।१०। गृहाल्लोका आगच्छन्ति।११। पुण्येन साधुर्दुःखानि पारयति।१२। देवानिव नृपतीं लोकः पूजयति ॥ १३ ॥

14. Thieves¹ steal⁴ the people's² money³. 15. The two boys¹ wash³ their mouths². 16. The father¹ tells⁵ his sons² (*dat.*) the reward⁴ of sin³. 17. The scholars¹ honor³ and⁵ reverence⁴ their teacher². 18. Ye both bring³ fruits¹ in your hands² and⁵ count⁴ them. 19. Merit¹ protects³ from misfortune² (*abl.*). 20. The charioteers¹ strike⁴ the horses² with sticks³. 21. In anger¹ (*abl.*) the king² pierces⁵ the thief³ with a spear⁴.

Lesson VIII.

152. Verbs, *a*-conjugation. Present Indicative Middle. The present indicative middle of verbs whose stems end in *a* is inflected as follows:

Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
1. वदे <i>vāde</i>	वदावहे <i>vādāvāhe</i>	वदामहे <i>vādāmāhe</i>
2. वदसे <i>vādase</i>	वदथे <i>vādethe</i>	वदध्वे <i>vādadhve</i>
3. वदते <i>vādāte</i>	वदते <i>vādāte</i>	वदन्ते <i>vādānte</i>

153. The ending of the 3rd pl. is properly अन्ते *ante* (cf. न्ति *nti* for अन्ति *anti* in the act.); before the ए *e* of the 1st sing. the stem-final is dropped. एथे *ethe* and एते *ete* are hard to explain.

154. With verbs inflected in both voices, the chief force of the middle is this, that the action is performed for the benefit of the actor himself; thus, यजति *yājati* 'he sacrifices' (for some one else); यजते *yājate* 'he sacrifices for himself'. But many verbs are conjugated only in the middle, like the Latin and Greek deponents.

155. The verb मृ *mṛ*, 'die', makes म्रियते *mriyāte* in the present; and जन् *jan*, 'give birth', substitutes as present mid. जायते *jāyate*, 'be born'.

156. Combination of final and initial vowels. Two simple vowels, either or both of them short or long, coalesce and form the corresponding long vowel. For the *a*-vowels, see above, § 105. Thus: 1. इ *i* or ई *ī* + इ *i* or ई *ī* = ई *ī*; e. g. गच्छति इति *gacchati iti* becomes गच्छतीति *gacchatī 'ti*. 2. उ *u* or ऊ *ū* + उ *u* or ऊ *ū* = ऊ *ū*; e. g. साधु उक्तम् *sādhu uktam* becomes साधूक्तम् *sādhū 'ktam*.*

157. The *i*-vowels, the *u*-vowels, and ऋ *r*, before a dissimilar vowel or diphthong, are regularly converted each into its own corresponding semivowel, य *y* or व *v* or र *r*. Thus, तिष्ठति अत्र *tiṣṭhati atra* becomes तिष्ठत्वच *tiṣṭhaty atra* (four syllables); नदी अत्र *nādī atra* becomes नद्यच *nady atra*; मधु अत्र *madhu atra* becomes मध्वच *madhv atra*; कर्तुं इह *kartuṃ iha* becomes कर्त्विह *kartr iha*.

* And theoretically 3. ऋ *r* + अ *r* = ऋ *r*, but probably this has no occurrence.

158. Final ए e and ओ o remain unchanged before an initial short अ a, but the अ a disappears. Thus, वने अत्र vane atra becomes वने ऽत्र vane 'tra; भानो अत्र bhāno atra becomes भानो ऽत्र bhāno 'tra. By far the commonest case of final ओ o is where it represents final अस् as (see § 118).

159. The final इ i or उ u-element of a diphthong is changed to its corresponding semivowel य y or व v, before any vowel or diphthong, except when the rule of § 158 would apply. Thus, ए e becomes अय ay, and ऐ ai, आय ay; ओ o becomes अव av, and औ au, आव av. Thus, in internal combination, ने-अ ne-a becomes नय naya; भो-अ bho-a becomes भव bhava; so नै-अय nāi-aya yields नायय nāy-aya, and भौ-अय bhāu-aya yields भावय bhāv-aya.

160. In external combination, the resulting semivowel is in general dropped; and the resulting hiatus remains. Thus, वने इति vane iti becomes वन इति vana iti (through the intermediate stage वनयिति vanay iti); भानो इति bhāno iti becomes भान इति bhāna iti (through भानविति bhānav iti). The case of final ए e is by far the more frequent. See also § 164.

161. Certain final vowels maintain themselves unchanged before any following vowel. Such are 1. ई ī, ऊ ū, and ए e as dual endings, both of declension and of conjugation; thus, गिरी इह giri iha, साधू अत्र sādḥū atra; फले अत्र phale atra. 2. The final, or only, vowel of an interjection; thus, हे इन्द्र he indra, हे अग्ने he agne.

Vocabulary VIII.

Verbs (deponents):	spring up (mother in loc.).
अर्थय arthaya (denom. — arthā-yate) ask for (w. two accus.).	भाष् bhāṣ (bhāṣate) speak.
ईक्ष īkṣ (īkṣate) see, behold.	मृ mṛ (mṛiyāte) die.
कम्प kamp (kāmpate) tremble.	यत् yat (yātate) strive for (w. dat.).
जन् jan (jāyate) be born, arise,	युध yudh (yūdhyate) fight (w. instr. of accompaniment).

रभ् rabh + आ ā (ārābhate) take hold on, begin.	वन्द vand (vāndate) greet, honor.
रुच् ruc (rūcate) please (dat., gen.).	शिक्ष cikṣ (cikṣate) learn.
लभ् labh (lābhate) receive, take.	सह sah (sāhate) endure.
	सेव sev (sēvate) serve, honor.

Subst.:

अनर्थ anartha, m., misfortune.	मनुष्य manuṣya, m., man (homo).
उद्योग udyoga, m., diligence.	यज्ञ yajña, m., sacrifice.
कल्याण kalyāṇa, n., advantage; salvation.	वन vana, n., woods, forest.
तरु taru, m., tree.	विनय vinaya, m., obedience.
द्विज dvija, m., Aryan.	वीचि vīci, m., wave.
द्विजाति dvijāti, m., Aryan.	शास्त्र śāstra, n., science; text-book.
धर्म dharma, m., right; law; virtue.	सूद्र śūdra, m., man of the fourth caste.
धीर्य dhairyā, n., steadfastness.	हित hita, n., advantage.
पशु paṣu, m., beast.	
बल bala, n., strength, might.	Adverb: न na, not.

Exercise VIII.

वायोर्वलेन तरवः कम्पन्ते । १ । असिनाद्यारयो म्रियन्त इत्थञ्च* नृपो भाषते । २ । वसूनां राशीन्नुपतीन्कवयो ऽर्थयन्ते । ३ । शास्त्रे (§ 161) अधुना शिक्षामह इति पत्रे हरिर्लिखति । ४ । पापाद्दुःखं जायते । ५ । शिक्षाणां विनय उद्योगश्च गुरुभ्यो रोचते । ६ । अधर्माय न धर्माय यतेथे । ७ । विष्णोः (abl.) सूक्ते ऋषी लभेते । ८ । अत्रर्षिभानुं वन्दते । ९ । अपी ईक्षते बालः । १० । धनेन पशूं लभध्वे यज्ञाय । ११ । सदा गुरोः पादौ बालाः सेवन्ते । १२ । फले अत्र मनुष्यस्य पाण्डोस्तिष्ठतः । १३ । सहते अनर्थं साधू । १४ । वनेष्विहर्षा वसन्ति । १५ । चत्रिया ऋषी सेवन्ते ॥ १६ ॥

17. The two houses⁴ yonder⁵ tremble⁶ by the power³ (instr.)

* इति, 'thus', is very commonly used as a particle of quotation, following the words quoted.

of the ocean's¹ waves². 18. The father³ beholds⁴ his son's¹ face.³
 19. "We strive³ after the advantage² of the scholars¹;" thus⁴
 (इति) speak⁶ the teachers⁵. 20. The children² ask⁴ their father¹
 for food³ (*accus.*). 21. In the forest¹ yonder² elephants³ are
 fighting⁵ with bears⁴. 22. The two Çūdras³ serve⁴ the two Aryans¹
 here². 23. Fruits¹ please³ the children². 24. Whence¹ do ye receive³
 money²? 25. Now¹ the two seers² begin⁴ the sacrifice³.

Lesson IX.

162. Feminines in आ *ā*, declined like सेना *senā*, 'army.'

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
N.	सेना <i>senā</i>	सेने <i>sene</i> (<i>ā + ī</i>)	सेनास् <i>senās</i>
A.	सेनाम् <i>senām</i>	" "	" "
I.	सेनया <i>senayā</i>	सेनाभ्याम् <i>senābhyām</i>	सेनाभिस् <i>senābhis</i>
D.	सेनायै <i>senāyāi</i>	" "	सेनाभ्यस् <i>senābhyas</i>
Ab.	सेनायास् <i>senāyās</i>	" "	" "
G.	" "	सेनयोस् <i>senayos</i>	सेनानाम् <i>senānām</i>
L.	सेनायाम् <i>senāyām</i>	" "	सेनासु <i>senāsu</i>
V.	सेने <i>sene</i>		

163. Adjectives in अ *a* are declined in the masc. like देव, in the fem. like सेना, in the neuter like फल. But often the fem. stem ends in ई *ī*, and is declined like नदी (in Less. XI).

164. Final ऐ *āi* and औ *āu*, according § 159, become आय् *āy* and आव् *āv* respectively before any following vowel or diphthong. The य् or व् may then be dropped, leaving a hiatus. The य् is in fact always dropped, but the व् not often. Thus, सेनायै अच becomes, through the medium of सेनायाय् अच, सेनाया अच; देवी अच becomes देवावच.

165. Initial क्, after short vowels, the preposition आ, and the

prohibitive particle मा, becomes क्: thus, अच छाया becomes अच छाया; आ + छादयति = आच्छादयति.

166. An initial न् of a root generally becomes ण् after a verbal prefix containing र्, either original or representing स्; such as अन्तर् 'between', निस्, परा, etc. Thus, प्रणयति, निर्णयति.

167. The following prefixes are often used before verbs: अन् 'after, along, toward'; अव 'down, off'; उद् 'up, up forth or out'; उप 'to, toward'; नि 'down; in, into'; निस् 'out, forth'; परा 'to a distance, away'; परि 'round about, around'; प्र 'forward, forth'; सम् 'along with, completely.'

Vocabulary IX.

Active Verbs:
गम् + अव (<i>avagacchati</i>) understand.
तृ + अव (<i>avatārati</i>) descend.
नी + उप (<i>upandayati</i>) introduce, consecrate.
+ परि (<i>parindayati</i>) lead about; marry.
पत् + उद् (<i>utpātati</i>) fly up.
रह् + अव (<i>avarohati</i>) descend.
Deponents:
गम् + सम् (<i>saṅgacchate</i>) come together, meet (<i>w. instr.</i>).

जि + परा (<i>parājayate</i>) be conquered (<i>rarely w. act. sense: conquer</i>).
पद् + प्र (<i>prapadyate</i>) flee for refuge (<i>acc.</i>) to (<i>acc. of person</i>).
भिच् (<i>bhikṣate</i>) beg, get by begging.
मृगय (<i>mṛgāyate</i>) hunt for, seek.
वृत् (<i>vṛtate</i>) exist, subsist, be, become.
शुभ् (<i>śobhate</i>) be brilliant, shine; be eminent.

Subst.:
इषु <i>m.</i> , arrow.
कन्या <i>f.</i> , daughter, maiden.

गङ्गा <i>gāṅgā f., n. pr.</i> , the Ganges.
गृहस्थ <i>m.</i> , householder, head of family.

ह्याया f., shade.

प्रयाग m., *nom. pr.*, Prayāga (a city, Allahābād).

भय n., fear.

भार्या f., wife, woman.

भाषा f., speech, language.

भिक्षा f., alms.

यमुना f., *n. pr.*, Yamunā (a river, the Jumna).

रण m., n., battle.

रथ्या f., street.

विद्या f., knowledge, learning.

विहग m., bird.

व्याध m., hunter.

शरण n., protection.

संध्या f., twilight.

स्वर्ग m., heaven.

हृदय n., heart.

Adj.:

कृष्ण, f. °ञ्चा, black.

पाप, f. °ञ्चा, bad, wicked.

प्रभूत, f. °ञ्चा, much, abundant;
pl. many.

Adv.:

सह together with (*postpos.*, *w. instr.*).

सहसा suddenly, quickly.

Exercise IX.

रत्नं रत्नेन संगच्छते* । १। यदा विहगा व्याधं पश्यन्ति तदा सहसो-
त्पतन्ति । २। सत्यं हृदयेषु मृगयन्त ऋषयः । ३। हरेः कन्यां रामः परि-
णयति । ४। विष्णोर्हरेश्च भार्ये कन्याभिः सहागच्छतः । ५। रामो वि-
ष्णुश्च देवाञ्शरणं प्रपद्यते । ६। भिक्षया रामस्य शिष्यौ वर्तेते । ७।
यदा जना गङ्गायां म्रियन्ते तदा स्वर्गं लभन्ते । ८। कन्याया (§164) अन्नं
यच्छत्युषेर्भार्या । ९। वनं ऋचेष्विषून्मुञ्चन्ति व्याधाः कृष्णौ च म्रियते । १०।
द्विजातीनां भाषां शूद्रा नावगच्छन्ति । ११। हे शिष्या नगरस्य रथ्यासु
साधूनां भार्याभ्यो ऽद्य भिक्षां लभध्वे । १२। अत्र छायायां प्रभूता विह-
गास्तिष्ठन्ति । १३। क्षत्रियस्य बालावृषिरूपमयति ॥ १४ ॥

15. The two scholars¹ beg⁶ much³ alms³ from the wives⁶ of
the householders⁴. 16. At Prayāga¹ the Ganges² unites⁴ with the
Yamunā³. 17. Bad¹ men² do not⁴ reach⁵ (लभ्) heaven³. 18. O
Viṣṇu¹, to-day³ Īṣva² marries⁷ Gaṅgā⁶, Hari's⁴ daughter⁵. 19. In the
battle¹ the kings³ fight⁴ with arrows² and⁶ conquer⁷ their enemies⁵.

* "Birds of a feather flock together".

20. Here² in the street³ the two kings¹ dismount⁶ from their black⁴
horses⁵. 21. The seer's² two sons³ are eminent⁴ in learning¹ (*instr.*).
22. From fear³ of the wicked¹ hunters² (*abl.*) two birds⁴ fly up⁵.
23. At twilight¹ (*loc. du.*) the seers² (§ 13, 3) reverence⁴ the gods³.
24. In the street² of the village¹ the teacher³ and⁵ the scholar⁴ meet⁶.
25. We two sacrifice² to the gods¹ for ourselves; we do not⁴ sacri-
fice⁵ for Hari³.

Lesson X.

168. Verbs. Passive Inflection. A certain form of present-
stem, inflected with middle endings, is used only with a passive
meaning, and is formed from all roots for which there is occasion
to make a passive conjugation. Its sign is an accented य *yá* added
to the root, without any reference to the classes according to which
the active and middle forms are made. The inflection is precisely
like that of other *a*-stems. Thus, तन्ये *tanyé*, तन्यसे *tanyáse*, तन्यते
tanyáte, etc.

169. Outside the present-system middle forms may be used in
a passive sense; but there is a special form for the aor. pass. in
the 3rd sing.

170. The form of root to which the passive-sign is appended
is usually a weak one. Thus a penultimate nasal is dropped; and
certain abbreviations which are made in the weak forms of the
perfect, or in the past passive participle, are found also in the
passive present-system. E. g. from अङ्, pass. अज्यते; from बन्च्,
बध्यते.

171. In the roots वच्, वद्, वप्, वस्, वह्, and स्वप्, the व *va*
becomes उ *u* in the pres.; thus, उच्यते, उष्यते, उष्यते (see note to
§ 102), सुष्यते. Similarly, यच् makes रज्यते, and यह् and प्रक् make
गृह्यते and पूच्छ्यते; शास् makes शिष्यते.

172. Final **इ** and **उ** of roots are generally lengthened; thus, **जि, जीयते; सु, सूयते.**

173. Final **ञ** is in general changed to **रि**; thus, **कृ, क्रियते;** but if preceded by two consonants it takes *guna*; thus, **स्रु, स्रर्यते.** The roots in "variable *r*", which the natives write with **ञ्** *r̄*, change **ञ** to **ईर्**, or, if a labial letter precede, to **ऊर्**; thus, **तृ, तीर्यते; कृ, 'strew', कीर्यते;** but **पृ, पूर्यते.**

174. Final **आ** of roots is usually changed to **ई**; thus, **दा, दीयते; गा, गीयते; धा, धीयते.** But **धा** makes **धायते**; and so some other roots in **आ**.

175. The roots **तन्** and **खन्** usually form their passives from parallel roots in **आ**; thus, **तायते.** But **तन्वते** and **खन्वते** occur.

176. Verbs of causative inflection, and denominatives in **ञय**, form their passive by adding **य** to the causative or denominative stem after **ञय** has been dropped; thus, **चोर्यते** 'is stolen'; **मख्यते** 'is counted'.

177. The personal passive construction, with the logical subject in the instrumental, is particularly common with transitive verbs; and not less so the impersonal passive construction, both with transitive and intransitive verbs. Thus, **नरेण स्वर्गो लभ्यते** 'Heaven is reached by the man'; **आगम्यते** 'one comes hither'; **सुष्यते** 'one sleeps'; **श्रूयते** 'it is heard', i. e. 'they say'. The predicate to the instrumental subject of such a construction is of course also instrumental; thus, **रामेणार्षिणा जीव्यते** 'Rāma lives as a seer'.

Vocabulary X.

Verbs, with passives:	ग्रह् (p. <i>grhyāte</i>) take, receive, seize.
कृ (p. <i>kriyāte</i>) make, do, perform.	दंश् (<i>dāṣati</i> ; p. <i>daṣyāte</i>) bite.
खन् (<i>khānati</i> ; p. <i>khāyāte, khanyāte</i>) dig.	2दा (<i>dāyati</i> ; p. <i>dāyāte</i>) cut.
गा (<i>gāyati</i> ; p. <i>gīyāte</i>) sing.	दीव् (<i>dīvyati</i> ; p. <i>dīvyāte</i>) play.
	1धा (p. <i>dhiyāte</i>) put, place.

2धा (<i>dhāyati</i> ; p. <i>dhiyāte</i>) suck.	वप् (<i>vāpati</i> ; p. <i>upyāte</i>) sow, scatter.
ध्या (<i>dhyāyati</i> ; p. <i>dhyāyāte</i>) think, ponder.	शास् (p. <i>śisyāte</i>) rule; punish.
1पा (p. <i>pīyāte</i>) drink.	श्रु (p. <i>śrūyāte</i>) hear.
1पृ (Hindu पृ ; p. <i>pūryāte</i>) fill.	सु (p. <i>stūyāte</i>) praise.
बन्ध् (p. <i>badhyāte</i>) bind; entangle; catch.	स्वप् (p. <i>supyāte</i>) sleep.
1मा (p. <i>mīyāte</i>) measure.	1हा (p. <i>hīyāte</i>) abandon, give up; neglect.
वच् (p. <i>ucyāte</i>) speak.	ह or ह्रा (<i>hvāyati</i> ; p. <i>hūyāte</i>) call.
	+ आ call, summon.

Subst.:

आज्ञा f., command.	भार m., burden.
आशा f., hope.	भिक्षु m., beggar, ascetic.
काष्ठ n., fagot; wood.	भूष्य m., servant.
गीत n., song.	माला f., garland.
घट m., pot, vessel.	राज्य n., kingdom.
घृत n., melted butter; <i>ghee</i> .	शिशु m., child.
धान्य n., grain.	सर्प m., snake.
पाश m., noose, cord, snare.	Adj.:
	विधेय , f. °आ, obedient.

Exercise X.

रामेण पुत्रावद्योपनीयेते इति श्रूयते । १ । ऋषिर्नृपेण धर्मं पृच्छयते । २ । घटौ घृतेन पूर्यते । ३ । विहगाः पार्श्वेभ्यश्च । ४ । जनैर्नगरं गम्यते । ५ । हे शिष्या गुरुणाह्वयध्वे । ६ । नरैः कटाः क्रियन्ते । ७ । कविभिर्नृपाः सदा सूयन्ते । ८ । प्रभूता भिक्षा गृहस्थस्य भार्यया भिक्षुभ्यो दीयते । ९ । कन्याभ्यां गीतं गीयते । १० । स्तेनैर्लोकानां वसु चोर्यते । ११ । इषुभी रणे ऽरयो नृपतिना जीयन्ते । १२ । हे देवो साधुभिः सदा स्मर्यथे । १३ । दण्डेन बालाः शिष्यन्ते । १४ । प्रभूतः काष्ठानां भारो नरेणोह्यते । १५ । अश्वेन जलं पीयते । १६ । धर्मेण राज्यं शिष्यते नृपेण । १७ । सर्पेण दश्यते नरो । १८ । सूतेनाश्वस्ताड्यते ॥ १९ ॥

(Use passive constructions throughout.)

20. Grain² is scattered³ for the birds¹. 21. Garlands¹ are twined³ (use बन्ध्) by the maidens². 22. Again² Hari¹ is praised⁴ by Rāma³. 23. Viṣṇu¹ drinks⁴ water³ from his hand². 24. 'Pleasantly¹ (सुखेन) one sleeps³ in the shade²'; so⁴ say⁵ the people⁶. 25. Both seers¹ sacrifice². 26. The father¹ sets⁴ hopes² on his child³ (loc.). 27. The scholar³ neglects⁴ the teacher's¹ command². 28. The two scholars¹ think³ about their text-book² (nom.). 29. Grain² is sown³ in the fields¹. 30. They play² with dice¹ (impers. pass.). 31. The king's¹ commands² are received⁵ by the obedient³ servants⁴. 32. The man¹ digs³ in the field².

Lesson XI.

178. Verbs. Imperfect Active, *a*-conjugation. The imperfect is formed from the present-stem by prefixing the augment अ, and adding a set of secondary endings.

179. If the present-stem begin with a vowel, the augment unites with it to form always the *vrddhi*-vowel, not the *guṇa*: thus अ+इ or ई or ए = ऐ; अ+उ or ऊ = औ; अ+अ = आर्.

180. If a preposition be prefixed, the augment comes between preposition and verb, as in Greek; thus, from उप-नी, impf.-stem उपानय, i. e. उप + अ + नय; वि-नी, impf.-stem वनय.

181. The inflection in the active is as follows:

Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
1. अवदम् <i>āvadam</i>	अवदाव <i>āvadāva</i>	अवदाम <i>āvadāma</i>
2. अवदस् <i>āvadas</i>	अवदतम् <i>āvadatam</i>	अवदत <i>āvadata</i>
3. अवदत् <i>āvadat</i>	अवदताम् <i>āvadatām</i>	अवदन् <i>āvadan</i>

182. The imperfect is the tense of narration; it expresses past time simply, without any further implication.

183. Polysyllabic Feminines in ई, declined like नदी, 'river.'

	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
N.	नदी <i>nadī</i>	नद्यौ <i>nadyāu</i>	नद्यस् <i>nadyas</i>
A.	नदीम् <i>nadīm</i>	" "	नदीस् <i>nadīs</i>
I.	नद्या <i>nadyā</i>	नदीभ्याम् <i>nadibhyām</i>	नदीभिस् <i>nadibhis</i>
D.	नद्यै <i>nadyāi</i>	" "	नदीभ्यस् <i>nadibhyas</i>
Ab.	नद्यास् <i>nadyās</i>	" "	" "
G.	" "	नद्योस् <i>nadyos</i>	नदीनाम् <i>nadinām</i>
L.	नद्याम् <i>nadyām</i>	" "	नदीषु <i>nadiṣu</i>
V.	नदि <i>nadī</i>		

184. Final nasals. The nasals इ, ए, and न्, occurring as finals after a short vowel, are doubled before any initial vowel: thus, अतिष्ठन् अच becomes अतिष्ठन्नच.

Vocabulary XI.

Verbs:	
कुत् + अच (<i>avakṛntāti</i>) cut off or down.	विश + प्र (<i>praviṣṭi</i>) enter. + उप seat oneself.
पठ (<i>pāṭhati</i>) recite, read.	हृ + आ (<i>āhāṛati, -te</i>) fetch, bring.

Subst.:	
अर्थ m., purpose; meaning; wealth.	पत्नी f., wife, consort.
इन्द्र m., <i>nom. pr.</i> , the god Indra.	पुत्री f., daughter.
इन्द्राणी f., <i>nom. pr.</i> , the goddess Indrāṇī.	पुस्तक n., book (manuscript).
काव्य n., poem.	पूर m., flood, high water.
ग्रन्थ m., literary work, book.	पृथिवी f., earth; ground.
जननी f., mother.	ब्राह्मण m., priest, Brāhman.
दासी f., female slave, servant.	मत्स्य m., fish.
देवी f., goddess, queen.	वापी f., cistern.
नगरी f., city.	सभा f., council, meeting.
नारी f., woman, wife.	सेना f., army.
	स्तोत्र n., song of praise.

Exercise XI.

नृपतिर्गरीं सेनयोजयत् । १ । कवयः सभायां काव्यान्यपठन् । २ ।
दास्यो ज्ञमानयन् । ३ । देवीर्देवांस हरिरपूजयत् । ४ । साधोः पत्न्या
भिषवे रूपकाणि दीयन्ते । ५ । नदीषु मत्स्यानपञ्चाम । ६ । पुस्तकं पुत्र्या
अयच्छद्विष्णुः । ७ । नगर्या रथ्यासु गजावभ्राम्यताम् । ८ । पृथिव्याः
प्रभूता विहगा उदपतन् । ९ । गृहं नद्याः पूरेणोह्यते । १० । पत्नीभिर्नरा
नगर आगच्छन् । ११ । यदा शिवो विष्णुश्च ग्रन्थमपठतां तदार्थं नावा-
गच्छाव । १२ । शिष्या गुरोर्गृहं प्राविशन्नुपाविशंश्च कटयोः पृथि-
व्याम् ॥ १३ ॥

14. When¹ ye besought⁴ (प्रपद्) the king² for protection³ (acc.),
then⁵ ye were⁷ (स्य) in misfortune⁶. 15. In the two rivers¹ Gaṅgā²
and⁴ Yamunā³ it is⁶ (वर्तते) high-water⁵. 16. The two women¹ sang⁴
a song of praise³ about Rāma² (gen.). 17. O¹ seers², why³ do ye
both sacrifice⁶ to the goddesses⁴ with melted butter⁵? 18. The queen's¹
women-servants² brought⁶ jewels³ and⁵ precious stones⁴. 19. In
anger¹ (abl.) the teacher² struck⁴ the scholar⁵ with his hand³.
20. The two servants¹ brought⁵ water⁴ from the cistern³ in pots².
21. Ye cut off⁴ (impf.) wood³ from the trees² with the axe¹. 22. The
seer¹ praised⁶ Indrānī⁴, Indra's² consort³, with hymns⁵.

Lesson XII.

185. Feminine Substantives in इ i and उ u are declined as in
the paradigms on the next page. The two series of forms exhibit
complete parallelism: where the one shows i, y, e, or ay, the other
shows respectively u, v, o, or av; cf. §§ 50, 51. In the D., Ab.-
G., and L. sing., these stems sometimes follow नदी; thus matyāi,
-yās, -yām; dhenvāi, -vās, -vām.

186. Feminines in इ i and उ u: मति 'opinion'; धेनु 'cow'.

	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
N.	मतिस् <i>matīs</i>	मतौ <i>matī</i>	मतयस् <i>matayas</i>
A.	मतिम् <i>matim</i>	" "	मतीस् <i>matīs</i>
I.	मत्या <i>matyā</i>	मतिभ्याम् <i>matibhyām</i>	मतिभिस् <i>matibhis</i>
D.	मतये <i>mataye</i>	" "	मतिभ्यस् <i>matibhyas</i>
Ab.	मतेस् <i>mates</i>	" "	" "
G.	" "	मत्योस् <i>matyos</i>	मतीनाम् <i>matīnām</i>
L.	मतौ <i>matāu</i>	" "	मतिषु <i>matiṣu</i>
V.	मते <i>mate</i>		

N.	धेनुस् <i>dhenus</i>	धेनु <i>dhenū</i>	धेनवस् <i>dhenavas</i>
A.	धेनुम् <i>dhenum</i>	" "	धेनुस् <i>dhenūs</i>
I.	धेन्वा <i>dhenvā</i>	धेनुभ्याम् <i>dhenubhyām</i>	धेनुभिस् <i>dhenubhis</i>
D.	धेनवे <i>dhenave</i>	" "	धेनुभ्यस् <i>dhenubhyas</i>
Ab.	धेनोस् <i>dhenos</i>	" "	" "
G.	" "	धेन्वोस् <i>dhenvos</i>	धेनूनाम् <i>dhenūnām</i>
L.	धेनौ <i>dhenāu</i>	" "	धेनुषु <i>dhenuṣu</i>
V.	धेनो <i>dhenō</i>		

187. Adjectives in इ i and उ u are often inflected in the fe-
minine like मति and धेनु. But adjectives in उ u preceded by one
consonant often form a derivative feminine stem by adding ई i.
Thus, बह्व 'much', N. masc. बह्वस्, f. बह्वी, n. बह्व; गुरु 'heavy',
m. गुरुस्, f. गुर्वी, n. गुरु. This fem. is then declined like नदी.

Vocabulary XII.

Verbs:	दिश् + उप (upadiśati) teach, in-
कूप (kālpatē) be in order; tend	struct.
or conduce to (u. dat.).	शिवह् (vindāti, vindāte) acquire.

Subst.:	मच्छिका f., fly, guat.
कलह m., quarrel.	मुक्ति f., salvation, deliverance.
काव्य n., poem.	यष्टि f., stick, staff.
कीर्ति f., glory.	रश्मि m., ray; rein.
गोप m., cowherd, shepherd; guardian.	रात्रि f., night.
जाति f., birth; caste; kind.	व्रण m., wound.
धृति f., decision of character; courage.	शान्ति f., repose.
पार्थिव m., prince.	श्रुति f., hearing; holy writ.
बुद्धि f., prudence, intelligence.	स्मृति f., tradition; law-book.
भक्ति f., devotion, honor.	स्वप्न m., sleep; dream.
भाग m., part, piece.	हनु f., jaw.
भूति f., prosperity, blessing.	Adj.:
भूमि f., earth, ground, land.	नीच, f. °आ, low.
	मुख्य, f. °आ, principal, first.
	लघु m., f., n., or f. °घ्वी, light.

Exercise XII.

मच्छिका व्रणमिच्छन्ति धनमिच्छन्ति पार्थिवाः ।

नीचाः कलहमिच्छन्ति शान्तिमिच्छन्ति साधवः ॥ १ ॥

शान्तिर्वर्षय इह शोभन्ते । १ । श्रुतौ बह्वीषु स्मृतिषु च धर्म उपदि-
श्यते । २ । रात्र्यां स्वप्नं न लभामहे । ३ । बह्वीं कीर्तिं धृत्वा विन्दन्नुप-
तिः । ४ । पुष्टेन मुक्तिं लभध्वे । ५ । बह्वनिष्पूरणे ऽरिष्वक्षिपन्नुपतिः । ६ ।
हन्वामश्वां लघ्ना यथाताडयम् । ७ । नृपतेर्बुद्ध्या चित्रियाणां कलहो
ऽशाम्यत् । ८ । सूद्राणां जातयो नीचा गण्यन्ते । ९ । द्विजातीनां जातिषु
ब्राह्मणा मुख्याः । १० । धर्मो भूयै कल्पते । ११ । जात्या चित्रियौ वर्तेथे । १२ ।
भूमिर्भागं ब्राह्मणायायच्छत्पार्थिवः । १३ । अश्वा अश्राम्यन्भूमावप-
तंस ॥ १४ ॥

15. Viṣṇu³ rejoices⁴ at the devotion² (*instr.*) of the pious¹ (*pl.*),
and⁶ gives⁷ deliverance⁵. 16. Men³ of many¹ castes² dwelt⁵ in the
city⁴. 17. The birds¹ see³ the hunter², and⁵ fly up⁶ from the
ground⁴. 18. By the power² of intelligence¹ we overcame⁴ advers-

ity³. 19. The cowherd¹ guards⁴ the cows³ in the wood². 20. By
intelligence¹ and³ diligence² ye acquire⁶ much⁴ glory⁵. 21. The
poem¹ tends⁴ to the poet's² glory³ (*two datives*). 22. For prosperity¹
we bow before³ Īva² (*acc.*). 23. The reins¹ are being fastened⁴
(*बन्ध्*) to the horse's² jaws³ (*loc.*). 24. In the night¹ we both read³
(*impf.*) holy writ².

Lesson XIII.

188. Verbs, *a*-conjugation. Imperfect Middle. The imperfect
middle of verbs in *a* is as follows:

	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
1. अलभे <i>ālabhe</i> (<i>a + i</i>)	०भावहि <i>ālabhāvahi</i>	०भामहि <i>ālabhāmahi</i>	
2. अलभथास् <i>ālabhathās</i>	०भेधाम् <i>ālabhethām</i>	०भध्वम् <i>ālabhadhvam</i>	
3. अलभत <i>ālabhata</i>	०भेताम् <i>ālabhetām</i>	०भन्त <i>ālabhanta</i>	

With एधाम् and एताम् of the dual, cf. एधे and एते of the
pres. ind. mid. The *impf. pass.* is similarly inflected.

189. Root-words in ई ि are declined as follows:

	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
N. V. धीस् <i>dhīs</i>	धियौ <i>dhīyāu</i>		धियस् <i>dhīyas</i>
A. धियम् <i>dhīyam</i>	" "	" "	" "
I. धिया <i>dhīyā</i>	धीभ्याम् <i>dhībhyām</i>		धीभिस् <i>dhībhis</i>
D. धिये <i>dhīye</i>	" "	" "	धीभ्यस् <i>dhībhyas</i>
Abl. धियस् <i>dhīyas</i>	" "	" "	" "
G. " "	धियोस् <i>dhīyos</i>		धियाम् <i>dhīyām</i>
L. धियि <i>dhīyi</i>	" "	" "	धीषु <i>dhīṣu</i>

In the D., Ab.-Gen., and L. sing., and G. pl., these stems
sometimes follow नदी; thus, *dhīyāi*, *dhīyās*, *dhīyām*, *dhīnām*. Cf.
§ 185 Observe that where the case-ending begins with a vowel
the stem-final ि is split into *iy*.

190. The following additional prefixes are used with verbs: अधि 'over, above, on'; अपि 'unto, close upon'*; अभि 'to, unto', 'against' (often with implied violence); नि 'down, into, in'; प्रति 'back to, against, in return'; वि 'apart, away, out'.

191. Both in verbal forms and in derivatives, the final इ or उ of a prefix ordinarily linguilizes the initial स् of a root to which it is prefixed; and, in a few cases, the ष remains even after an interposed अ of augment or reduplication; thus, from सद् + नि, निषीदति; स्था + अधि, pres. pass. अधिष्ठीयते, impf. pass. अधिष्ठीयत.

192. The final स् of prefixes in इस् and उस् becomes ष before initial क्, ख्, प्, फ्; thus, from पद् + निस्, निष्पद्यते.

Vocabulary XIII.

Verbs:	भाष् + प्रति (<i>pratibhāṣate</i>) answer
क्रम् + अति (<i>atīkrāmati, -krāmate</i>)	(<i>w. acc. of pers.</i>).
pass beyond or by, transgress.	भू + प्र arise; rule.
जन् + उद् (<i>ujjāyate</i>) be born,	रच् (<i>racādyati</i>) arrange, compose
arise from (<i>abl.</i>).	(a literary work).
+ प्र arise, come into existence.	सिध् + प्रति (<i>pratiśēdhati</i>) hold
धा + अपि (<i>vinācyati</i>) disappear,	back; forbid.
perish.	सेव् + नि (<i>niśēvate</i>) dwell; devote
नह् + सम् (<i>saṁndhyati</i>) gird;	oneself to; attend.
equip.	स्था + अधि mount, stand above
पद् + निस् (<i>niṣpādyate</i>) grow;	or over; rule, govern.
arise from (<i>abl.</i>).	हन् + प्रति hinder; injure; offend.

* Sometimes, with the verbs नह् and धा, abbreviated to पि; but in classical Skt. most commonly used as a conjunction: 'also', 'too'.

Subst.:

अनुज्ञा f., permission.	मेखला f., girdle.
ईश्वर m., god; lord.	मोह m., infatuation.
कपोत m., dove.	रथ m., wagon.
कर्ण m., ear.	लोभ m., desire, avarice.
काम m., love, desire.	वसति f., dwelling.
कारण n., reason, cause.	श्री f., luck, fortune, riches; <i>as</i>
क्रोध m., anger.	<i>nom. pr.</i> , goddess of fortune.
जाल n., net.	समुद्र m., ocean.
धी f., understanding, insight.	सृष्टि f., creation.
नाश m., destruction.	ह्री f., modesty, bashfulness.
पद्म m., n., lotus.	Adj.:
पुरुष m., man (<i>homo</i>).	कृत्स्न. f. °आ, whole.
महाराज m., great king.	चारु, f. °रु, beautiful.
मुनि m., sage; ascetic.	धीर, f. °आ, steadfast, brave.
	श्वेत, f. °आ, white.

Exercise XIII.

लोभात्क्रोधः प्रभवति लोभात्कामः प्रजायते ।

लोभान्मोहश्च नाशश्च लोभः पापस्य कारणम् ॥ २ ॥

नृपतिर्ऋषिणा पापात्प्रत्यधिष्यत । १ । हरेर्भार्यायां चारवः पुत्राश्च जायन्त । २ । धीरं पुरुषं श्रियः सदा निषेवन्ते । ३ । पार्थिवस्त्रां शत्रून् अत्यक्रमेताम् । ४ । पद्मं श्रिया (*gen.*) वसतिः । ५ । धियो बलेन पुरुषा दुःखानि पारयन्ति । ६ । रथो ऽधिष्ठीयत रामेण । ७ । कवेर्गृहं श्रियाः शोभत । ८ । शिशून् आह्वयेथां जनन्या । ९ । भानुमैत्रतर्षिः । १० । गुरोरनुज्ञया कटे शिष्यावुपाविशताम् । ११ । मुनिरीश्वरस्य सृष्टिं ध्यायति । १२ । चेत्रेषु धान्यं निष्पद्यते । १३ । गुरवो गन्थान् रचयन्ति शिष्याश्च पुस्तकानि लिखन्ति ॥ १४ ॥

15. *The goddess of fortune was born from the ocean. 16. Why did ye hold your ears shut? (*pass. constr.*) 17. "The Çūdras spoke

* As the principal euphonic rules have now been stated and

the language of the Aryans": thus answered (*impers. pass.*) the Brāhmins. 18. By its cleverness the dove was freed from the net. 19. The teacher girded both boys with the girdle. 20. When the scholar's modesty disappeared, then the law was offended *against*. 21. Whence did ye get (लक्ष्म) the white cows? 22. The whole earth was ruled by the great king. 23. For prosperity (*dat.*) we took refuge with the king (प्र-पद्). 24. Two law-books were composed by Viṣṇu. 25. The milk of the black cow is drunk by both children.

Lesson XIV.

193. Verbs, *a*-conjugation. Present Imperative Active. The inflection of this mode is as follows:

	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
1.	वदानि <i>vādāni</i>	वदाव <i>vādāva</i>	वदाम <i>vādāma</i>
2.	वद <i>vāda</i>	वदतम् <i>vādatam</i>	वदत <i>vādāta</i>
3.	वदतु <i>vādātu</i>	वदताम् <i>vādatām</i>	वदन्तु <i>vādāntu</i>

194. The three first persons are properly subjunctive forms, and accordingly often express a wish or future action.

195. The second and third persons of the imperative express oftenest a command; sometimes a wish or future action. The negative used with the *inv.* is मा.

196. A rare *inv.* form, either 2nd or 3rd pers. sing. (or plur.), is made with the ending तात्; thus, भवतात्. Its value is that of a posterior or future *inv.* (like the Latin forms in *to* and *tote*).

197. Root-words in ऊ *ū*, inflected like भू *f.*, 'earth'.

exemplified in the exercises, no further indication need be made, except in special instances, of the position of the words in the Sanskrit.

	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
NV.	भूस् <i>bhūs</i>	भुवौ <i>bhuvāu</i>	भुवस् <i>bhuvas</i>
A.	भुवम् <i>bhuvam</i>	" "	" "
I.	भुवा <i>bhuvā</i>	भूभ्याम् <i>bhūbhyām</i>	भूमिस् <i>bhūbhīs</i>
D.	भुवे <i>bhuve</i>	" "	भूभ्यस् <i>bhūbhyas</i>
Ab.	भुवस् <i>bhuvas</i>	" "	" "
G.	" "	भुवोस् <i>bhuvos</i>	भुवाम् <i>bhuvām</i>
L.	भुवि <i>bhuvi</i>	" "	भुषु <i>bhūṣu</i>

In the D., Ab.-G., and L. sing., and G. pl., these stems sometimes follow नदी; thus, *bhuvāi*, *bhuvās*, *bhuvām*, *bhūnām*. Cf. §§ 185, 189.

198. Polysyllabic Feminines in ऊ *ū*, inflected like वधु *f.*, 'woman'.

	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
N.	वधुस् <i>vadhūs</i>	वध्वौ <i>vadhvāu</i>	वध्वस् <i>vadhvas</i>
A.	वधुम् <i>vadhūm</i>	" "	वधुस् <i>vadhūs</i>
I.	वध्वा <i>vadhvā</i>	वधुभ्याम् <i>vadhūbhyām</i>	वधुमिस् <i>vadhūbhīs</i>
D.	वध्वै <i>vadhvāi</i>	" "	वधुभ्यस् <i>vadhūbhyas</i>
Ab.	वध्वास् <i>vadhvās</i>	" "	" "
G.	" "	वध्वोस् <i>vadhvos</i>	वधुनाम् <i>vadhūnām</i>
L.	वध्वाम् <i>vadhvām</i>	" "	वधुषु <i>vadhūṣu</i>
V.	वधु <i>vadhu</i>		

Vocabulary XIV.

Verbs:	
अस् + अभि (<i>abhyāsya</i>)	दृश् <i>in pass.</i> (<i>dr̥ṣyāte</i>) seem, look.
अस् + अभि (<i>abhyāsya</i>) repeat,	वस् + नि (<i>nivāsati</i>) inhabit; dwell.
study, learn.	वृत् + प्र (<i>pravārtate</i>) get a-going,
+ प्र (<i>prāsya</i>) throw forward or	break out, arise.
into.	शुच् (<i>śocati</i>) sorrow, grieve.
दिश + आ (<i>ādīcāti</i>) command.	सद् + नि (<i>niśīdati</i>) seat oneself.

Subst.:

अतिथि m., guest.
 अनृत n., untruth.
 अभ्यास m., study; recitation.
 आदेश m., command, prescription.
 आसन n., seat, chair.
 जुहू f., spoon, esp. sacrificial spoon.
 पाठ m., lecture, lesson.
 प्रजा f., creature; subject.
 भू f., earth, ground.
 भूषण n., ornament.
 भ्रू f., eyebrow.
 वधू f., woman, wife.
 वेदि f., altar.
 श्वश्रू f., mother-in-law.

स्तुति f., song of praise; praise.
 स्नुषा f., daughter-in-law.

Adj.:

अपर, f. °आ, lower; other.
 पर, f. °आ, highest; other.
 वक्र, f. °आ, crooked, bent.
 सुन्दर, f. ई, beautiful.

Adv.:

अधस्तात् under, underneath (gen.).
 चिरम् long (of time).
 दीर्घम् far, afar.
 मा prohibitive particle, like Greek
 μή, Latin ne.
 वा (postpos.) or.
 इत्थम् near by.

Exercise XIV.

धर्मं चरत माधर्मं सत्त्वं वदत मानृतम् ।

दीर्घं पश्यत मा इत्थं परं पश्यत मापरम् ॥ ३ ॥

जयतु महाराजश्चिरं च कृत्स्नां भुवमधितिष्ठतु । १ । प्रयागं गच्छतं सु-
 खेन च तत्र निवसतम् । २ । सुन्दर्या (gen.) भुवी वक्रे दृश्येते । ३ ।
 गुरव आसने निषीदन्तु भुवि शिष्याः । ४ । स्नुषाभिः सह श्वश्रूणां कलहः
 प्रावर्तत । ५ । हे चन्द्रियाः कुन्तान्धिपतेषून्मुञ्चत पापाञ्जशून्दण्डयतेति
 क्रोधान्नृपतिरभाषत । ६ । अतिथिं पृच्छतु रात्री कुत्र न्यवस इति । ७ ।
 श्वश्रूः कोपाच्छोचतः स्नुषे । ८ । वध्याः स्निह्यन्त्युषिः । ९ । पाठस्वाभ्या-
 साय शिष्यावागच्छतामिति गुरोराज्ञा । १० । जुह्वापी घृतं प्रास्या-
 नि । ११ । हे वधु वाप्या जलमानय । १२ । जुह्वां घृतं तिष्ठति । १३ ।
 भुवोरधस्तात्नेत्रे वर्तेते ॥ १४ ॥

15. The women sing the praises (singular) of Indrāṇī (pass. constr.). 16. "Study ye holy writ and the sciences, speak the

truth, honor your teachers": thus¹ is the prescription³ of the text-books² for scholars⁴ (gen.). 17. Let kings protect their subjects and punish the wicked: thus is the law not offended (हा pass.). 18. O women, reverence your mothers-in-law. 19. Let not the coachman strike or torment the horses. 20. "Bring the jewels": thus the two maid-servants were commanded by the queen. 21. Let us with two spoons drop water on the altar. 22. "Let us play with dice for money" (instr.): thus spoke the two warriors (pass.). 23. "To-day let me initiate (inv.) my two sons": thus says the Brāhman. 24. Let the men dig a cistern.

Lesson XV.

199. Verbs, a-conjugation. Present Imperative Middle. The present imperative middle is inflected thus:

	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
1. लभे	लभै	लभावहे	लभामहे
2. लभस्व	लभथा	लभेथाम्	लभध्वम्
3. लभताम्	लभताम्	लभेताम्	लभन्ताम्

200. The first persons are really subjunctive forms. The inflection of the passive inv. is precisely similar; thus, क्रिये, क्रियस्व, क्रियताम्, etc.

201. Nouns in ऋ r. These stems, like many belonging to the consonant-declension, exhibit in their inflection a difference of stem-form: strong, middle, and weak. (For the cases called strong, etc., see Introd., § 87). In the weak cases (except loc. sing.) the stem-final is ऋ r, which in the weakest cases is changed naturally to रr. But as regards the strong cases, the stems of this declension fall into two classes: in the one — which is much the larger, comprising all the nomina agentis, and a few others — the ऋ is vriddhied, becoming आर् ar; while in the other class, containing

most nouns of relationship, the अच् is gunated, becoming अर् ar. In both classes, the loc. sing. has अर् ar as stem-final. The abl.-gen. sing. is of peculiar formation; and the final र r is dropped in the nominative singular.

202. Nomina agentis in अच् r, like कर्तृ m., 'doer'.

	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
N.	कर्ता kartā	कर्तारौ kartārāu	कर्तारस् kartāras
A.	कर्तारम् kartāram	" "	कर्तृन् kartṛṇ
I.	कर्त्रा kartrā	कर्तृभ्याम् -tr̥bhyām	कर्तृभिस् kartr̥bhīḥ
D.	कर्त्रे kartrē	" "	कर्तृभ्यस् kartr̥bhyas
Ab.	कर्तुर् kartur (or -us)	" "	" "
G.	" "	कर्त्रोस् kartros	कर्तृणाम् kartṛṇām
L.	कर्तरि kartari	" "	कर्तृषु kartṛṣu
V.	कर्तार kartar		

203. Two nouns of relationship, स्वसृ f., "sister", and नप्तृ m., 'grandson', follow this declension; but स्वसृ makes the acc. pl. स्वसृस् *svasṛ-s*.

204. The nouns of agency are sometimes used participially, or with adjective value. The corresponding feminine-stem is made in ई, and declined like नदी; thus, कर्त्री kartrī.

205. The grammarians prescribe a complete neuter declension also for bases in तृ, precisely analogous with that of वारि or मधु, but such forms are rare.

Vocabulary XV.

Verbs:	वद् + वि (<i>vivādate</i>) dispute, argue.
गम् + अनु (<i>anugacchati</i>) follow.	त्रि + आ (<i>ācṛyate</i>) go for protection to, take refuge with
चर् + सम्-आ (<i>samācārati</i>) commit, perform, do.	(<i>acc.</i>).

Subst.:	पद n., step.
आचार्य m., teacher.	प्रायश्चित्त n., penance, expiation.
कर्तृ m., doer, maker, author; as <i>adj.</i> , doing, making.	भर्तृ m., supporter, preserver; lord, husband; master.
काल m., time.	रक्षितृ m., protector.
कृपा f., graciousness, pity.	व्यवहार m., trial, law-suit.
दातृ m., giver; as <i>adj.</i> , generous.	शास्त्रु m., punisher, governor.
दुर्जन m., scamp, rogue.	सृष्टृ m., creator.
द्रष्टृ m., seer, author (of Vedic books); as <i>adj.</i> , seeing.	नमस् n., honor, glory (<i>often as indecl., w. foll'g dat.</i>).
धातृ m., creator.	Adj.:
निश्चय m., decision; certainty.	दरिद्र, f. °आ, poor.
नेतृ m., leader.	वर, f. °आ, best, most excellent: better (<i>w. foll'g abl.</i>).
पण्डित m., learned man; <i>pandit</i> .	

Exercise XV.

दुर्जनस्य च सर्पस्य वरं सर्पो न दुर्जनः ।

सर्पो दशति कालेन दुर्जनस्तु पदे पदे* ॥ ४ ॥

आचार्यं लभस्व प्रायश्चित्तं समाचरेति पापं द्विजातय आदिशन्ति । १ । काव्यानि रचयाम कीर्तिं विन्दाम नृपतीनाश्रयामहे श्रियं लभामहा इति कवयो वदन्ति । २ । स्वसृगृहे कन्ये व्यवसताम् । ३ । नृपे रक्षितरि** सुखेन प्रजा वसन्ति । ४ । धर्माय देवान्यजावहा अर्थाय कीर्तये च सभासु पण्डितैः सह विवदावहा इति ब्राह्मणस्य पुत्रयोर्निश्चयः । ५ । मुक्तय (dat.) ईश्वरः सृष्टेः कर्ता मनुष्यैर्भक्त्या सेव्यताम् । ६ । नृपतयः प्रजानां रक्षितारो दुर्जनानां च शास्त्रारो वर्तन्ताम् । ७ । शास्त्रस्य कर्त्रे पाणिनेये नमः । ८ । लोकस्य सृष्टृभ्यो वसूनां दातृभ्यो देवेभ्यो नमो नमः ॥ ९ ॥

* Words are often repeated, to give an intensive, a distributive, or a repetitional meaning. So here: "at every step". The position of च is very unusual; it would naturally follow सर्पस्य.

** Loc. absol. — supply "being".

10. Let the wife love *her* husband. 11. Let the warriors follow *their* leaders and fight with the enemy (*pl.*). 12. At the river the boy is to meet his two sisters (*instr.*). 13. The world was created by the creator. 14. In the houses of pious givers alms is given to ascetics. 15. King Bhoja was (**अवर्तत**) generous toward the author (*loc.*) of the eulogies. 16. Let servants always be useful to (**सिक्**) *their* masters (*acc.*). 17. For protection⁴ (*acc.*) betake yourselves⁵ to the gods³, the protectors² of the pious¹. 18. Men live by the graciousness of the creator. 19. O generous one, the poor bend *before thee!* 20. The man leads his sisters to the city (*pass. constr.*).

Lesson XVI.

206. Verbs, *a*-conjugation. Present Optative Active. The present optative is formed from the general present-stem by the addition of a mode-sign, after which are used secondary endings (in 3rd pl. act. **उस्** *us*, in 1st sing. mid. **अ** *a*, in 3rd pl. mid. **रन्** *ran*). After an *a*-stem, this mode-sign, in all voices, is **ई** *ī*, unaccented, which blends with the final *a* to **ए** *e* (accented, or not, according to the accent of the *a*): and the **ए** is maintained unchanged before a vowel-ending (**अम्**, **उस्**, **आयाम्**, **आताम्**) by means of an interposed euphonic **य** *y*. The inflection in the active voice is as follows:

	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
1.	वदेयम् <i>vādeyam</i>	वदेव <i>vādeva</i>	वदेम <i>vādema</i>
2.	वदेस् <i>vādes</i>	वदेतम् <i>vādetam</i>	वदेत <i>vādeta</i>
3.	वदेत् <i>vādet</i>	वदेताम् <i>vādetām</i>	वदेयुस् <i>vādeyus</i>

Similarly, **विशेयम्** *viśeyam*, **नह्येयम्** *nāhyeyam*, **चोरयेयम्** *cordāyeyam*, etc.

207. The optative expresses: 1. wish or desire; 2. request or entreaty; 3. what is desirable or proper; 4. what may or might, can or could be. It is also largely used in conditional sentences. The subject is often indefinite and unexpressed. The negative used with the opt. is **न** *na*. Both the prescriptive and the prohibitive optative are very common.

208. The nouns of relationship in **ञ्** (except **स्वसृ** and **नप्तृ** — see § 203) gunate **ञ्** in the strong cases; thus, **पितृ** *m.*, 'father', **मातृ** *f.*, 'mother', declined as follows:

	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
N.	पिता माता	पितरौ मातरौ	पितरस् मातरस्
A.	पितरम् मातरम्	" "	पितृन् मातृन्
I.	पित्रा मात्रा	पितृभ्याम् मातृभ्याम्	पितृभिस् मातृभिस्
	etc.	etc.	etc.
V.	पितरु मातरु		

209. The stem **गो** *m., f.*, 'bull' or 'cow', is declined thus:

	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
NV.	गीस् <i>gāus</i>	गावौ <i>gāvāu</i>	गावस् <i>gāvas</i>
A.	गाम् <i>gām</i>	" "	गास् <i>gās</i>
I.	गवा <i>gavā</i>	गोभ्याम् <i>gobhyām</i>	गोभिस् <i>gobhis</i>
D.	गवे <i>gave</i>	" "	गोभ्यस् <i>gobhyas</i>
Ab.	गोस् <i>gos</i>	" "	" "
G.	" "	गवोस् <i>gavos</i>	गवाम् <i>gavām</i>
L.	गवि <i>gavi</i>	" "	गोषु <i>goṣu</i>

Vocabulary XVI.

Verbs:
मन् (*mānyate*) think, suppose.
मुद् (*mōdate*) rejoice.
शंस (*śānsati*) proclaim (see also in Vocab. I.).

स्मृ (*smāрати; p. smāryāte*) remember; think of; teach, *esp. in pass.* 'it is taught', i. e. 'traditional'.

Subst.:

गो m., f., bull, steer, cow; f., speech.

गोख n., ox-nature; stupidity.

घास m., fodder, hay.

जामातृ m., son-in-law.

दुहितृ f., daughter.

पङ्क n., mud, bog.

पितृ m., father; du., parents; pl., manes.

प्रयोक्तृ m., user, arranger.

बुध m., wise man, sage.

भातृ m., brother.

मातृ f., mother.

मास m., month.

युग्म n., pair.

रक्षण n., protection.

श्राद्ध n., an oblation to the manes, accompanied by a sacrificial

meal and gifts to the Brāh-
mans.

Adj.:

अधिक, f. °आ, more, greater,
greatest.

कामदुघ, f. °आ, granting wishes;
as f., sc. घेनु, the fabulous Won-
der-cow.

दुष्प्रयुक्त, f. °आ, badly arranged
or used.

प्रयुक्त, f. °आ, arranged, used.

श्रेष्ठ, f. आ, best.

Pron.:

सा f., she, it.

Adv. and Conj.:

चेत् if.

नित्यम् always, daily.

यदि if.

सम्यक् well, properly.

Exercise XVI.

गीर्गीः कामदुघा* सम्यक् प्रयुक्ता स्मर्यते बुधैः ।

दुष्प्रयुक्ता पुनर्गीर्वाणं प्रयोक्तुः सैव शंसति ॥ ५ ॥

भर्तारं भर्तुंश्च पितरं मातरं च पत्नी देवानिव पूजयेत् । १ । गा रक्षेत्र-
वां रक्षणेन पुखं भवतीति द्विजातयो मन्यन्ते । २ । यदा प्रयाग आग-
च्छेत् तदा पित्रे पत्रं लिखेत् । ३ । पितृभ्यो मासे मासे श्राद्धं यच्छेत् । ४ ।
ग्राममद्य गच्छेत्तमिति मातरौ पुत्रावभाषेताम् । ५ । गोः वीरेण शि-
श्वो मोदन्ताम् । ६ । गामतिथये पचेत्पितृषिर्भार्यामवदत् । ७ । दुहि-

* Predicate. Play upon words throughout the verse.

तरं पितरौ रक्षेतां स्वसारं भातरौ मातृः पुत्राश्च रक्षेयुः । ८ । यदि
शास्त्रमभ्यस्येयं तदा गुरवस्तुषेयुः । ९ । हे स्वसः पित्रोर्गृहे तिष्ठे । १० ।
वाङ्म्यां नदीं न तरेत् । ११ । हे शिशवः पितृन्सेवध्वं भ्रातृणां लि-
ह्यत ॥ १२ ॥

13. By Rṣabhadatta, son-in-law of Nahapāna, many cattle and
villages and much money were given to the Brāhmins. 14. Thou
shalt give the mother's jewels to the sisters (*opt. or inv.*). 15. Let
the coachman bring (आ-ह) fodder for the horses; let him not tor-
ment the horses. 16. Of the father's property a greater part is to
be given (*inv.*) to the eldest of the brothers. 17. "Children, bring
wood and water into the house daily"; thus was the father's com-
mand. 18. Let the cows graze in the forest. 19. Let both live on
the milk (*instr.*) of the black cow. 20. The wagon is drawn by
two steers. 21. The seer rejoices over the pair (*instr.*) of white
steers. 22. Hari and Çiva marry two sisters, the daughters of Rāma.

Lesson XVII.

210. Verbs, a-conjugation. Present Optative Middle. The
optative middle (and passive) of a-stems, formed as shown in the
preceding lesson, is inflected as follows:

Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
1. लभेय <i>lābheya</i>	लभेवहि <i>lābhevahi</i>	लभेमहि <i>lābhemahi</i>
2. लभेथास् <i>lābhetās</i>	लभेयाथाम् <i>lābheyāthām</i>	लभेध्वम् <i>lābhedhvam</i>
3. लभेत <i>lābheta</i>	लभेयाताम् <i>lābheyātām</i>	लभेरन् <i>lābheran</i>

Similarly चोरयेत् *corayeya*, संगच्छेत् *saṅgaccheya*, etc.

211. Declension. The stem नौ f., 'ship, boat', is entirely reg-
ular, taking throughout the normal endings, as given in § 90.
Thus: नौस्, नावम्, नावा, etc.; नावौ, नौभ्याम्, etc.; नावस्,
नौभिस्, etc.

212. The stems ending in long vowels (आ, ई, ऊ) fall into two well-marked classes: A. root-stems — mostly monosyllabic — and their compounds, with a comparatively small number of others inflected like them; B. derivative feminine stems in आ and ई, with a few in ऊ, inflected like जाया, नदी and वधू. The stems of class A take the normal endings throughout, with optional exceptions in dat., abl.-gen., and loc. sing. fem., and with न् inserted before आम् of the gen. pl. The simple words are as nouns with few exceptions fem.; as adjectives (rare), and in adjective compounds, they coincide in masc. and fem. forms. The declension of the simple words in ई and ऊ has been given (in §§ 189, 197); those in आ are so rare that it is not possible to make up a whole scheme of forms in actual use.

213. When any root in आ or ई or ऊ is found as final member of a compound word, these root-finals are treated as follows: 1. Roots in आ lose that vowel before vowel-endings, except in the strong cases and in the acc. pl., which is like the nominative. Thus, विश्व-पा m., f., 'all-protecting':

Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
N.V. विश्वपास् -pās	विश्वपौ -pāu	विश्वपास् -pās
A. विश्वपाम् -pām	विश्वपाभ्याम्	" "
I. विश्वपा विष्वाप-ā	विश्वपोस् विष्वाप-os	विश्वपाभिस् etc.

214. 2. Roots in ई and ऊ change their final vowel, before vowel-endings, into य् and व्, if but one consonant precede the final vowel; but if two or more consonants precede, the change is into ह्य् and उव्. Thus, यव-क्री m., f., 'corn-buying': nom.-voc. यव-क्रीस्, acc. यवक्रियम्; खल-पू m., f., 'street-sweeper': nom. sing. खलपूस्, acc. खलप्वम्.

Vocabulary XVII.

Verbs:	रम् (<i>rámate</i>) amuse oneself.
ईच् + प्रति (<i>pratīkṣate</i>) expect.	+ वि (<i>virámati</i>) cease from (<i>abl.</i>);
नन्द् + अभि (<i>abhinándati</i> , poet.	cease.
-te) rejoice in, greet with joy	स्था + अनु (<i>anutiṣṭhati</i>) follow out,
(<i>acc.</i>).	accomplish.
Subst.:	मित्र n., friend.
उद्यान n., garden.	युद्ध n., battle.
कृषि f., agriculture.	वाणिज्य n., trade.
जीवित n., life.	विधि m., rule; fate.
निदेश m., command.	श्वशुर m., father-in-law.
पशुपाल्य n., cattle-raising.	Adj.:
पुरोहित m., domestic priest, chap-	भद्र, f. °आ, good, pleasant, dear;
lain.	as n. subst., fortune.
भक्षण n., eating.	संदिग्ध, f. °आ, doubtful; un-
भृतक m., servant.	steady.
मरण n., death.	

Exercise XVII.

नाभिनन्देत मरणं नाभिनन्देत जीवितम् ।

कालमेव प्रतीचेत निदेशं भृतको यथा* ॥ ६ ॥

आतरि स्तेनाः शरानमुञ्चन् । १ । यदि नराः श्रुतेः स्मृतेश्च विधीननुतिष्ठे-
युक्तदा साधुभिः शस्त्रैरन् । २ । वैश्याः कृष्या वाणिज्येन पशुपाल्येन वा
वर्तेरन् । ३ । संदिग्धां नावं नारोहेत् । ४ । यदि गङ्गाया वारिणि मि-
येध्वं तदा स्वर्गं लभेध्वम् । ५ । जामातरः श्वशुरान्पुत्राः श्वश्रुर्दुहितरश्च
पुत्राश्च पितरौ सेवेरन् । ६ । ब्राह्मणेर्नावीदधिर्न तीर्थेत् । ७ । शत्रुभिर्न
पराजयेथा इति नृपतिं प्रजा वदन्ति । ८ । नृपती अरिभिर्युधेया-
ताम् । ९ । नौषु युद्धमभवत् । १० । बालावुद्याने रमेयाताम् ॥ ११ ॥

* Rule for an ascetic, who is to put aside all earthly desires and passions.

12. Let fodder be brought (आ-ह) (*opt., inv.*) by the brother for the horses of the all-protecting king. 13. May ye see good fortune (*pl.*); may ye acquire (लभ्) glory. 14. The king with his warriors crossed the sea in a ship. 15. Tell (*opt., inv.*) where our friends may meet with their brothers. 16. You may amuse yourselves in the garden, but cease eating (*abl. of भक्षण*) the fruits (*gen.*). 17. Mayest thou be saved (*ud-hr*: cf. § 267) by the all-protector from thy misfortune. 18. To-day let the king's two sons be consecrated (*opt., inv.*) by the house-priest. 19. Ye both shall greet (*opt., inv.*) your parents. 20. If we two should speak untruth, then we should be punished by the king. 21. May I conquer the enemies with my brave warriors: thus is the king's wish (*use इष् pass.*). 22. May we receive the reward of virtue.

Lesson XVIII.

215. **Causative.** The chief points to be noticed in the formation of causative-stems have been given already (in Less. VII); some additional ones follow.

216. Most roots in आ and अ add प् before the conjugation-sign; thus, दापयति from 1दा; धापयति; गापयति; अर्पयति from अ. आ makes अपयति; ज्ञा and ज्ञा, sometimes ज्ञापयति, etc., sometimes ज्ञपयति, etc. 1पा, 'drink', makes पाययति (as though from पी). A few roots in इ and ई take the same प्, with various irregularities; thus, अध्यापयति from अधि-इ.

217. Medial or initial अ in a light syllable is commonly lengthened, but sometimes remains unchanged. Thus, पत्, पातयति; कम्, कामयति; चम्, चामयति. But most roots in अम्, and अन्, त्वर्, प्रथ्, व्यथ्, with other rarer ones, generally keep the अ short thus, गम्, गमयति.

218. Final vowels take *vrddhi* before अच्; thus, भू, भावयति; कृ, कारयति.

219. Some verbs of causative meaning are by formation denominatives; thus पालयति, 'protect', called causative to 2पा; प्रीणयति, to प्री; भीषयति, to भी; घातयति, to हन्.

220. For the passive of causatives, see Less. X.

221. The causatives of intransitive verbs are transitive. The causatives of transitive verbs are construed sometimes (*a*) with two accusatives, sometimes (*b*) with an acc. of the object and an instrumental of the agent. Thus, "he causes the birds to eat the cakes" may be rendered either (*a*): विहगान् पिपडान् खादयति, or (*b*) विहगैः पिपडां खां.

222. **Participles.** The general participial endings are अन् (weak form अत्) for the active, and आन for the middle. But after a tense-stem in अ, the active suffix is virtually न्, one of the two अ's being lost; and the middle suffix is मान (except आन sometimes in causative forms). Thus, भवन्् bhávant, तुदन्् tudánt, दीव्यन्् divyant, चोरयन्् coráyant; भवमान bhávamāna, etc. For the declension of the participles in अन् see below, Less. XXIII.

223. **Pronoun of the First Person.** The pronominal declension exhibits some striking peculiarities which are not easily explained. The pronoun of the first person is declined thus:

	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
N.	अहम्	आवाम्	वयम्
A.	माम्, मा	आवाम्, नौ	अस्मान्, नस्
I.	मया	आवाभ्याम्	अस्माभिस्
D.	मह्यम्, मे	" , नौ	अस्मभ्यम्, नस्
Ab.	मत्	"	अस्मत्
G.	मम, मे	आवयोस्, नौ	अस्माकम्, नस्
L.	मयि	"	अस्मासु

224. The forms मा, मे, नी, नस् are enclitic, and are never used at the beginning of a sentence, or before the particles च, एव, वा.

225. In pronouns of the first and second persons the plural is often used for the singular. Pronouns (and other words as well) show in Sanskrit a curious tendency to agree in form with the predicate rather than with the subject to which they refer.

Vocabulary XVIII.

Verbs, with causatives:	मृ die; caus. (<i>mārdyati</i>) kill.
अश्न् eat; caus. (<i>āśyati</i>) make eat; give to eat.	यज् sacrifice; caus. (<i>yājyati</i>) make to sacrifice; offer sacrifice for (<i>acc.*</i>).
द् + अधि study, read; caus. (<i>adhyāpāyati</i>) teach.	वद् + अभि in caus. (<i>abhivādāyati</i>) greet.
कूप् in caus. (<i>kalpāyati, -te</i>) make; ordain, appoint.	विद् know; caus. (<i>vedāyati</i>) inform (<i>dat.</i>).
जन् in caus. (<i>janāyati</i>) beget.	+ नि in caus. inform (<i>dat.</i>).
ज्ञा + आ in caus. (<i>ājñāpāyati</i>) command.	वृध् (<i>vārdhate</i>) grow; caus. (<i>vardhayāti, -te</i>) make grow; bring up.
दा give; caus. (<i>dāpāyati</i>) make give or pay.	व्यथ् in caus. (<i>vyathāyati</i>) torment.
दृश् see; in caus. (<i>darśāyati</i>) show.	श्रु hear; in caus. (<i>śrāvāyati</i>) make hear, i. e. recite, proclaim (<i>acc. of pers.</i>).
धा + परि, in caus. (<i>dhāpāyati</i>) make put on, clothe in (<i>two acc.</i>).	स्था stand; in caus. (<i>sthāpāyati</i>) put, place; appoint; stop.
नी + अप lead away (caus. <i>apānāyati</i>).	+ प्र (<i>pratiśthate</i>) start off; in caus. (<i>prasthāpāyati</i>) send.
प्रथ् in caus. (<i>prathāyati</i>) spread, proclaim.	

* The priest who performs sacrifice for the benefit of another person is said to "make that person sacrifice", as though the latter (who is called यजमान) were celebrating the sacrifice for himself.

Subst.:	दास m., slave, groom.
अमृत n., nectar.	दूत m., messenger, envoy.
उपनयन n., initiation, investiture.	पाटलिपुत्र n., <i>nom. pr.</i> , the city of Patnā.
कर m., hand; trunk (of elephant); ray; toll, tax.	मनोरथ m., wish.
कालिदास m., <i>nom. pr.</i> , a noted poet.	वस्त्र n., garment.
काशी f., <i>nom. pr.</i> , the city of Benares.	विधि m., Brahman (the deity).
गुण m., quality; excellent quality, excellence.	वृक m., wolf.
दशरथ m., <i>nom. pr.</i> (Rāma's father).	वेद m., science, knowledge; esp. sacred knowledge, holy writ.
	Adj.:
	नवीन, f. °आ, new.
	स्व, f. °आ, own, one's own.

Exercise XVIII.

सूत । अधुना स्थापय रथम् । १ । यथाज्ञापयति देवः ॥ २ ॥ दशरथश्चारुन्पुत्रानजनयत् । ३ । कालिदासस्व काव्यं मां आवयेः । ४ । वैश्वान्करान्दापयेन्नृपः । ५ । उपनयने बालान्नवीनानि वस्त्राणि परिधापयेयुः । ६ । भ्रातरो ऽस्मान्नगरं प्रास्थापयन् । ७ । स्वसार आगच्छन्तीति मह्यं न्यवेद्यत । ८ । वायोर्बलेन तरवो ऽपात्यन्त । ९ । चचिया युञ्जे ऽरीन्मारयन्ति । १० । कवयो ऽस्माकं गुणान्प्रथयेयुः कीर्तिं च वर्धयेयुरिति पार्थिवैरिष्यते । ११ । अहं प्रयागे निवसामि रामः काश्चां तिष्ठति । १२ । ग्रन्थो ऽस्माभी रच्यते पुस्तकं रामेण लेखयामः ॥ १३ ॥

14. I cause a mat to be made (*caus. pass.*). 15. Show me (*dat.*) the books. 16. Let Brāhmins teach us both and offer sacrifice for us. 17. The king determined (ordained) the taxes in *his* kingdom. 18. I have my field ploughed by slaves. 19. Give me water and food. 20. They had the boy taken (led) away from me (*abl.*). 21. The kings sent envoys to Pāṭaliputra. 22. Thieves stole our (*gen.*) cows, and wolves killed our* flocks. 23. The king made the

* The expression of possession, etc., on the part of pronouns

poet recite (*use काद्ययति*) a eulogy of Viṣṇu. 24. We torment our hearts with wishes. 25. Both scholars greet the teacher.

Lesson XIX.

226. Pronoun of the Second Person. This pronoun (for which the natives assume त्वद् and युष्मद् as bases) is declined thus:

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
N.	त्वम्	युवाम्	यूयम्
A.	त्वाम्, त्वा	युवाम्, वाम्	युष्मान्, वस्
I.	त्वया	युवाभ्याम्	युष्माभिस्
D.	तुभ्यम्, ते	" , वाम्	युष्मभ्यम्, वस्
Ab.	त्वत्	"	युष्मत्
G.	तव, ते	युवयोस्, वाम्	युष्माकम्, वस्
L.	त्वयि	"	युष्मासु

227. The forms त्वा, ते, वाम्, वस् are enclitics, subject to the same rules as मा, मे, etc. (§ 224).

228. The Pronoun of the Third Person (for which the natives assume तद् as base — the base is really त) is declined as follows (note nom. sing., m. and f.):

Masculine:			Feminine:			
Sing.	Dual.	Plural.	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.	
N.	सस्	तौ	ते	सा	ते	तास्
A.	तम्	"	तान्	ताम्	"	"
I.	तेन	ताभ्याम्	तैस्	तया	ताभ्याम्	ताभिस्
D.	तस्मै	"	तेभ्यस्	तस्मै	"	ताभ्यस्
Ab.	तस्मात्	"	"	तस्मात्	"	"
G.	तस्य	तयोस्	तेषाम्	"	तयोस्	तासाम्
L.	तस्मिन्	"	तेषु	तस्याम्	"	तासु

is made almost entirely by the genitive case, not by a derivative possessive adjective. But often the unemphatic possessive pronoun of the English is omitted in Sanskrit.

Neuter:

	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
N.	तद्	ते	तानि
A.	"	"	"
I.	तेन	ताभ्याम्	तैस् etc., as in the masculine.

229. The nom. sing. masc. सस्, and its compound एषस्, lose their final स् before any consonant; before vowels, and at the end of a sentence, they follow the usual euphonic rules. Thus, स गच्छति, स तिष्ठति; स इच्छति; सो ऽस्यति; गच्छति सः.

230. The third personal pronoun is used oftenest as a weak or indefinite demonstrative, especially as antecedent to a relative; and often like the English "definite article."

231. Like त are declined: (a) एत, 'this', formed by prefixing ए to the forms of त, throughout; thus, nom. sing. m. एषस्, f. एषा, n. एतद्; (b) the relative pronoun (and adj.) य, 'which, who'; (c) comparatives and superlatives from pronominal roots, such as कतर, which (of the two)? and कतम 'which (of the many)?' So यतर and यतम; एकतम 'one of many'; अन्य 'other', with its comparative अन्यतर; and इतर 'different'. — Yet other words are so inflected, but with अम् instead of अद् in nom.-acc.-voc. sing. neut.: as, सर्व, विश्व, 'all'; एक 'one', in pl. 'some'; उभय, f. ंयी (only sing. and pl.), 'both'.

232. The interrogative pronoun क (for which the Hindus give the base as किम्) follows precisely the declension of त, except nom.-acc. sing. neut. किम्; nom. sing. m. कस्, f. का.

233. A number of words follow the pronominal declension in some of their significations, or optionally; but in other senses, or without known rule, lapse into the adjective inflection. Such are comparatives and superlatives from prepositional stems, as अधर 'lower', अधम 'lowest'; पर 'chief', पूर्व 'earlier', उत्तर 'upper',

'northern', दक्षिण 'southern', etc. Occasional forms of the pronominal declension are met with from numeral adjectives, and from other words having somewhat of a numeral character, as अल्प 'few', अर्ध 'half', etc.

234. Peculiarities in the use of relative pronouns, etc. The Sanskrit often puts the relative clause before the antecedent clause, and inserts the substantive to which the relative refers into the same clause with the relative, instead of leaving it in the antecedent clause. In translating into Sanskrit, a relative clause is to be placed either before or after the whole antecedent clause; but not inserted into the antecedent clause, as is done in English. Thus, "the mountain which we saw yesterday is very high" would be in Sanskrit either: यं पर्वतं वयं ह्यो ऽपस्माम सो ऽतीव तुङ्गः, or: सं पर्वतो ऽतीव तुङ्गो यं ह्यो ऽपस्माम; but not स पर्वतो यं वयं ह्यो ऽपस्माम, etc., according to the English idiom.

235. The relative word may stand anywhere in its clause; thus, शिव आदिर्येषां ते देवाः "the gods whose chief is Īiva". Sometimes relative or demonstrative adverbs are used as equivalents of certain case-forms of relative or demonstrative pronouns; thus, यत्र वने = यस्मिन्वने.

236. The repetition of the relative gives an indefinite meaning: 'whosoever, whatever'. The same result is much more commonly attained by adding to the relative the interrogative pronoun, with (or, less usually, without) one of the particles च, चन, चिद्, अपि, वा. Sometimes the interrogative alone is used with these particles in a similar sense. Thus; यद्यद्देवा कथयति "whatever this woman relates"; यो यस्य भावः स्यात् "whatever any one's disposition may be"; यस्मै कस्मै चिद्यच्छति "he gives to some one or other"; यस्मात्कस्माच्चिन्न लभते "he takes from no one whatever".

Vocabulary XIX.

Verbs:	वच् say, speak; name; in caus. (vācāyati) make (a written leaf)
भास् sit; in caus. (āsāyati) place.	पिपासि speak, i. e. read.
पिपासि drink; in caus. (pāyāyati) give to drink, water.	सहि (sāhate) endure.
पालयि protect; in caus. (pālāyati) protect.	सिधि (sidhyati) succeed; in caus. (sādhāyati) perform, acquire.
प्रीति rejoice; in caus. (prīṇāyati) make rejoice, please.	हन् kill; caus. (ghātāyati) have killed.
भीति fear; in caus. (bhīṣāyate, bhāyāyate) terrify, frighten.	ह्वान् call; in caus. (hvāyāyati) have called.

Subst.:

कार्यं n., business, concern.	सहाय m., companion, helper.
कृष्ण m., n. pr., a god.	Adj.:
कौसल्या f., n. pr.	अन्य other.
गति f., gait; refuge.	इतर other.
चरण m., n., foot, leg.	विश्व all (Vedic).
छत्र n., umbrella.	सर्व all.
दुग्ध n., milk.	खादु sweet.
देवकी f., n. pr., Kṛṣṇa's mother.	Indecl.:
पृथ्वी f., earth.	अपि also, even.
श्री, as prefix to proper names, has the meaning 'famous', 'honorable'.	विना without (w. instr. or acc.; often postpos.).

Exercise XIX.

सहायेन विना नैव कार्यं किमपि सिध्यति ।
 एकेन चरणेनापि गतिः कस्य प्रवर्तते ॥ ७ ॥
 मयि त्वयि च पितरौ स्निह्यतः । १ । यः पृथिवीं पालयति स पार्थिव उच्यते । २ । कस्मै देवै स्तोत्रं रचयेम । ३ । गुरुर्गुप्मानाद्वाययत् । ४ ।

या अस्मान्दुग्धं पाययन्ति ता धेनुमी घातयत । ५ । युष्मन्मम दुःखं भवति । ६ । साधवः पुष्टिः सह स्वर्गं लभन्ते न त्वितरे जनाः । ७ । वयमेतत्पुस्तकं नेच्छामस्तदन्यस्मै कस्मैचिद्दीयताम् । ८ । त्वदन्यो* न को ऽप्यस्माभिः शस्यते । ९ । या देवकी वसुदेवस्य पत्न्यभवत्तस्यां कृष्णो ऽजायत । १० । तव पित्रा सह नगर्या आगच्छाम । ११ । यूयं पितृञ्चाद्वैः प्रीणयथ वयं जलेन । १२ । विश्वे देवास्त्वा पालयन्तु । १३ । अन्येषां काचैरेष कविः कीर्तिमसाधयत् ॥ १४ ॥

15. The husband⁶ of that⁵ (*gen.*) Kāusalyā² (*loc.*), of whom¹ (*loc. fem.*) Rāma³ was born⁴, is called⁸ Daçaratha⁷. 16. The teacher⁴ rejoices³ at thy¹ diligence² (*abl.*). 17. Why (कस्मात्) speakest thou so? 18. Others than we could not endure this suffering. 19. The teacher teaches** us holy-writ and the law-books. 20. May all⁸ those⁷ kings² who¹ protect⁶ their subjects⁵ according to⁴ (अनु, *post-pos.*) the law³ (*acc.*) be victorious⁹. 21. The fruits of all these trees are sweet. 22. May the glory of all women, who honor their husbands, increase (*inv.*). 23. In this kingdom the king's punishment terrifies the wicked. 24. Which of the two fruits do ye wish? 25. My father had gold given to me, cows to thee, to the other brother nothing.

Lesson XX.

237. Declension of Stems in Consonants. All noun-stems in consonants may well be classed together, since the peculiarities shown by some concern only the stems themselves, and not the endings. Masculines and feminines of the same final are inflected precisely alike; and neuters are peculiar (as usually in the other

* "Other than thou". With अन्य, as with comparatives, the ablative is used.

** "Makes us read" (अधि-इ, *caus.*).

declensions) only in the nom.-acc.-voc. of all numbers. But the majority of consonantal stems form a special feminine stem by adding ई (never आ) to the weak form of the masculine.

238. Variations, as between stronger and weaker forms, are very general in consonantal stems: either of strong and weak stems, or of strong, middle, and weakest. The endings are throughout the normal ones (Intro., § 90).

239. The general law concerning final consonants is as follows:

1. The more usual etymological finals are स्, र्, म्, न्, त्, क्, प्, ट्; sporadic are ड्, झ्, ञ् as finals.

2. In general, only one consonant, of whatever kind, is allowed to stand at the end of a word; if two or more would etymologically occur there, the last is dropped, and again the last, until but one remains.

3. Of the non-nasal mutes, only the first in each series, the non-aspirate surd, is allowed as final; the others — surd asp., and both sonants — are regularly converted into this, wherever they would etymologically occur.

4. A final palatal, or ह्, becomes either क्, or (less often) ट्; but ह् in a very few cases (where it represents original घ्) becomes त्.

240. According to 239. 2, the स् of the nom. sing., m. and f., is always lost; and irregularities of treatment of the stem-final, in this case, are not infrequent.

241. Before the *pada*-endings, भ्याम्, भिस्, भ्यस् and सु, a stem-final is treated as in external combination.

242. An aspirate mute is changed to its corresponding non-aspirate before another non-nasal mute or a sibilant; it stands unaltered only before a vowel or semivowel or nasal. Hence such a mute is doubled by prefixing its own corresponding non-aspirate.

243. Consonant-stems of one form in त्, ड्, घ् and भ्. Be-

fore suffixal भ्, both त् and घ् as stem-finals become ह्; भ् as stem-final becomes ब्. Examples: मरुत् m., 'wind'; आपद् f., 'misfortune'; जगत् n., 'the world'.

	Sing.	Plural.
N.V.	मरुत् । आपत् । जगत् ॥	मरुतस् । आपदस् । जगन्ति ॥
A.	मरुतम् । आपदम् । जगत् ॥	" " "
I.	मरुता । आपदा । जगता ॥	मरुद्भिस् । आपद्भिस् । जगद्भिस् ॥
D.	मरुते । आपदे । जगते ॥	मरुद्भ्यस् । आपद्भ्यस् । जगद्भ्यस् ॥
Ab.	मरुतस् । आपदस् । जगतस् ॥	" " "
G.	" " "	मरुताम् । आपदाम् । जगताम् ॥
L.	मरुति । आपदि । जगति ॥	मरुत्सु । आपत्सु । जगत्सु ॥

Dual.

N.A.V.	मरुतौ । आपदौ । जगती ॥
I.D.Ab.	मरुद्भ्याम् । आपद्भ्याम् । जगद्भ्याम् ॥
G.L.	मरुतोस् । आपदोस् । जगतोस् ॥

For the न् inserted in nom.-acc. pl. neuter, cf. *phalāni*, *madhūni*, etc.

244. In a few roots, when a final sonant aspirate (घ्, ध्, भ्; also ह्, representing घ्) loses its aspiration according to §§ 239, 3, 242, the initial sonant consonant (ग्, ह्, or ब्) becomes aspirate; thus, बुध्, nom.-voc. sing. भुत्; भुद्भ्यस्, भुत्सु.

245. Agreement of adjectives. If the same adjective qualify two or more substantives, it will be used in their combined number; if the substantives are masculine and feminine, the adj. will be masc.; but in a combination of masc. or fem. subjects with neuter, the adjective will be neuter.

Vocabulary XX.

Verbs:	लभ्, in caus. (<i>lambhāyati</i> *) make receive or take; give.
रह् grow; caus. (<i>rohāyati</i> or <i>ropāyati</i>) make rise or grow; plant.	
Subst.:	शत n., a hundred.
उपनिषद् f., name of certain Vedic writings.	शरद् f., autumn; year.
उपवीत n., sacred cord (worn by the three higher castes).	समिध् f., fagot.
तडित् f., lightning.	सरित् f., river.
दृषद् f., stone.	सुहृद् m., friend.
निर्वृति f., contentment, happiness.	Adj.:
पोषक m., supporter, maintainer.	कुशल, f. °आ, skilled, learned.
भूमृत् m., king; mountain.	त्रिवृत् m., f., n., threefold, triple.
मरुत् m., wind; as pl., n. <i>pr.</i> , the Storm-gods.	दुर्लभ, f. °आ, hard to find or reach; difficult.
वात m., wind.	भक्त, f. °आ, devoted, true.
विश्वास m., trust, confidence.	Indecl.:
वृत्र m., n. <i>pr.</i> , a demon, Vṛtra.	अपि also; even.
	पश्चात् behind (<i>w. gen.</i>).

Exercise XX.

ते पुत्रा ये पितुर्भक्ताः स पिता यस्तु पोषकः ।

** तन्नचिं यत्र विश्वासः सा भार्या यत्र निर्वृतिः ॥ ८ ॥

हे शिष्य समिधो वनादाहर । १ । उपनिषत्सु मुक्तिमार्ग उपदिश्यते । २ । आपदि सुहृदो ऽस्नान्पालयेयुः । ३ । विश्वस्यं भुवि पापा

* If a nasal is ever taken in any of the strong forms of a root, it usually appears in the causal.

** See § 225; यत्र = यस्मिन् and यस्याम्; see § 235, end.

भूमृद्भिर्दण्डनाम । ४ । समिञ्जरिं यजेत । ५ । पुष्पेन जगती
जयेः । ६ । त्वं जीव शरदः शतम् । ७ । भूमृतः (gen.) शिखरं वय-
मारोहाम यूयमधस्तादतिष्ठत । ८ । काश्चित्सरितः समुद्रेण काश्चिद-
न्याभिः सरिञ्जिः संगच्छन्ते । ९ । रात्रौ तडिद्दृश्यत । १० । भक्ताः
सुहृदो ऽस्मान्मुखं लभयन्ति । ११ । अश्रुभिर्नार्यो बालाश्च मनोरथा-
न्साधयन्ति । १२ । शरदि कासुचित्सरित्सु पद्मानि दृश्यन्ते । १३ ।

14. Indra, with the Maruts as his companions, killed Vṛtra.
15. Without a companion no one can perform a difficult business.
16. One (*express in pl.*) should plant trees on all the roads, for the
sake of the shade. 17. Those friends who are true in misfortune
are hard to find in the *three* worlds. 18. The girdle and the sacred
cord of Aryans are to be made threefold (*neut. dual*). 19. Put
(*स्त्रा caus.*) this stone behind the fire. 20. The ocean is called by
the poets the husband of rivers. 21. All subjects must be protected
(*imv.*) by *their* kings. 22. Some of these Brāhmanas are learned in
the Upaniṣads, others in the law-books.

Lesson XXI.

246. Declension of Consonant-stems, cont'd. Stems in pala-
tals, etc. 1. Final च् of a stem reverts to the original guttural
when it comes to stand as word-final, and before the *pada*-endings,
becoming क् when final, and before सु, and ग् before भ्. 2. Final
ज् is oftenest treated exactly like च् — for cases of other treat-
ment, see below. 3. In the roots * दिश्, दृश् and स्पृश्, the श् is
treated in the same way. 4. The स् of सु becomes ष् after क्;

* In classical Sanskrit not many root-stems are used as inde-
pendent substantives; but they are frequently employed, with
adjective or (present) participial value, as final element of a com-
pound word.

thus, °ञु. E. g. वाच् f., 'speech, word'; रज् f., 'illness'; दिम् f.,
'direction, point of the compass':

	Sing.	Plural.
N.V.	वाक् । रज् । दिक् ॥	वाचस् । रजस् । दिशस् ॥
A.	वाचम् । रजम् । दिशम् ॥	" " "
I.	वाचा । रजा । दिशा ॥	वाग्भिस् । रग्भिस् । दिग्भिस् ॥
L.	वाचि । रजि । दिशि ॥	वाचु । रजु । दिषु ॥

Dual.

वाची । रजी । दिशी ॥
वाग्भ्याम् । रग्भ्याम् । दिग्भ्याम् ॥
वाचोस् । रजोस् । दिशोस् ॥

247. 1. Final श् and ष् of a stem regularly become the lingual
mute (ङ् or ट्) before भ् and सु, and when word-final. For excep-
tions, see § 246, 3. 2. The final ज् of the root-stems राज्, 'rule', यज्,
'sacrifice', and सृज्, with others; and 3. the final ह् of a number
of roots, are treated like श् above. Thus, द्विष् m., 'enemy';
विष् m. pl., 'people', the 'Vaiçya-caste'; लिह् m., f., (adj.)
'licking'.

Sing.

Plural.

N.V.	द्विट् । लिट् ॥	द्विषस् । विशस् । । लिहस् ॥
A.	द्विषम् । लिहम् ॥	" " "
I.	द्विषा । लिहा ॥	द्विह्भिस् । विह्भिस् । लिह्भिस् ॥
L.	द्विषि । लिहि ॥	द्विट्सु । विट्सु । लिट्सु ॥

Dual.

द्विषी । लिही ॥
द्विह्भ्याम् । लिह्भ्याम् ॥
द्विषोस् । लिहोस् ॥

248. But अत्विक् m., 'priest', though containing the root यज्,

makes ऋत्विक् etc.; and सज् f., 'garland', though containing √सृज्, makes सक् etc.

249. 1. Nouns having the roots दह्, 'burn', and दुह्, 'milk', दह् 'be hostile', with others, as final element, and also उष्णिह् f. (name of a certain metre), change the final ह् into क् and ग्. Thus, काष्ठदह्, 'wood-burning', makes nom.-voc. sing. काष्ठधक्; कामदुह् f., 'granting wishes', nom.-voc. sing. कामधक्, acc. °दुहम्, loc. pl. °धुन्नु; मित्रदुह् 'friend-betraying,' nom.-voc.-sing. मित्रधक् etc. 2. In words with नह्, 'bind,' as final element, where ह् represents original घ्, the ह् becomes ह् and त्; thus, उपानह् f., 'shoe, sandal,' nom.-voc. sing. उपानत्, acc. °नहम्, instr. du. °नहाम्, loc. pl. °नत्सु.

Vocabulary XXI.

Verbs:	सृज् + उद् (utsrjāti) let loose or out; raise (the voice).
दम् in caus. (damāyati) tame; compel.	सज् + परि (pariṣvājate*) embrace.
दुह् (drūhyati) be hostile; offend.	ह् + प्र (prahāratī) strike out; smite.
धृ in caus. (dhārdyati) bear.	
भृ (bhāratī, -te) bear, support (lit. and fig.).	

Subst.:	दृश् f., look, glance; eye.
अन्ध्र m. pl., n. pr., a people in India.	द्विष् m., enemy.
ऋच् f., verse of the Rigveda; in pl., the Rigveda.	बाष्प m., tears.
ऋषध n., medicine.	मधुलिह् m., bee.
कौन्तेय m., nom. pr.	माधुर्य n., sweetness.
	रज् f., sickness, disease.
	सम्राज् m., great king, emperor.

* सज् and a few other roots, whose nasal is not constant throughout their inflection, lose it in the present-system.

सामन्त m., vassal.	नीरज् (i. e. निस्-रज्) m. f. n., healthy, well.
स्नातक m., one who has taken a certain ceremonial bath.	पथ्, f. °आ, wholesome (gen.).
खाधाय m., private recitation (of sacred texts).	बलिष्ठ, f. आ, strongest.
	रज्, f. °आ (pass. part. of रच्), besieged, surrounded; suffused.
Adj.:	विद्विष्ट, f. °आ (pass. part. of द्विष् + वि), hated, detested.
आक्रान्त, f. °आ (pass. part. of क्रम् + आ), attacked, smitten.	वृद्ध, f. °आ (part. of वृध्), old.
ईश्वर, f. °आ, rich.	व्याधित, f. °आ, sick, ill.
कामदुह् m. f. n., granting wishes; as f. subst., the Wonder-cow.	समेत, f. आ, provided with.
दक्षिण, f. °आ, right hand; southern.	Adv.:
	कदाचन, कदाचित्, कदापि, ever.

Exercise XXI.

दरिद्रान्भर कौन्तेय मा प्रयच्छेश्वरे धनम् ।

व्याधितस्यौषधं पथं नीरजसु किमौषधिः* ॥ ९ ॥

मरुतः सर्वाभ्यो दिग्भ्यो (abl.) वहन्ति । १ । सम्राजो ऽपि राज्ञं द्विड्भिर्धनाश्रित । २ । तव वाचु कालिदास माधुर्यं वर्तते । ३ । यदा दिशो दहन्ति तदा शिष्यान्नाध्यापयेत् । ४ । बाष्पै रज्जाभ्यां दृग्भ्यां पिता पुत्रमैत्रत पर्यष्वजत च । ५ । ऋत्विजां वाक् कामधुक् सा सर्वान्नराणां मनोरथान्पूरयति । ६ । सर्वासु दिक्षु द्विषो ऽदृशन्त । ७ । परिव्राड्वाचं नोत्सृजेत् । ८ । मित्रधुक् सर्वेषां विद्विष्टः । ९ । ऋग्भिरुपानज्ञां समेताः शिष्या गुहं नोपतिष्ठेरन् । १० । ऋग्भिराक्रान्ता बहवो जना म्रियन्ते । ११ । दक्षिणस्यां दिशि कृष्णो ऽन्ध्राणां सम्राडभवत् । १२ । मधुलिङ्भिरेष बालो ऽदृशत् ॥ १३ ॥

14. In the private recitation of the Veda an ascetic must

* किम् (interrog.), with some other words expressing use or need, takes with it an instrumental of what is used or needed, and a genitive of the user. So here: "of what use to a well man are medicines"?

raise (*opt. or inv.*) his voice. 15. That one among the priests is called *hotṛ*, who recites the Rigveda. 16. A *snātaka* must wear shoes and a garland, and *carry* an umbrella. 17. "Among my friends Rāma is the strongest": thus spoke Rāvaṇa. 18. Let an emperor keep his vassals in check (*दम् caus.*), and protect (*पा caus.*) the people in all the earth. 19. In the Rigveda occurs (*दृग् pass.*) the Uṣṇih. 20. The father's glance fell upon me (*loc.*). 21. Among the betrayers-of-friends is named (*गणय pass.*) Vibhīṣaṇa. 22. The seer praises Indrāṇī with verses of the Rigveda. 23. The emperor smote his enemies (*acc., dat., or loc.*) with the sword. 24. In the battle Kṛṣṇa was killed by his enemies. 25. "May our enemies be tormented by diseases": thus spoke the Brāhman in anger (*abl.*).

Lesson XXII.

250. Declension of Stems in *र्*. The stems in *हर्* and *उर्* lengthen the vowel before consonant-endings, and in nom.-sing., and the *स्* of the nom. is lost. In the nom.-sing. the final *र्* then becomes *स्* (or *visarga*) under conditions requiring a sord as final (see § 95, 116). Thus, *गिर्* f., 'voice'; *पुर* f., 'city'.

	Singular	Dual.	Plural.
N.V.	गीर् । पूर् ॥	गिरौ । पुरौ ॥	गिरस् । पुरस् ॥
A.	गिरम् । पुरम् ॥	" "	" "
I.	गिरा । पुरा ॥	गीर्भ्याम् । पूर्भ्याम् ॥	गीर्भिस् । पूर्भिस् ॥
L.	गिरि । पुरि ॥	गिरोस् । पुरोस् ॥	गीर्षु । पूर्षु

251. Stems in *हन्* [and in *मिन्* and *विन्*]. These are masc. and neut. only; the corresponding feminine is made by adding *ई*; thus, *धनिनी*.* They lose their final *न्* before consonant-endings;

* Almost any noun in *ञ* may form a possessive derivative with

and also in the nom. sing., where the masc. lengthens the *र्* in compensation. Thus, *धनिन्* m., n., 'rich'.

	Masculine.			Neuter.		
	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
N.	धनी	धनिनी	धनिनस्	धनि	धनिनी	धनीनि
A.	धनिनम्	"	"	"	"	"
I.	धनिना	धनिभ्याम्	धनिभिस्	as in the masculine		
L.	धनिनि	धनिनोस्	धनिषु			
V.	धनिन्					

252. Derivative stems in *अस्*, *इस्*, *उस्*. The stems of this division are mostly neuter; but there are a few masculines and feminines. Their inflection is nearly regular (for *ओ*, *हर्*, *उर्* before *म्* see § 241; for the loc. pl., p. 27, bottom of page). Masc. [and fem.] stems in *अस्* lengthen the *अ* in nom. sing.; and the nom.-acc. pl. neut. also lengthen *अ* or *इ* or *उ* before the inserted nasal (*anusvāra*). Thus, *मनस्* n., 'mind'; *हविस्* n., 'oblation'; *धनुस्* n., 'bow'.

	Singular.	Dual.
N.A.V.	मनस् । हविस् । धनुस् ॥	मनसी । हविषी । धनुषी ॥
I.	मनसा । हविषा । धनुषा ॥	मनोभ्याम् । हविर्भ्याम् । धनुर्भ्याम् ॥
L.	मनसि । हविषि । धनुषि ॥	मनसोस् । हविषोस् । धनुषोस् ॥
		Plural.
N.A.	मनांसि । हवींषि । धनूंषि ॥	
I.	मनोभिस् । हविर्भिस् । धनुर्भिस् ॥	
L.	मनसु । हविषु । धनुषु ॥	
	or मनःसु । or हविःषु । or धनुःषु ॥	

253. *अङ्गिरस्* m. (name of certain mythical characters): nom. sing. *अङ्गिरास्*, acc. *अङ्गिरसम्*, instr. *अङ्गिरसा*, voc. *अङ्गिरस्*; nom.-acc. pl. *अङ्गिरसस्*.

the suffix *हन्*; thus, from *बल* n., 'strength', *बलिन्*, 'having strength, strong'. Stems in *मिन्* and *विन्* are very rare.

254. Adjective compounds having nouns of this class as final member are very common. Thus, सुमनस् 'favorably-minded.'

Singular.		Dual.		Plural.	
m. f.	n.	m. f.	n.	m. f.	n.
N. सुमनास्	०नस्	सुमनसौ	०नसौ	सुमनसस्	०नांसि
A. सुमनसम्	०नस्	"	"	"	"

दीर्घायुस् 'long-lived':

Singular.		Dual.		Plural.	
N. दीर्घायुस्	दीर्घायुषी	०युषी	दीर्घायुषस्	०यूषि	
A. दीर्घायुषम्	०युस्	"	"	"	"
I. दीर्घायुषा etc.	दीर्घायुर्भ्याम् etc.		दीर्घायुर्भिस् etc.		

Vocabulary XXII.

Verb: सज्ज (sajjati; but often pass.: sajjāte) for sajjāte) hang on, be fastened on (as thoughts — *v. loc.*)

Subst.:	धनुस् n., bow.
अप्सरस् f., heavenly nymph.	नाली f., pipe, conduit.
उर्वशी f., n. pr., an Apsaras, Urvāṣī.	पयस् n., milk.
क्षितिप m., king.	पुर् f., city.
गिर् f., voice; song.	पुरुरवस् m., n. pr., Purūravas.
चक्षुस् n., eye.	प्राणिन् m., (living) creature.
चन्द्रमस् m., moon.	भरतखण्ड m., n., pr., India.
चार m., spy.	मनस् n., mind.
ज्या f., bowstring.	मन्त्रिन् m., minister (of state).
ज्योतिस् n., light; star; heavenly body.	यजुस् n., sacrificial formula, text.
तडाग m., pond.	यशस् n., glory, fame.
द्वार f., door, gate.	वणिज् m., merchant.
	वयस् n., age.
	सुमनस् f., flower.

सूर्य m., sun.	asceticism; as m. subst., ascetic.
स्थान n., place, spot, locality; stead.	तेजस्विन् courageous.
स्वामिन् m., possessor, lord.	प्रथम f. ०आ, first.
हविस् n., oblation.	मृत, f. ०आ (part. of मृ), dead, fallen.
Adj.:	स्थित, f. ०आ (part. of स्था), standing.
आकृष्ट, f. ०आ (part. of कृष् + आ), drawn, bent (as a bow).	Indecl.:
तपस्विन् suffering, doing acts of	वै to be sure, in sooth.

Exercise XXII.

गन्धेन गावः पश्यन्ति वेदैः पश्यन्ति वै द्विजाः ।

चारैः पश्यन्ति क्षितिपाञ्चक्षुर्भ्यामितरे जनाः ॥ १० ॥

आ कर्णमाकृष्टेन धनुषा द्विट्सु शरान्मुञ्चन्ति क्षत्रियाः । १ । सूर्यश्च चन्द्रमाश्च जगतो ज्योतिषी । २ । धनी वणिग्द्वारि स्थितेभ्यस्तपस्विभ्यो वसु दापयेत् । ३ । यज्ञेषु य ऋत्विजो यजूषि पठन्ति ते ऽध्वर्यव उच्यन्ते । ४ । विश्वस्था भुवः सम्राट् पुरुरवा उर्वशीमप्सरसं पर्यणयत्तस्यां च पुत्रो ऽजायत । ५ । कामस्य धनुषि ज्यायाः स्थाने ऽलयः शराणां स्थाने सुमनसस्तिष्ठन्ति । ६ । प्राणिनां मनांसि जीविते सज्जन्ति । ७ । पुरि वारि तडागान्नास्था पार्थिवो ऽजाययत् । ८ । मन्त्रिणः स्वामिने कदापि न द्रुह्येयुः । ९ । एतस्या धेन्वाः पयो बालान्पितरावपाययताम् । १० ।

11. Raise ye the voice in praise (*dat.*) of Hari. 12. In the cities of India dwell rich merchants and courageous warriors. 13. The praise of Purūravas was sung by Kālidāsa. 14. The king gave orders (आ-क्षा *caus.*) to have his minister called (*use or. recta*). 15. The minds of ascetics must not dwell (सज्ज) on riches (*श्री, loc. sing.*). 16. At night the moon gives light to all creatures. 17. One should sacrifice to the gods (*cf. यज् in Voc. I*) flowers, fruits, and milk, not living creatures. 18. The Apsarases lead into Heaven warriors fallen in battle. 19. In age (*instr.*), not in knowledge,

Śiva is the eldest among his brothers (*loc., gen.*). 20. The gods live by the oblation. 21. A merchant wishes wealth (श्री), a warrior fame, an ascetic deliverance. 22. The woman's eyes are suffused with tears.

Lesson XXIII.

255. Declension. Comparative Adjectives. Comparative adjectives of primary formation have a double form of stem for masculine and neuter: a stronger in चास् (usually ईचास्), in the strong cases, and a weaker in यस् (usually ईयस्), there being no distinction of middle and weakest cases. The voc. sing. masc. ends in यन्. The feminine-stem is made with ई from the weak stem-form. Thus, श्रेयास्, 'better':

Masculine.			Neuter.		
Sing.	Dual.	Plural.	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
N. श्रेयान्	श्रेयांसौ	श्रेयांसस्	N.V. श्रेयस्	श्रेयसी	श्रेयांसि
A. श्रेयांसम्	"	श्रेयसस्	"	"	"
I. श्रेयसा	श्रेयोभ्याम्	श्रेयोभिस्	like the masculine.		
L. श्रेयसि	श्रेयसोस्	श्रेयस्सु, °यःसु			
V. श्रेयन्					

Fem. stem श्रेयसी, declined like नदी.

256. Stems in अन् (or अत्) fall into two divisions: A. those made with the suffix अन् (अत्), being, with few exceptions, active participles, present and future; and B. those made with the possessive suffixes मन् (or मत्) and वन् (or वत्). They are masc. and neuter only, the fem. being formed with ई.

257. A. Participles in अन् (or अत्). E. g. जीवन् m., n., 'living.'

	Masculine.			Neuter.		
	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
N.V.	जीवन्	जीवन्तौ	जीवन्तस्	जीवत्	जीवन्ती	जीवन्ति
A.	जीवन्तम्	"	जीवतस्	"	"	"
I.	जीवता	जीवद्भ्याम्	जीवद्भिस्	as in masculine.		
L.	जीवति	जीवतोस्	जीवत्सु			

258. The strong form of these participles is obtained, mechanically, by cutting off the final इ from the 3rd. pl. pres. (or fut.) ind. act.; thus, नयन्ति gives strong form of pres. act. part. नयन्, weak नयत्; तिष्ठन्ति, तिष्ठन् and तिष्ठत्; — नह्यन्ति, नह्यन् and नह्यत्; — दण्डयन्ति, दण्डयन् and दण्डयत्; — भविष्यन्ति (fut.), भविष्यन् and भविष्यत्.

259. But those verbs which in the 3rd. pl. act. lose the न् of the usual न्ति (as e. g. the verbs following the reduplicating class in the present-system), lose it also in the present participle, and have no distinction of strong and weak stem. Thus, from वृञ्, 3rd pl. pres. ind. act. जुहुति, part. (only stem-form) जुहुत्: nom.-voc. sing. masc. जुहुत्, acc. जुहुतम्; nom.-voc.-acc. du. जुहुती, pl. जुहुतस्; nom.-voc.-acc. sing. neut. जुहुत्, du. जुहुती; pl. जुहुति.*

260. Only the present participles of verbs of the *a*-class, the *ya*-class, and causatives, invariably insert न् in nom.-voc.-acc. du. neut. Present participles of the *ā*-class, of the root-class when the root ends in आ, and all future participles, may either take or reject it; thus, neut.-sing. किरत्, du. किरती or किरन्ती; करिष्यत् (fut.), du. करिष्यती or करिष्यन्ती; यात् (pres. part. from या, 'go'), du. यातो or यान्ती. Participles of all other verbs, and all other stems in अत्, leave out the न् in the du. neut.; thus, अदत् (अद् 'eat', root-class), du. अदती.

261. The adj. महन्, 'great', takes in strong cases the stem-

* The grammarians, however, allow these verbs to insert the न् in the nom.-voc.-acc. pl. neuter of the present participle.

form महान्तः nom.-sing. masc. महान् (see § 239, 2), acc. महान्तम्, voc. महन्; du. neut. महती, pl. महान्ति. Otherwise the inflection is like that of participles.

262. The feminine of participles and adjectives in अन्त् (or अत्) is always made with ई, and the form is always identical with the nom. dual neuter.

Vocabulary XXIII.

Verbs:
निन्द् (nindati) blame.
राज् (rājate) shine; rule.

सृ + अप (apasārati) go away; in
caus. (apasārayati) drive away.

Nouns (subst. and. adj.):
आदित्य m., sun.
गरीयांस (comp.) very honorable.
ददत् (pr. part. of दा) giving.
प्रकाशिन, f.नी, bright, glistening;
(act.) illuminating.
भूत, f. आ; become (past. pass.
part. of भू); as neut. subst.,
being, creature.

वत्स m., calf.
श्रेयांस better, best; as neut. subst.,
salvation.
सन्त् (neut. सत्) being, existing;
as masc. subst., good man; as
fem. (सती), faithful wife.*

Adv.:
श्वस् to-morrow.
हि surely, indeed.

Exercise XXIII.

सन्तो ऽपि** न हि राजन्ते दरिद्रस्त्रितरे गुणाः ।

आदित्य इव भूतानां श्रीगुणानां प्रकाशिनी ॥ ११ ॥

तिष्ठन्तं गुणं शिष्यो ऽनुतिष्ठेन्नच्छन्तमनुगच्छेद्वावन्तमनुधावेत्*** । १ ।
गरीयसः (acc. pl.) श्रेयसे पूजयेत् । २ । धनिनस्तपस्विभ्यो धनं ददतः

* Especially a widow who immolates herself on the funeral-pile of her husband; whence Anglo-Indian suttee.

** "Even though they exist".

*** अन् in composition often conveys the idea of imitation.

शस्त्रे । ३ । स्त्रियन्तीं भार्यां त्यजन्निन्दते । ४ । जीवतः पुत्रस्व मुखं
पश्यन्ती पितरौ तुष्यतः । ५ । भ्रात्रो (gen. du.) रामो चशसा गरी-
यान् । ६ । एतेषां वणिजां धनानि महान्ति वर्तन्ते । ७ । कुप्यते मा
कुप्यत । ८ । उद्यानि पतञ्जो विहृगेभ्यो धान्यं किरतीः कन्या अपश्यम् । ९ ।
पिचोर्जीवतोर्धातरः स्वसारश्च तयोर्धनस्व स्वामिनो न भवेयुः । १० ।
धेनुं धयन्तं वत्सं मापसारय । ११ । गुरुषु पिताचार्यो माता च गरी-
यांसः । १२ । त्वयि जीवति सुखेन वयं जीवामः ॥ १३ ॥

14. We blame the driver who strikes (*part.*) the horses. 15. The king who punishes (*part.*) the bad and gives (*part.*) food to the good is praised. 16. The warrior who conquers (*part.*) in battle attains great fame. 17. Among the heavenly bodies the sun and moon are the *two* great ones. 18. In the field I saw birds flying. 19. He who lives (*part.*) to-day is dead to-morrow. 20. The word of the good must be followed (*done*). 21. Dwell among good men. 22. A maiden, making (*सृज्*) garlands, sits on a stone. 23. A husband shall punish a wife who steals (*part.*) his property. 24. The child (*gen.*) was afraid (*use subst., no copula*) of the bees (*abl.*) flying about (*भ्रम्*) in the house.

Lesson XXIV.

263. Declension. Stems in अन्त् (or अत्), cont'd. B. Stems in मन्त् (मत्) and वन्त् (वत्). Adjectives formed with these suffixes are possessives. They are declined precisely alike*; and differ in inflection from the participles in अन्त् only by lengthening the अ in the nom. sing. masc. The feminine is made in ई; thus, श्री-मती. In the dual neut. न् is never inserted. Thus, श्रीमन्त्, 'rich', 'celebrated':

* The two adjectives इयन्त्, 'so great', 'so many', and कियन्त्, 'how great?' 'how many?' are similarly declined.

Masculine.			Neuter.		
Singular.	Dual.	Plural.	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
N. श्रीमान्	श्रीमन्तौ	श्रीमन्तस्	NV. श्रीमत्	श्रीमती	श्रीमन्ति
A. श्रीमन्तम्	"	श्रीमन्तस्	"	"	"
I. श्रीमता	श्रीमन्भ्याम्	श्रीमन्भिस्	as in the masculine.		
L. श्रीमति	श्रीमतीस्	श्रीमतीस्			
V. श्रीमन्					

264. A stem भवन्* (to be carefully distinguished from भवन्त, pres. part. act. of भू) is frequently used in respectful address as a substitute for the pronoun of the second person. It is construed with the verb in the third person. Its nom. sing. masc. is भवान् (fem. भवती); and भोस्, the contracted form of its older voc. भवस्, is a common exclamation of address: "you, sir!", "ho, there!"; and is often doubled.**

265. Derivative stems in अन्. These are made by the suffixes अन्, मन्, and वन्, and are, with one or two exceptions, masc. and neut. only. The stem has a triple form. In the strong cases of the masc. the vowel of the suffix is lengthened to आ, in the weakest cases it is in general dropped; in the middle cases the final न् is dropped, and it is also lost in the nom. sing. of all genders. In the neuter, the nom.-acc. pl., as being strong cases, lengthen the vowel of the suffix; the same cases in the dual (as weakest cases) lose अ — but this only optionally. After the न् or व् of मन् and वन्, when these are preceded by a consonant, the अ is retained in all the weakest cases, to avoid too great an accumulation of consonants. Examples: राजन् m., 'king'; नामन् n., 'name'; आत्मन् m., 'soul, self'; ब्रह्मन् n., 'devotion'.

* Probably contracted from भगवन् 'blessed'.

** भोस् loses its final स् before all vowels and all sonant consonants; thus, भो भो ऋषे.

Masculine.			Neuter.		
Singular.	Dual.	Plural.	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
N. राजा	राजानौ	राजानस्	नाम	नामनी	नामानि
				or नाम्नी	
A. राजानम्	"	राजान्	"	"	"
I. राज्ञा*	राजभ्याम्	राजभिस्	नाम्ना	नामभ्याम्	नामभिस्
L. राजानि	राजोस्	राजसु	नामानि	नाम्नीस्	नामसु
or राजि			or नामि		
V. राजन्			नामन्	or नाम	
N. आत्मा	आत्मानौ	आत्मानस्	ब्रह्म	ब्रह्मणी	ब्रह्माणि
A. आत्मानम्	"	आत्मानस्	"	"	"
I. आत्मना	आत्मभ्याम्	आत्मभिस्	ब्रह्मणा	ब्रह्मभ्याम्	ब्रह्मभिस्
V. आत्मन्			ब्रह्मन्	or ब्रह्म	

266. Euphonic rules. Final क्, ट् and प् remain unaltered before initial surd consonants; before sonants, whether vowel or consonant, they become respectively ग्, ड्, ब्. Before nasals they may be still further assimilated, becoming the nasals क्, ण्, म्. Thus, परिव्राट् न becomes either परिव्राङ्ग or परिव्राण्ण; सम्यक् न becomes सम्यक्ण or सम्यक्ङ्. The latter method is much more usual.

267. Before initial ह् a final mute is made sonant; and then the ह् may either remain unchanged, or be converted into the sonant aspirate corresponding to the preceding letter; thus, either सम्यग्हस्तः or सम्यग्घस्तः; either तस्माद् हस्तात् or तस्माद्घस्तात्. In practice the latter method is almost invariably followed.

* When a dental mute comes in contact with a lingual or palatal mute or sibilant, the dental is usually assimilated, becoming lingual or palatal respectively. Thus, तिष्ठति from ति-स्था-ति; राज्ञा instead of राज्ञा.

Vocabulary XXIV.

Verbs:

खिद् + च्चव out off.

मृञ् in caus. (*mārjāyati*) rub, rub off, polish.वर्णय (denom. — *varṇāyati*) describe, portray.विञ् + उद् in caus. (*udvejāyati*) terrify.

Subst.:

आत्मन् m., soul, self; often as simple reflexive pronoun; in *genitive*, his, etc.; one's own.

कर्मन् n., deed; ceremony; fate.

चर्मन् n., hide, skin; leather.

जन्मन् n., birth.

तीर n., bank, shore.

चिष्टुम् f., name of a metre.

दिन n., day.

देवकुल n., temple.

नरक m., hell.

पक्षिन् m., bird.

पाच n., pot, vessel.

ब्रह्मन् (*brāhman*) n., devotion; sacred word (of God); sacred knowledge; the world-spirit.ब्रह्मन् (*brahmān* — a personification of the preceding) m., the supreme All-Soul, the creator.

भस्मन् n., ashes.

यति m., ascetic.

राजन् m., king.

लोमन् n., hair.

वर्ष n., year.

समानस m., meeting, encounter.

सीमन् f., border, boundary; outskirts.

हन्तृ m., slayer, killer.

Adj.:

आयुष्मन् long-lived (often used in respectful address).

इयन् so great, so much (263).

कियन् how great? how much?

कृपण, f. °आ, poor; niggardly.

तावन् so much, so many.

द्वितीय, f. °आ, second.

प्रियकर्मन् kind.

प्रियवाच् saying pleasant things, sociable.

बलवन् strong, mighty.

भगवन्, f. वती, honorable; blessed.

भास्वन् shining, brilliant.

मतिमन् shrewd, prudent.

यावन् how much, as many.

रूच, f. °आ, harsh, rough.

विभु, f. °म्बी, pervading, far-reaching; omnipresent; mighty.

हत्, f. °आ (pass. part. of हन्) killed.

Adv.:

प्रायेण commonly.

Exercise XXIV.

मोद्विजयेज्जगद्वाचा रुचया प्रियवाग्भवेत् ।

प्रायेण प्रियकर्मा यः कृपणो ऽपि हि सेव्यते ॥ १२ ॥

यावन्ति हतस्य पशोश्चर्मणि लोमानि विद्यन्ते तावन्ति वर्षाणि हन्ता नरके वसेत् । १ । भृत्या बलवन्तं राजानमायुष्मन्निति वदन्तु । २ । भास्वन्तं सूर्यं दिने दिने द्विजातयः पूजयन्तु । ३ । कियतो मासान्भवान्काशां न्यवसत् । ४ । के चिद्यतयो भस्मना शरीरं मार्जयन्ति । ५ । कर्म बलवदिति मतिमतो दरिद्रान्पश्यतो (gen.) मे मतिः । ६ । त्वयि राज्ञि तिष्ठत्यस्माकं सर्वासां च प्रजानां सुखं न विनश्येत् । ७ । एकस्मिन्नन्दिनि ये शूद्रा अजायन्त त आत्मनां धर्मान्सम्यगनुतिष्ठन्तो द्वितीये जन्वन्ति द्विजातयो भवेयुः । ८ । ग्रामे परिव्राज्य तिष्ठेद्दिने परिभ्रमन्ब्रह्म ध्यायेत् । ९ । एतस्मां पुरि श्रीमतो राज्ञोः समागमो ऽजायत । १० । ब्रह्मा जगतः स्रष्टा वेदेषु श्रूयते । ११ । यान्पक्षिणो वनस्य सीमनि वृचादुत्पततो ऽपश्यत ते सर्वे मया आत्मा च पार्श्वीर्विन्त एवाबध्यन्त मात्मा चास्मभ्यमपद्यन्त ॥ १२ ॥

13. Brāhman have *their* shoes made (*use* कृ *caus.*) of leather (*instr.*) or wood. 14. A temple of blessed Viṣṇu stands in the outskirts of this village, on the bank of the river. 15. Let him rub off the vessels diligently with ashes (*pl.*). 16. The servants announced to the king that the two celebrated poets were coming (*use or. recta with इति*). 17. O children (*du.*), tell me your (*आत्मन्, gen. du.*) names. 18. The world-spirit is described in many Upaniṣads. 19. It is said by the seers that the world-spirit is omnipresent (*use or. recta*). 20. That part of the world-spirit, which is encompassed by the body, is called the soul of man (cf. § 234). 21. Candragupta was the mighty emperor of the whole earth. 22. All the mighty warriors who fought in Kṛṣṇa's army were killed in battle by the enemy. 23. In the Rigveda (ऋच *pl.*) occurs (विद् *pass.*) also the Triṣṭubh. 24. The king of Pāṭaliputra is by birth a Çūdra; let him not marry the beautiful daughter of the ascetic Mitrāṭithi.

Lesson XXV.

268. Declension. Perfect Active Participles in वांस. The active participles of the perfect tense-system are quite peculiar as regards the modifications of the stem. In the strong cases the suffix is वांस, which becomes वान् in the nom. sing. masc., and is shortened to वन् in the voc. sing. In the weakest cases the suffix is contracted into उष्; and in the middle cases it is changed to वत्. A union-vowel इ, if present in the strong and middle cases, disappears before उष् in the weakest. Radical इ and ई, if preceded by one consonant, become य् before उष्, but if preceded by more than one consonant, become इय्; whereas radical उ always becomes उव् before उष्, and radical ऋ, र्. Thus, निनीवांस, निन्युष्; सुयुवांस, सुयुवुष्; चक्रवांस, चक्रुष्. The feminine stem is formed with ई from the weakest stem-form; thus, निन्युषी. Examples:

1. विद्वांस 'knowing':

Masculine.			Neuter.		
Singular.	Dual.	Plural.	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
N. विद्वाण्	विद्वांसौ	विद्वांसस्	N.V. विद्वत्	विदुषी	विद्वांसि
A. विद्वांसम्	"	विदुषस्	"	"	"
I. विदुषा	विद्वज्जाम्	विद्वज्जिस्	as in the masculine.		
L. विदुषि	विदुषोस्	विद्वत्सु			
V. विद्वन्					

2. अग्निवांस 'having gone':*

* Another form of perf. part. of this verb (गम्) makes the strong and middle stems अगन्वांस and अगन्वत्; the weakest form is as above, अग्मुष्.

Masculine.			Neuter.		
Singular.	Dual.	Plural.	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
N. अग्निवान्	अग्निवांसौ	°वांसस्	अग्निवत्	अग्मुषी	अग्निवांसि
A. अग्निवांसम्	"	अग्मुषस्	"	"	"
I. अग्मुषा	°वज्जाम्	°वज्जिस्	as in the masculine		
L. अग्मुषि	अग्मुषोस्	अग्निवत्सु			
V. अग्निवन्					

269. Stems अन्, युवन्. The stems अन् m., 'dog', and युवन् m., n., 'young', have as weakest stems अन् and युन्; in the strong and middle cases they follow राजन्; voc. अन्, युवन्. Fem. अनी and युवति.

270. The stem मघवन् m., 'generous' (in the later language almost exclusively a name of Indra), has as strong stem मघवान्, mid. °व, weakest मघोन्. Nom. sing. मघवा, voc. °वन्. Fem. मघोनी.

271. The stem अहन् n., 'day', is used only in the strong and weakest cases, the middle, with the nom. sing., coming from अहर् or अहस्. Thus:

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
N.A.V. अहर् (°स्)	अहनी or अह्नी	अहानि	
I. अह्ना	अहोभ्याम्	अहोभिस्	
L. अहनि or अहि	अहोस्	अहस्तु or अहःसु	

272. Compounds with ष/अच् or अच्. The adjectives formed from this root with prepositions and other words are quite irregular. Some of them have only two stem-forms: a strong in अच् and a weak in अच्; while others distinguish from the middle in अच् a weakest stem in च्, before which the अ is contracted with a preceding इ (य्) or उ (व्) into ई or ऊ. The fem. is made with ई from the weakest (or weak) stem; thus, विषूची. The principal stems of this sort are as follows:

	Strong.	Middle.	Weak (weakest).
प्राञ्च 'forward', 'eastward'	प्राञ्च		प्राञ्च
अवाञ्च 'downward'	अवाञ्च		अवाञ्च
उदञ्च 'northward'	उदञ्च	उदञ्च	उदीञ्च*
प्रतञ्च 'backward', 'westward'	प्रतञ्च	प्रतञ्च	प्रतीञ्च
न्यञ्च 'low'	न्यञ्च	न्यञ्च	नीञ्च
अन्वञ्च 'following'	अन्वञ्च	अन्वञ्च	अनूञ्च
तिर्यञ्च 'going horizontally'	तिर्यञ्च	तिर्यञ्च	तिरिञ्च**

Vocabulary XXV.

Verbs:

गम् + अस्तम् (<i>astamgacchati</i>) go down, set (lit'ly "go home" — used of the heavenly bodies).	+ उद् (<i>udgacchati</i>) rise. स्पृह् (<i>sprhayati</i>) desire (<i>dat.</i>).
--	--

Subst.:

गौरव n., weight; dignity.	अम m., pains, trouble.
जगत् n., that which lives.	सिंह m., lion.
तक्षशिला f., n. pr., a city (Taxila) in India.	स्नान n., bathing, bath.
तिर्यञ्च m., n., animal.	हरिण m., gazelle.
त्वष्टृ m., n. pr., a god, Tvastar.	Adj.:
परिषद् f., assembly.	अधीत. f., °आ, learned, studied.
भृगुकच्छ n., Baroch (a holy place in India).	तस्त्रिवांस having stood; <i>as n. subst.</i> , the immovable.
मघवन् m., Indra.	चिशीर्षेन् three-headed.
युवन् m., n., young; f. युवति.	दष्ट. f. °आ, (part. of दृश्) bitten.
विपाक m., ripening; recompense.	वनवासिन् forest-dwelling.
	विद्वांस knowing, wise, learned.

* इ inserted, irregularly, in weakest forms only.

** irregular (तिरिञ्च + अञ्च).

Exercise XXV.

विद्वान्प्रशंसते लोके विद्वान्गच्छति गौरवम् ।

विद्यया लभ्यते सर्वे विद्या सर्वत्र पूज्यते ॥ १३ ॥

प्राच्यां दिशि ज्योतींश्चुङ्गन्ति प्रतीच्यामस्तंगच्छन्ति । १ । विद्वद्भिरेव विदुषां श्रमो ज्ञायते । २ । त्वष्टृस्त्रिशीर्षाणं पुत्रं मघवामारयत् । ३ । अहनी एव चक्षियावयुध्येताम् । ४ । शुना दष्टो द्विजातिः स्नानमाचरेत् । ५ । काश्चा आजगमुषो भ्रातृनपश्याम । ६ । येन वेदा अधीतास्तं युवानमपि गुरुं गणयन्ति । ७ । पापाः कर्मणां विपाकेन द्वितीये जन्मनि तिर्यञ्चु जायन्त इति स्मृतिः । ८ । विद्वांसो विद्वद्भिः सह समागमाय स्पृहयन्ति । ९ । कियन्निरहोभिः काश्चाः प्रयागमगच्छत । १० । प्राचां देशे पाटलिपुत्रं नाम महन्नगरं विद्यत उदीचां तक्षशिला प्रतीचां भृगुकच्छम् ॥ ११ ॥

12. Vṛtra was killed (हन्, *caus. pass.*) by Maghavan and the Maruts. 13. Young women sang a song. 14. Two learned Brāhmins dispute. 15. Saramā is called in the Rigveda the dog (*f.*) of the gods. 16. Great forests are found in the west (*expr. as pred., nom. pl.*). 17. In the assembly let the best among the learned teach (उप-दिश) the law. 18. Those who have committed evil deeds must stand by day (*acc.*) and sit by night. 19. Glory was attained by the young warrior. 20. Turned toward the east (*nom. sing.*) let one reverence the gods; the east (प्राची) is the quarter (दिश) of the gods. 21. Day by day one must worship (पूज्) the sun. 22. The gazelle has been killed by dogs. 23. The lion is king of forest-dwelling animals.

Lesson XXVI.

Some Irregular Substantives.

273. अम्बा f., 'mother': voc. sing. अम्ब.

274. 1. सखि m., 'friend': sing. nom. सखा, acc. सखायम्, inst. सखा, dat. सखे, abl.-gen. सख्यस्, loc. सखी, voc. सखे; du. सखायी,

सखिभ्याम्, सख्योस्; pl. nom. सखायस्, acc. सखीन्, instr. सखिभिस्; the rest like अग्नि. — 2. पति m., is declined regularly (like अग्नि) in composition, and when meaning 'lord, master'; when meaning 'husband', it follows सखि in the following forms: inst. sing. पत्न्या, dat. पत्न्यै, abl.-gen. पत्न्युस्, loc. पत्न्यौ.

275. The neuter stems अचन् 'eye', अस्थन् 'bone', दधन् 'curds', सकथन् 'thigh', form only the weakest cases; thus, अक्षणा, दधस्, सकथनि or सकथ्यु, etc.; the rest of the inflection is made from corresponding stems in इ; thus, nom. sing. अक्षि etc.

276. 1. लक्ष्मी f., 'goddess of fortune', makes nom. sing. लक्ष्मीस्. — 2. स्त्री f., 'woman', follows a mixed declension; thus, nom. sing. स्त्री, acc. स्त्रियम् or स्त्रीम्, instr. स्त्रिया, dat. स्त्रियै, abl.-gen. स्त्रियास्, loc. स्त्रियाम्; du. स्त्रियौ, स्त्रीभ्याम्, स्त्रियोस्; pl. nom. स्त्रियस्, acc. स्त्रियस् or स्त्रोस्, instr. स्त्रीभिस्, etc.; gen. स्त्रीणाम्.

277. 1. अप् f., 'water', only pl.; its final is changed to इ before भ्; thus, nom. आपस्, acc. अपस्, instr. अद्भिस्, dat.-abl. अप्त्वास्, gen. आपाम्, loc. अप्सु. — 2. दिव् f., * 'sky', makes nom. sing. दीस्, du. द्वावौ, pl. (sometimes) द्वावस्; the endings are the normal ones, but the root becomes वु before consonant-endings: thus, acc. sing. दिवम्, nom.-acc. pl. दिवस्, instr. वुभिस्. Not all the cases are found in use. — 3. Stem रै m. (rarely f.), 'wealth': sing. रास्, रायम्, राया etc.; du. रायौ, राभ्याम्, रायोस्; pl. रायस् (nom. and acc.), राभिस् etc.

278. 1. अनडुह् or अनडुह् m., (from अनस् + वह् 'cart-drawing', i. e.) 'ox': strong stem अनडुह्, mid. अनडुद्, weakest अनडुह्; nom. sing. अनडुह्, voc. अनडुह्. — 2. The stem पन्थन् m., 'road', makes all the strong cases, with irregular nom. sing. पन्थास्; the corresponding middle cases are made from पथि, and the weakest from पथ्; thus, acc. sing. पन्थानम्, dat. पथे, acc. pl. पथस्,

* In the older language oftener masculine.

dat. पथिभ्यस्. [The stems मन्थन् m., 'stirring-stick', and अम्भुचन् m., an epithet of Indra, are said to follow पन्थन्.]

279. The stem पुंस m., 'man', is very irregular. The strong stem is पुमांस, mid. पुम्, weakest पुंस. Thus, sing. पुमान्, पुमांसम्, पुंसा, etc., voc. पुमन्; du. पुमांसौ, पुम्भ्याम्, पुंसोस्; pl. पुमांसस्, पुंभिस् etc., पुंसु.

280. For the stem जरा f., 'age', may be substituted in the cases with vowel-endings forms from जरस् f.; thus, जरया or जरसा.

281. हृद् n., 'heart', does not make nom.-voc.-acc. of any number (except in composition), these being supplied from हृदय n.

282. The stem पद् m., 'foot', becomes पाद् in strong cases; and, in compounds, in the middle cases also; thus, nom. sing. पाद्, acc. पादम्, instr. पदा, etc. From द्विपद् 'biped', acc. sing. द्विपादम्, pl. द्विपदस्, instr. pl. द्विपाद्भिस्. [The stem पाद् m., 'foot', has the complete declension of a-stems.]

283. The root हन् 'slay', as final member of a compound, becomes हा in nom. sing., and loses its न् in the middle cases and its अ in the weakest cases (but only optionally in loc. sing.). Further, when अ is lost, ह् in contact with न् reverts to its original च्; thus, ब्रह्महन् m., 'killing a Brāhman', makes nom. sing. ब्रह्महा, acc. °हणम्*, instr. ब्रह्मघ्ना, etc., loc. ब्रह्मघ्नि or °हणि, voc. °हन्; du. ब्रह्महणौ, °हभ्याम् etc.; pl. nom. °हणस्, acc. °घ्नस्.

284. The stems पूषन् m., n. pr., and अर्यमन् m., n. pr. (both personifications of the sun), make the nom. sing. in आ, but otherwise do not lengthen the अ; thus, nom. पूषा, acc. पूषाम्, instr. पूषा.

* In compound words, an altering cause in one member sometimes lingualizes a न् of the next following member. But a guttural or labial in direct combination with न् sometimes prevents the combination, as in the instr. ब्रह्मघ्ना.

Vocabulary XXVI.

Verbs:	
च्र move; in caus. (<i>arpáyati</i>) send; put; hand over, give.	तृप् (<i>trīpyati</i>) be pleased or satisfied, satisfy or satiate oneself.
गृह् (<i>gūhāti</i>) in caus. (<i>gūháyati</i>) hide away, conceal.	लप् + वि (<i>vilápati</i>) complain.

Subst.:	
अक्षन् (<i>अक्षि</i>) n., eye.	मानव m., man (<i>homo</i>).
अद्रोह m., faithfulness.	व्रत n., vow, obligation, duty.
असुर m., demon.	Adj.:
चित्त n., notice, thought, mind.	काण f., °आ, one-eyed.
देवता f., divinity, deity.	चतुष्पद् four-footed, quadruped.
दधच् (<i>weakest °धीच्</i>) m., n. pr., a Vedic saint.	द्विपद् m., biped.
पद् m., foot.	नियत, f. °आ (part. of नि-यम्), ordained, fixed, permanent.
पालन n., protection.	शिव, f. °आ, beneficent, gracious, blessed.

Exercise XXVI.

पत्नी भक्तिर्व्रतं स्त्रीणामद्रोहो मन्त्रिणां व्रतम् ।

प्रजानां पालनं चैव नियतं भूभृतां व्रतम् ॥ १४ ॥

बलवन्तावनङ्गाहो लाङ्गलं वहेताम् । १ । शिवास्ते पन्थानः । २ । लक्ष्मीर्विष्णोर्भार्या । ३ । हृषीष पुमान्परं ब्रह्म ध्यायति । ४ । बाङ्गभ्यां भूभृत्कृत्स्नं जगदजयत् । ५ । केन पथा भवान्सख्या सहागच्छत् । ६ । पदा मामस्यूशस्तखा । ७ । पुंभिः सह स्त्रीरागमयद्राजा । ८ । हे युवन्पन्थानं मे दर्शय । ९ । अङ्गिः पादौ चालयत्वेष परिव्राट् । १० । स्त्री पत्ये रूपकाख्यर्पयति । ११ । एकेनाक्ष्या यो न किञ्चित्पश्यति तं काणं वदन्ति । १२ । द्यौः पिता पृथिवी च माता वो रक्षताम् । १३ । एते पुमांसो हृदयेषु पापं गूहयन्ति । १४ । ब्रह्मघ्ना न संभाषिते न च तमध्यापयेबाजयेद्वा । १५ । असुरेभ्यो भयात्पानवा देवताः पालनं प्रार्थयन्त ताभिश्च शिवाभिः पापा असुरा अघात्यन्त । १६ । महानुदीचां राजा दरिद्रीः पथि तिष्ठद्भिः शिष्यैः संभाषमायस्तेभ्यो भिषां चच्छति ॥ १७ ॥

18. The meeting of the men and women took place on the road. 19. In the Veda they call the sun Pūṣan, Mitra (*m.*), Aryaman, and Savitar. 20. Water also is named (*गणय*, *pass.*) among the deities in the Rik (*use अचस्*) and in the sacrificial formulas. 21. Be gracious, O Çiva, to biped and quadruped. 22. The seers' view is, that fire is to be found in the water (*use वृत्*, and make a direct statement with इति). 23. The Asura was slain by Maghavan with a bone of Dadhyañc. 24. Who knows the wind's path (*pass.*)? 25. Mother, satisfy (*तृप् caus.*) the child with curds. 26. Have food brought (*use आ-नी, caus., pl.*) from our friend's house. 27. The Maruts are Maghavan's friends.

Lesson XXVII.

285. **Demonstrative Pronouns.** Two demonstrative-declensions are made up with particular irregularity: they are those of the pronouns अयम् and असौ (for which the natives give the stem-forms as इदम् and अदस् respectively). The first is a more indefinite demonstrative: 'this' or 'that'; the other signifies especially the remoter relation.

286. अयम् (इदम्):

	Masculine.			Feminine.		
	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
N.	अयम्	इमौ	इमे	इयम्	इमे	इमास्
A.	इमम्	"	इमान्	इमाम्	"	"
I.	अनेन	आभ्याम्	एभिस्	अनया	आभ्याम्	आभिस्
D.	असौ	"	एभ्यस्	अस्यै	"	आभ्यस्
Ab.	अस्मात्	"	"	अस्यास्	"	"
G.	अस्य	अनयोस्	एषाम्	"	अनयोस्	आसाम्
B.	अस्मिन्	"	एषु	अस्माम्	"	आसु

Neuter: Nom.-acc. sing. इदम्, du. इमे, pl. इमानि; the rest is like the masculine.

287. असी (अदस्):

	Masculine.			Feminine.		
	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.	Sing.	Dual.	Plural.
N. असी	अमू	अमी	असी	अमू	अमूस्	
A. अमुम्	"	अमून्	अमूम	"	"	
I. अमुना	अमूभ्याम्	अमीभिस्	अमुया	अमूभ्याम्	अमीभिस्	
D. अमुष्मै	"	अमीभ्यस्	अमुष्यै	"	अमूभ्यस्	
Ab. अमुष्मात्	"	"	अमुष्यात्	"	"	
G. अमुष्य	अमुयोस्	अमीषाम्	"	अमुयोस्	अमूषाम्	
L. अमुष्मिन्	"	अमीषु	अमुष्याम्	"	अमूषु	

Neuter: Nom.-acc. sing. अदस्, du. अमू, pl. अमूनि; the rest like masc. — The final ई of अमी is unchangeable (cf. § 161).

288. There is a defective pronominal stem एन, which is accentless, and hence used only in situations where no emphasis falls upon it. The only forms are the following: Sing. acc. m. एनम्, n. एनद्, f. एनाम्; instr. m., n., एनेन, f. एनया. Du. acc. m. एनी, f., n., एने; gen.-loc. m., f., n., एनयोस्. Pl. acc. m. एनान्, n. एनानि, f. एनास्. — These forms may be used only when the person or object to which they refer has already been indicated by a form of अयम् or एष. Thus, अनेन काव्यमधीतमेनं व्याकरण-मध्यापय "this one has read the art of poetry; teach him grammar".

289. Past Passive Participle in त or न. By the suffix त — or, in a comparatively small number of verbs, न — is formed, directly from the root of the verb, and unconnected with any tense-stem, a verbal adjective called the past passive participle. The fem. ends always in ंञ्जा. When this participle is made from transitive verbs, it qualifies something as having endured the action expressed by the verb; thus, दत्त dattá, 'given'; उक्त ukta, 'spoken'. When made from an intransitive or neuter verb, the same par-

ticipale has no passive, but only an indefinite past, sense; thus, गत, 'gone', भूत, 'been'; पतित, 'fallen'.

290. This participle is often used as an adjective. Very commonly, also, it supplies the place of a finite verb, when some form of अस्, 'be', or भू is to be supplied; thus, स गतः "he is gone"; मया पत्रं लिखितम् "by me a letter was written". The neuter is frequently used as a substantive; thus, दत्तम् 'a gift'; दुग्धम् 'milk'; and also as *nomen actionis*. Sometimes it has a present signification, particularly when made from neuter verbs; thus, स्थित (from स्था) often 'standing'.

291. A. With suffix न [ञ]. The suffix न is taken by a number of roots. Thus:

1. Certain roots in आ, and in i and u-vowels; thus, प्वा or पी 'swell, be fat', पीन; हा 'abandon', हीन; क्ष्वा 'wither', क्ष्वान; वि 'destroy', वीण; आ or च्चि 'swell', शून; कू 'cut', कून.

2. The roots in variable ऋ (so-called ऋ-roots), which before the suffix becomes ईर् or ऊर्, as in the pres. pass.; thus, २ङ् (किर्), कीर्ण; तृ, तीर्ण; १पृ (पूर) 'fill', पूर्ण.

3. A few roots ending in ज् (which becomes ञ् before the न); thus, भङ् 'break', भण; १भुज् 'bend', भुण; मज्ज् 'sink', मण; रुज् 'be sick', रुण; विज् 'fear', विण. Also one or two others which exhibit a guttural before the न: कण् 'attach', कण; व्रज् 'cut up', वृकण.

4. A number of roots, some of them very common, in द् (which becomes न् before न): सद्, सन्न; (नि-सद्, निषण्); भिद् 'cut', भिन्न.*

292. Some few verbs make double forms; thus, त्वर् 'hasten', तूर्ण or त्वरित; विद् 'acquire', विन्न or वित्त.

* Commonest exceptions: खादित from खाद् 'eat'; मत्त from मद्; मुदित from मुद् 'rejoice'; रुदित from रुद् 'weep'; उदित from उद् 'speak'; विदित from विद् 'know'.

Vocabulary XXVII.

Verbs:

ईच् + उप (*upēkṣate*) neglect.
 2कृ + वि (*vikīrāti*) scatter.
 गणय + अच् (den. — *avagaṇāyati*) despise.
 चर् + उद्, in caus. (*uccārāyati*) pronounce, say.
 तृ + अच् (*avatārati*) descend.
 + उद् (*uttārati*) emerge, come out.
 पी or प्या (*pyāyate*) become stout or fat.

भक्ष् (*bhakṣāyati*) eat.
 भङ् break.
 2भुज् + उप enjoy.
 भू + परि (*paribhāvati*) despise.
 मज्ज् (*mājjati*) sink.
 युज् in caus. (*yojāyati*) yoke, harness.
 लग् (*lāgati*) attach; hang, cling, adhere.
 सद् (*sīdati*) sit, settle down; be overcome, exhausted.

Subst.:

अश्विनी m. du., *nom. pr.*, the Aśvins (the Indian *Διὸς κοῦροι*).
 आचार m., "walk and conversation"; conduct of life, observance.
 ऋण n., debt.
 कैलास m., *n. pr.* a mountain.
 बुध् f., hunger.
 ब्रह्मचर्य n., life of holiness, i. e. religious studentship.
 भोजन n., meal-time, meal.
 भुज्यु m., *n. pr.*, a Vedic personage.
 मधुपर्क m., sweet drink.
 मुक्ता f., pearl.
 राक्षस m., demon.
 लाभ m., acquisition, gain.

विवाह m., wedding, marriage.
 व्याधि m., illness.
 शकट m., car.
 शय्या f., bed.
 हल m., n., plough.
 हार m., chain, garland.
 Adj.:
 चीण (part. of 2चि) reduced, decayed; ruined.
 तीव्र f. °आ, great, strong, violent.
 पीन (part. of पी) fat.
 ब्रह्मचारिन् studying sacred knowledge; as m. *subst.*, Brāhman student.
 हीन (part.) abandoned; wanting in; and so sometimes w. instr., = 'without'.

Exercise XXVII.

वर्धमानमृणं राजन्परिभूताश्च शत्रवः ।

जनयन्ति भयं तीव्रं व्याधयश्चाप्युपेक्षिताः ॥ १५ ॥

यानि कर्माण्यस्मिं लोके क्रियन्ते तेषां फलं कर्त्तव्यमुष्मिं लोके उप-
 भुज्यते । १ । भो असावहम् * इत्युच्चारयन्गरीयसो ऽभिवादयेत् । २ । अयं
 नः पिता रथादवतीर्णः सखा सह संभाषमाशक्तिष्ठति । ३ । आचारिण
 हीनं पुमांसं विद्वांसमप्यवगणयन्ति सन्तः । ४ । उदधौ मयं म्रियमाणं
 भुज्युमश्विनी नावोदहरताम् । ५ । एभ्यः बुधा सीदन्तो भिचुभ्यो ऽन्नं
 प्रयच्छ । ६ । पथ्यस्नाकं रथो भयः । ७ । युध्यमानानमूननडुहः पश्व । ८ ।
 भवता विकीर्णं धान्यमिमे विहगा भक्षयन्ति । ९ । आभिरङ्गिः पाणी
 प्रचालय । १० । इदम् ** आसनमिमा आपः स्नानायार्थं मधुपर्कं इदं
 भोजनमिमानि वस्त्राणीयं शय्येति गृहस्थो ऽतिथिं गृहमागच्छन्तं व-
 देत् ॥ ११ ॥

12. Have medicine given quickly (*use pass. part. of लृच्, in nom.*) to these sick *persons*. 13. This is that mountain Kāilāsa, on which Īva dwells. 14. In order to attain (*लाभ, dat.*) this and that *other world (gen.)* the priest offered sacrifice for me (*यच् caus.*). 15. The flowers in the garlands of these women are withered. 16. By that king, who *was* praised by us, we were delighted with these jewels. 17. The peasant yoked two fat oxen to the plough. 18. The learned Brāhman emerged (*pass. part.*) from the water. 19. Here comes (*pass. part.*) the queen. 20. A chain of pearls hung (*pass. part.*) on the neck of this demon. 21. What sin is not committed by *persons* reduced in *fortune*? 22. This garden is filled with men and women.

Lesson XXVIII.

293. Past Passive Participle, cont'd. B With suffix त्.

I. Without union-vowel इ. Much more commonly this parti-

* "I am so-and-so; N. or M."

** Translate the pronoun-forms by 'here', and cf. § 225.

ciple is made by adding the suffix त् to the bare root; thus, ज्ञात from ज्ञा; जित from जि; चित्र from चिप्; हत from ह (or ह्रा); वृत्त from वृत्.

294. If the root end in a consonant other than क्, त्, प्, स्, the ordinary rules of euphonic combination apply as follows:

1. Final च् and ज् become क्; thus, सिक्त from सिच्; युक्त from युज्; त्यक्त from त्यज्.

2. Final श् becomes ष्, after which, as also after radical final ष्, त् becomes ट्; thus, दृष्ट from दृश्; द्विष्ट from द्विष्. सृष्ट and मृष्ट are made from सृज् and मृज्, and इष्ट from यज्, contrary to 1. प्रह् makes पृष्ट; and तष्, तष्ट.

3. Final ध् becomes द्, and भ्, ब्; and the following त् becomes ध्; thus, वृद्ध from वृध्, लब्ध from लभ्.

4. Final ह् is treated in various ways, according to its historical value. a. Sometimes ह् combines with त् to form ह्, before which short vowels (except ऋ) are lengthened; thus, गाढ from गाह्, लीढ from लिह्, रूढ from रह्; मूढ from मुह्; but वृढ from वृह्. सह् forms सोढ. b. Where ह् represents original घ्, the combination is गध्; thus, दग्ध from दह्; दिग्ध from दिह्; दुग्ध from दुह्. The root मुह् forms also मुग्ध. c. नह्, where ह् represents original ध्, makes नद्ध.

295. The root before त् usually has its weakest form, if there is any where in the verbal system a distinction of strong and weak forms. Thus: 1. A penultimate nasal is dropped; e. g., अक्त from अक्त्; बद्ध from बन्ध्; स्रस्त from संस् (or स्रस्); शस्त from शंस्. 2. Roots which are abbreviated in the weak forms of the perfect suffer the same abbreviation here; e. g., उक्त from वच्, उप्त from वप्, सुप्त from स्वप्, ऊढ from वह्; इष्ट from यज् (the same form from इष्); विद्ध from व्यध्; पृष्ट from प्रह्. 3. Final आ is weakened to ई in गीत from गा 'sing', पीत from पी 'drink'; to इ in स्थित from स्था, हित from धा 'put' (with घ् also changed to ह्), मित from

मा 'measure', and a few others. 4. A final म् is lost after च् in गत, यत, नत, रत (from गम् etc.); and likewise final न् in चत, तत, मत, वत, हत (from चन् etc.). 5. Isolated cases are शिष्ट from शास्; यूत from दीव् 'play'.

296. More irregular are the following:

1. Some roots in अम् make participles in आन्त; thus, कान्त, क्रान्त, चान्त, तान्त, दान्त, शान्त, आन्त, from कम् etc.

2. जन्, चन्, and सन् make जात etc.

3. The root 1दा, 'give', forms दत्त (from the derivative form दद्). The contracted form त्त is widely found in composition, especially with prepositions; thus, प्रदत्त or प्रत्त, निदत्त or नीत्त, etc.

297. II. With union-vowel इ. The suffix with इ, or in the form इत, is regularly used with the derivative verb-stems in secondary conjugation, also often with roots of derivative character (like जिन्व्, हिंस्), and not infrequently with original roots.

298. When इत is added to causative and denominative verb-stems the syllables अय are dropped; thus, चुर, pass. part. चोरित; गणय, गणित; तड्, ताडित; मृ, caus. मारयति, caus. pass. part. मारित; हन्, caus. घातयति, घातित.

299. Among the original roots taking इत may be noticed the following:

पत् 'fall', पतित; कुप्, कुपित; चस् 'dwell', उषित; अस्, असित; तृष् 'thirst', तृषित; लिख्, लिखित; ईच्, ईचित; वद्, उदित. यह् makes गृहीत; शी 'lie' makes शयित.

300. A few roots form this participle either with or without the auxiliary इ; thus, मत्त and मदित from मद्.

301. The grammarians reckon as participles of the *na*-formation a few derivative adjectives, coming from roots which do not make a regular participle; such are चाम 'burnt' (चा); कृश 'thin', 'haggard' (कृम्); पक्क 'ripe' (पच्); शुष्क 'dry' (शुष्); फल्ल 'expanded' (फल्).

302. Past Active Participle in तवन्त् (or नवन्त्). From the past pass. part. is made, by adding the possessive suffix वन्त् (f. वती), a secondary derivative having the meaning and construction of a perfect active participle; thus, कृतवन्त्, प्रतिपन्नवन्त्.

303. This participle is almost always used predicatively, and generally without expressed copula, i. e., with the value of a personal perfect-form. Thus, मां न कश्चिद्दृष्टवान् "no one has seen me"; or, with copula, महत्कृच्छ्रं प्राप्तवत्यसि "thou (fem.) hast come into great misery". This participle comes to be made even from intransitives; thus, सा गतवती "she has gone".

Vocabulary XXVIII.

Verbs:

तृ + प्र in caus. (*pratārayati*) deceive.

नह् + सम् (*samndāhyati*) equip oneself.

पह् + वि-आ in caus. (*vyāpādāyati*) kill.

पलाय्* (*pālāyate*) flee.

भुञ्ज् enjoy, eat.

मन् + सम् honor.

मुह् (*mūhyati*) be confused or dazed or stupid.

रुध् + अय besiege.

रह् + प्र (*prarohati*) grow up.

विष् + प्र (*praviṣṭi*) penetrate, enter.

वृत् + प्र in caus. (*pravartāyati*) continue.

शिष् + अय remain over, survive.

सृ + उप bestrew.

Subst.:

अन्त m., end; in loc., at last.

दक्षिण n., n. pr., Delhi.

खर m., ass.

गुहा f., cave.

चरित n., behavior, life.

पृथ्वीराज m., nom. pr.

पीर m., citizen.

प्रासाद m., palace.

यवन m., Greek, barbarian.

शृगाल m., jackal.

सेनिक m., soldier.

सेन्य n., army.

हस्तिन् m., elephant.

Adj.:

भूयस् (comp.) more. In neut. sing. as adv.: mostly.

स्निग्ध (part. from स्निह्) affectionate.

Exercise XXVIII.

श्रीमतो (abl.) राज्ञः समंतेरेभिः कविभिरिष्टानि वसूनि खड्यानि । १ । कुतो भवानागत इति द्वारि स्थितः परिव्राजुहस्य पतिना पृष्टः । २ । श्व-भिर्गृहीतो हरिणो व्याधिर्वापादितः । ३ । मूढः खरः शृगालस्य स्निग्धा-भिर्वाग्भिः प्रतारितः सिंहस्य गुहायामागतस्तेन हतः । ४ । चित्रेषु सिक्ता-भिर्मेघानामङ्घ्रिधान्यं प्रकृढम् । ५ । काश्यामुषितैर्धातुभिः शास्त्राणि सम्यग्धोतानीति तेषामाचार्येण लिखितात्पत्रादवगम्यते ॥ ६ ॥ उदीच्या दिशो (abl.) यवनेष्वागच्छत्सु पृथ्वीराज इन्द्रप्रस्थान्तीत्येन सह नि-ष्क्रान्तः । ७ । पथि संगच्छमानैर्द्विड्भिः सह महद्युद्धं संजातम् । ८ । तस्मिन् राजा पराजितः शरैर्विद्धो हस्तिनो भूमौ पतितो यवनेर्जवन्नेव गृहीतः पश्चाच्चसिना घातितः ॥ ९ ॥

(In the following render all finite verbs by participles.)

10. Many of the soldiers were killed; some who survived fled into the city. 11. The gates of the city were shut fast (दृढा अपि-हिता); the citizens equipped themselves for battle. 12. The Yavanas approached and besieged the city (*pass.*). 13. Finally the Yavanas, proving victorious (*past act. part.*), entered the city by force. 14. The young and old men were mostly murdered; the women made slaves; the great possessions of the citizens plundered, the palaces and houses burnt with fire. 15. The end of Pṛthvīrāja has been described by the Yavanas, and his previous life sung by the poet Caṇḍa.

Lesson XXIX.

304. Gerund, or Absolutive. The gerund is made in classical Sanskrit by one of the suffixes त्वा and य्.

* A quasi-root from इ 'go' + परा 'away'.

305. A. **त्वा**. To uncompoundd roots is added the suffix **त्वा**. It is usually added directly to the root, but sometimes with the vowel **इ** interposed. With regard to the use of **इ**, and to the form of root before it, this formation closely agrees with that of the participle in **त** or **न**. A final root-consonant is treated as before **त**. Roots which make the past pass. part. in **न** generally reject **इ** before **त्वा**.

Examples. 1. Without inserted **इ**: **ज्ञात्वा**, **जित्वा**, **नीत्वा**, **श्रुत्वा**, **भूत्वा**; **स्थित्वा** from **स्था**, **हित्वा** from 1धा 'place' (cf. **हित**) and from **हा**, **दत्त्वा** from **दा** (cf. **दत्त**), **गीत्वा** from **गा**; **उक्त्वा** from **वच्**, **युक्त्वा** from **युज्**; **गत्वा** from **गम्**, **मत्वा** from **मन्**, **वित्त्वा** from 2विद् 'find'; **तीर्त्वा** from **तृ** (cf. **तीर्थ**), **पूर्त्वा** from **पृ** (cf. **पूर्ण**); **दृष्ट्वा** from **दृश्**, **सृष्ट्वा** from **सृज्**, **इष्ट्वा** from **यज्** (cf. § 295, 2), **बुद्ध्वा** from **बुध्**, **लब्ध्वा** from **लभ्**, **दग्ध्वा** from **दह्**.

2. With inserted **इ**: **विदित्वा** from 1विद् 'know', **उषित्वा** from **वस** 'dwell', **शयित्वा** from **शी** (cf. **शयित**), **गृहीत्वा** from **ग्रह्** (cf. **गृहीत**).

306. Some verbs make both forms; thus, from **खन्** either **खनित्वा** or **खात्वा**; from **भ्रम्** either **भ्रमित्वा** or **भ्रान्त्वा**.

307. Causatives and denominatives in **अय** make **अयित्वा**; thus, **चुरत्वा**, **चोरयित्वा**; **तड्**, **ताडयित्वा**; **स्थापयति**, **स्थापयित्वा**.

308. B. **य**. Roots in composition with prepositions (or sometimes with elements of other kinds, as adverbs or nouns) take the suffix **य**, before which **इ** is never inserted. A root which ends in a short vowel adds **त्** before **य**. Thus, **परिणीय**, **अनुभूय**; — **विजित्य**, **संस्तुत्य**, **अधीत्य** (**अधि-इ**) **अधिकृत्य**.

309. Roots in **अम्** and **अन्** whose pass. part. ends in **अत्** form this gerund in **अत्य**; thus, **०गत्य**, **०हृत्य**. But such *am*-roots (not *an*-roots) may preserve the nasal; thus, **०गम्य**. Final changeable **ञ्** becomes **ईर्** or **ऊर्**; thus, **०तीर्य**, **०पूर्य**. Final **आ** remains unaltered; thus, **आदाय**. Some roots show a weak form before

this suffix; thus, **प्रगृह्य**, **संपृच्छ्य**; **प्रोच्य** (**प्र-उच्य**) from **प्र-वच्**; **अनूय** from **अनु-वद्**; **व्युह्य** from **वि-वह्**.

310. Causals and denominatives in **अय** reject those syllables; thus, **प्रचोरयति**, **प्रचोर्य**; **प्रताडय**; **प्रस्थाप्य**; **अवधात्य**; **आनाययति** (**आ-नी**), **आनाय्य**. But if the root ends in a single consonant and encloses short **अ** which is not lengthened in the causative, then the gerund of the caus. ends in **अय्य**, to distinguish it from the gerund of the simple verb; thus, **अव-गम्**, ger. **अवगम्य**; caus. **अव-गमयति**, ger. **अवगमय्य**.

311. The gerund or absolutive is used generally as logical adjunct to the subject of a clause. It denotes an action accompanying or (usually) preceding that which is signified by the verb of the clause. (In the later language it is not always confined to the *grammatical* subject of the clause as an adjunct.) It has thus virtually the value of an indeclinable participle, present or past, qualifying the actor whose action it describes.

Thus, **तद् आकर्ष्य च्छागं त्यक्त्वा स्नात्वा स्वगृहं गतः** "having heard this, having abandoned the goat, having bathed, he went to his own house".*

312. The gerunds of some verbs have not much more than prepositional value; thus, **आदाय** 'having taken', i. e. 'with', like Greek $\lambda\alpha\beta\omega\nu, \xi\chi\omega\nu$; **मुक्त्वा** 'having released', i. e. 'without', 'except'.

313. Before all gerunds may be used the privative **अन्** or **अ**; thus, **अलब्ध्वा** "without having received"; **अनाह्वय** "without having summoned."

Vocabulary XXIX.

Verbs:	आप् acquire, attain, reach.
अस् + नि (<i>nyásyati</i>) entrust (to one's care).	इ + प्र go forth; die.
	+ सम्-आ join.

* Of course the absolutives are often best rendered by relative clauses, or even by clauses coordinate with the principal clause.

कृ + अधि put at the head, appoint as ruler over (*loc.*).

चल + प्र (*pracālati*) move on, march.

चिन्त (*cintāyati*) consider.

च्यु (*cyāvate*) totter, fall.

दा + आ take. Cf. § 312.

धा + सम्-आ lay or place on.

धी + निस् (*nirñāyati*) bring to an end, determine, settle.

भज् + वि (*vibhājati, -te*) distribute.

व्रज् + प्र (*pravrajati*) wander forth; leave one's home to become a wandering ascetic.

Subst.:

अभिप्राय m., plan, design.

आहरण n., bringing.

कपि m., monkey.

करिन् m., elephant.

जय m., victory.

दुर्दशा f., misfortune.

पक्ष m., wing; side; party.

भेक m., frog.

लङ्का f., *n. pr.*, Ceylon.

शूर m., hero.

साधन n., means, device.

सेतु m., bridge, dike.

हनुमन्त् m., *n. pr.*, a monkey-king.

ऊतभुज् (nom. °भुक्) m., fire.

Adj.:

अहित disagreeable.

आप्त responsible, trustworthy.

उभ du., both.

बुद्, f. °आ, little, small.

नित्य, f. °आ, daily, regular.

मूर्धग on the head.

Prepos.:

प्रति (*postpos., with acc.*) against.

Exercise XXIX.

गते हि दुर्दशां लोके क्षुद्रो ऽप्यहितमाचरेत् ।

पङ्के निमग्नं करिणि भेको भवति मूर्धगः ॥ १६ ॥

गरावुषित्वा वेदमधीत्य स्त्रीं परिणीय पुत्रं जनयित्वा नित्यानि कर्माख्यनुष्ठाय यज्ञानिष्टा दानानि च दत्त्वा प्रेत्य ब्राह्मणो न च्यवते ब्रह्मणो लोकात् । १ । भुक्त्वा पीत्वा चैते नराः सुप्ताः । २ । धीमतां मन्त्रिणामागमनं स्वामिने निवेश्य भृत्यो निष्क्रान्तः । ३ । सख्या हनुमताञ्चैश्च कपिभिः समेतो ऽपां भर्तरि सेतुं बद्ध्वा लङ्कां प्रविश्य च रामो रावणं हतवान् । ४ । कृत्स्नं वनं दग्ध्वा ऊतभुगधुना शान्तः । ५ । बलवतो मरुत आदाय मघवा गवामाहरणाय निर्गतः । ६ । शिष्यानाह्वय गुरुः सत्यमन्दितामृतचो यजूषि चाध्यापितवान् । ७ । हविषेष्ट्वर्त्वि-

गभ्यो भूयो धनं यजमानेन दत्तम् । ८ । त्वां मुक्त्वा न केनापि तादृग्दुःखं सोढम् । ९ । गूढेश्वरैः शत्रूणां बलं विदित्वा कार्याणि मन्त्रिषु न्यस्य सैन्य आप्ताञ्शूरानधिकृत्य राजा युद्धाय निर्गच्छत् ॥ १० ॥

11. After the king had conquered the vassals of the western lands he marched (*pass. part.*) against the eastern vassals. 12. The merchants, in joy (*pass. part.*), took the money and gave the jewels to the king (*use ger., and pass. constr.*). 13. "After adoring the gods at twilight, and placing fagots on the fire, bring water from the cistern": thus having spoken, the teacher seated himself (*pass. part.*) on the mat. 14. The hero fought (*ger.*) with his enemies and gained (*part.*) great glory by the victory over them (*gen.*). 15. The Brāhman, abandoning his own (*pl.*), became an ascetic (*प्र-व्रज्, pass. part.*). 16. When the merchant had imparted (*नि-विद्, caus.*) his plan to the servant, he sent him into the village. 17. The master of the house had money brought (*ger.*) and distributed it to the poor. 18. Let not kings decide law-suits without hearing the arguments (*वाच्*) of both sides. 19. Whoever despises powerful foes, and fights with them without considering the means to victory (*gen.*), perishes. 20. Whoever becomes an ascetic without having studied the Veda, attains (*ger.*) not salvation, but falls into hell (*loc.*).

Lesson XXX.

314. Infinitive. The later language has a single infinitive, the ending of which is तुम् (or इतुम्). The root takes *guṇa*, when possible.

315. The ending तुम् is added directly:

1. To almost all roots ending in vowels, except those in च् and changeable च्. Thus, पा, पातुम्; दा, दातुम्; जि, जेतुम्; नी, नेतुम्; श्रु, श्रोतुम्; कृ, कर्तुम्.

2. To a number of roots ending in consonants. As root-

finals, क्, त्, प् and स् remain unchanged before तुम्; thus, शक्, शक्तुम्; मन्, मन्तुम्; आप्, आप्तुम्; चिप्, चिप्तुम्; लुप्, लोप्तुम्; शप् 'curse', शप्तुम्; 3वस् 'dwell', वस्तुम्. — Other finals are changed according to the rules given in Lesson XXVIII for the conversion of final consonants before the participial suffix त्. Thus, पच्, पक्तुम्; त्यज्, त्यक्तुम्; दृष्, द्रष्टुम्*; स्पृष्, स्पृष्टुम्*; कृष्, कृष्टुम्*; प्रह्, प्रष्टुम्; यज्, यष्टुम्; सृज्, सृष्टुम्*; क्रुध्, क्रोद्धुम्; लभ्, लब्धुम्; बह्, रोद्धुम्; वह्, वोद्धुम्; दह्, दग्धुम्; नह्, नद्धुम्. — Final द् becomes त्, and final म्, न्; thus, अद्, अत्तुम्; विद् 'know', वेत्तुम् (also वेदितुम्); गम्, गन्तुम्.

316. The ending तुम् with इ (in the form इतुम्) is taken by roots in final long ऊ and the root शी, with a few other vowel-roots; by the majority of roots in consonants; and by verbs of the secondary conjugations. Thus, भू, भवितुम्; शी, श्यितुम्; ईच्, ईचितुम्; वन्द्, वन्दितुम्; गृह्, गृहितुम् (cf. § 101).

317. Causatives and denominatives in अय have अयितुम्, the root being treated as in the present; thus, चुर्, चोरयितुम्; कथ्, कथयितुम्; तड्, ताडयितुम्.

318. Some roots in consonants insert or reject इ at pleasure; thus, मृज्, मार्जितुम् or मार्धुम्**. The root ग्रह् makes ग्रहीतुम्.

319. The rules for the use of इ in the infinitive agree closely with those governing its use in the formation of the s-future and of the *nomen agentis* in तु.

320. Uses of the infinitive. The chief use of the infinitive is as equivalent to an accusative, as the object of a verb, especially of the verbs शक् 'be able', and अर्ह् 'be worthy', 'have the right

* The increments of च् are sometimes र् and रा instead of अर् and आर्; especially where a difficult combination of consonants is thus avoided.

** In all the tense-systems, and in derivation, the root मृज् exhibits often the *vrddhi* instead of the *guna*-strengthening.

or power'; thus, कथयितुं शक्नोति "he is able to tell"; अतुमर्हेति कुमारः "the prince ought to hear it". अर्ह् is often thus used with the infinitive to express a respectful request or entreaty, as in the last example. The infinitive is also often found with verbs of motion, and with those meaning 'desire', 'hope', 'notice', 'know', and the like.

321. But often the infinitive has a case-value not accusative. Thus, a dative value: भवति भोक्तुमन्नम् "there is food to eat" i. e. "for eating"; a genitive value: समर्थो गन्तुम् "capable of going". Even a construction as nominative is not unknown.

322. In certain connections the infinitive has a *quasi*-passive force. Thus, कर्तुमारब्धः "begun to be made"; अतुं न युज्यते "it is not fit to be heard." This is especially frequent along with the passive forms of शक्; thus, त्यक्तुं न शक्नोति "he cannot abandon", but त्यक्तुं न शक्यते "he cannot be abandoned"; नरो शक्याविहागितुम् "the two men can be brought hither."

323. Future Passive Participle, or Gerundive. Certain derivative adjectives, mostly secondary, have acquired a value quite like that of the Latin gerundive; thus, कार्य (from कृ) 'to be done', *faciendus*. They may be made from every verb. The ordinary suffixes are three: य्, तव्य, and अनीय.

324. A. Suffix य्.* a. Before this suffix final radical आ becomes ए; thus, from दा, देय; गा, गेय. b. Other final vowels sometimes remain unchanged, sometimes have the *guna* or even the *vrddhi*-strengthening; and ए often, and ओ always, are treated before य् as before a vowel; thus, from जि, जेय and जय्य; from भी, भेय and भय्य; from श्रु, श्रव्य and श्राव्य; from कृ, कार्य; from घृ, धूय; from भू, भाव्य. — c. In a few instances, a short vowel adds त् before the suffix; thus, इत्य (इ), श्रुत्य (श्रु), कृत्य (कृ). d. Medial अ remains

* The original value of this suffix is *ia*. Hence the conversion of ए to अय् and of ओ to अव् before it.

unchanged in one class of words, and is lengthened in another class; thus, दभ्य, वन्ध्य, सब, but माव (मद्), वाच्य (वच्).
 e. Initial or medial i, u, and r-vowels are sometimes unchanged, sometimes have the *guna*-strengthening; thus, ईड्य, गुह्य, तृष्य; वेद्य, बोध्य, बोध्य. f. The root शास् makes शिष्य. A form वध्य (from the defective root वध्) is assigned to हन्. आ-लभ् makes आलभ्य and आलभ्य. g. Causatives and denominatives in अय are treated as in the present, but omit the syllables अय; thus, चुर, चीर्य.

325. B. Suffix तव्य. This is a secondary adjective derivative from the infinitival noun in तु. Hence, both as regards the form of root and the use or omission of इ, the rules are the same as for the formation of the infinitive; thus, वक्तव्य, लब्धव्य, वन्दितव्य, शयितव्य (शी).

326. C. Suffix अनीय [अणीय]. Generally radical vowels will be found gunated before this suffix; causatives and denominatives in अय are treated as in the present-system, without the syllables अय; thus, दानीय (दा), गानीय (गा), अवणीय (अु), बोधनीय, चोरणीय, गूहनीय (गूहयति).

327. The gerundives in तव्य are common in the impersonal passive construction described in Lesson X, and not seldom have a purely future sense; thus, तेन त्वया सुखिना भवितव्यम् "with that thou shalt be happy".

Vocabulary XXX.

Verbs:

अर्ह् (árhati) have the right, etc. (cf. § 320.)
 आप् + सम् finish, attain.
 कृ + अप-आ pay.
 गम् + अभि (abhiḡacchati) visit, attend.

गाह् + अघ (avagāhate) dive under (acc.).
 तप् (tāpati, -te) burn (tr. and intr.); pain; in pass., suffer, do penance.
 धा + वि arrange, ordain, order.
 नृत् (nṛtyati) dance.

भू + प्र be mighty, able; *valere*.

वृत् + प्र (pravārtate) continue, go on.

Subst.:

कृषीवल m., husbandman.

गीत n., song, singing.

तपस् n., heat; self-torture.

नाटक n., drama, play.

नृत्त n., dance, dancing.

वपुस् n., body, figure.

समाज m., convention, company.

सामन् n., Vedic melody, song; pl., the Sāmaveda.

Adj.:

तरुण, f. ई, young, delicate.

पुष्ट stout, fat.

प्रियवादिन् acceptably speaking.

फलवन्त् fruitful.

यज्ञिय destined or suitable for sacrifice.

विहित (part. of वि-धा) ordained.

समर्थ, f., आ, capable, able.

स्वयम्भू self-existent; as m. subst., epithet of Brahma.

Adv.:

अलम् enough, very; w. instr., enough of, away with; w. dat., suitable for.

स्वैरम् at pleasure.

Exercise XXX.

सर्वे पीराः कालिदासेन रचितं नाटकं द्रष्टुमागच्छन् । १ । सर्वा-
 न्द्विषो बाहुभ्यां जेतुं स्वामी समर्थ इति प्रियवादिनो भृत्या राजानमु-
 क्तवन्तः । २ । पापान्यपमार्ष्टुमपो ऽवगाह्यर्चः पठनीयाः साभानि वा गे-
 यानि । ३ । तीव्रं तपस्तप्तुं यतिर्वनाय प्रस्थितः । ४ । अश्वमारोढुमधुना
 मे पथि श्रान्तस्व मतिर्जाता । ५ । पितृभ्यो दातव्यमृणमपाकर्तुं ब्राह्मणः
 पुत्रं जनयेत् । ६ । स्वर्गं लब्धुं भूयसो यज्ञान्यष्टमर्हसि । ७ । सर्वासु दिव्यु
 स्वैरं चरितुं यज्ञियो ऽथो भवन्निसोक्तव्य इति राज्ञादिश्रुत । ८ । भ-
 वतां भाषा नावगन्तुं शक्यते (§ 322) । ९ । पुष्टावनडाहौ शकटे योक्तुं
 कृषीवल आदिष्टव्यः । १० । स्वयंभुवा जगत्स्रष्टुं मनः कृतम् ॥ ११ ॥

(Sentences with must may be rendered either with अर्ह् or with gerundives). 12. A Brahmachārin must not visit any companies to see (प्र-ईच्) dancing or to hear singing. 13. Remembering that works will be fruitful in the other life (use "thus thinking", after or. recta), a man must strive to perform what is ordained.

14. The maidens seated themselves (*pass. part.*) in the garden to bind wreaths. 15. True friends are able to save from misfortune. 16. The daughters came (*pass. part.*) to bow before their parents. 17. How is the delicate body of this fair *one* capable of enduring penance? 18. You must become a scholar (*use भवन्त्, and cf. § 177*). 19. You must bring a boat to cross the river. 20. Who is able to stop the mighty wind? 21. The gentlemen (*use भवन्त्*) are to read this letter. 22. Having finished the Veda, he went on to study the other sciences.

Lesson XXXI.

328. Numerals. Cardinals: एक 1, द्व 2, त्रि 3, चतुर 4, पञ्च 5, षष् 6, सप्त 7, अष्ट 8, नव 9, दश 10. — एकादश 11, द्वादश 12, त्रयोदश 13, चतुर्दश 14, पञ्चदश 15, षोडश 16, सप्तदश 17, अष्टादश 18, नवदश 19, विंशति 20. — एकविंशति 21, द्वाविंशति 22, etc. — त्रिंशत् 30, चत्वारिंशत् 40, पञ्चाशत् 50, षष्टि 60, सप्तति 70, अशीति 80, नवति 90, शत 100. — द्विशत or द्वे शते 200. — सहस्र 1000, द्विसहस्र or द्वे सहस्रे 2000, शतसहस्र or लक्ष 100 000.

329. The numbers between the even tens are made by prefixing the unit-number to the ten; thus, पञ्चविंशति 25. But note: एकादश, not एकदश, 11. 42, 52, 62, 72 and 92, either द्विचत्वारिंशत् or द्वाच०, etc.; 43—73, and 93, either त्रि० or त्रयस्रत्वा० etc.; 48—78, and 98, either अष्ट० or अष्टाचत्वा० etc. 96 is षस्रवति.

Note also: द्वादश 12, etc., but for 82 only द्वाशीति; त्रयोविंशति 23, त्रयस्त्रिंशत् 33, for 83 only त्र्यशीति; षोडश 16, षड्विंशति 26, etc.; अष्टाविंशति 28, अष्टात्रिंशत् 38, अष्टाशीति 88.

330. There are other ways of expressing the numbers between the tens. Thus: 1. By the use of the adj. ऊन 'deficient', in composition; e. g. एकोनविंशति '20 less 1', i. e. 19. This usage is not common except for the nines. Sometimes एक is left off, and ऊनविंशति, etc., have the same value. 2. By the adj. अधिक or

उत्तर 'more', also in composition; e. g., अष्टाधिकनवति (also अष्टाधिका नवति) 98.

331. The same methods are used to form the odd numbers above 100. Thus, एकशतम् 101, अष्टाशतम् 108, पञ्चाधिकं शतम् 105, सप्तोत्तरं शतम् 107.

332. Inflection of cardinals. 1. एक is declined like सर्व, at § 231 (pl.: 'some', 'certain ones'). The dual does not occur. एक sometimes means 'a certain'; or even 'an, a', as an indefinite article.

2. द्व (dual only) is quite regular; thus, nom.-acc.-voc. m., द्वौ, f. n. द्वे; द्वाभ्याम्, द्वयोस्.

3. त्रि is in masc. and neut. nearly regular; the fem. has the stem तिसृ. Thus, nom. m. त्रयस्, acc. m. चीन्, nom.-acc. n. चीणि; instr. त्रिभिस्, dat.-abl. त्रिभ्यस्, gen. त्रयाणाम्, loc. त्रिषु. Fem.: nom.-acc. तिस्रस्, instr. तिसृभिस्, dat.-abl. तिसृभ्यस्, gen. तिसृणाम्, loc. तिसृषु.

4. चतुर has चत्वार in strong cases; the fem. stem is चतसृ. Thus, nom. m. चत्वारस्, acc. m. चतुरस्; nom.-acc. n. चत्वारि; instr. चतुर्भिस् etc. Fem.: nom.-acc. चतस्रस्, instr., etc., चतसृभिस्, चतसृभ्यस्, चतसृणाम्, चतसृषु.

(5—19.) These numbers have no distinction of gender. They are inflected with some irregularity as plurals. Thus:

5, 7, 9, 10. पञ्च, पञ्चभिस्, ंभ्यस्, पञ्चानाम्, पञ्चसु. सप्त, नव, दश, and compounds of दश, are similarly declined.

6. षष् as follows: षट्, षड्भिस्, षड्भ्यस्, षषाम्, षट्सु.

8. अष्ट may follow पञ्च, or be declined thus: अष्टौ, अष्टाभिस्, ंभ्यस्, अष्टानाम्, अष्टासु.

20, 30, etc. विंशति, त्रिंशत्, etc., are declined regularly as fem. stems, in all numbers.

100, 1000. शत and सहस्र are declined regularly as neut. stems, in all numbers.

333. Construction of numerals. 1. The words from 1 to 19 are used as adjectives, agreeing in case (and in gender, if possible)

with the nouns. 2. The numerals above 19 are usually treated as nouns, either taking the numbered noun as a dependent genitive, or standing in the sing. in apposition with it; thus, शतं दासीनाम् or शतं दासीः "a hundred female slaves"; षट्यां शरत्सु "in sixty autumns".

334. Ordinals. प्रथम* 'first', द्वितीय, तृतीय, चतुर्थ, पञ्चम, षष्ठ, सप्तम, अष्टम, नवम, दशम, एकादश (to 19th, the same as the cardinals, but declined like देव, etc.); विंश or विंशतितम 20th; त्रिंश or त्रिंशत्तम 30th, etc. Note also एकोनविंश or जनविंश, एकोनविंशतितम or जनविंशतितम, 19th. The shorter forms (विंश etc.) are by far the commoner.

335. प्रथम, द्वितीय and तृतीय make their fém. in *आ; the rest, in ई. Occasional forms of the pronominal declension are met with from the first three; but the usual declension of nouns is the normal one for ordinals also.

336. Numeral adverbs. 1. सकृत् 'once'; द्विस्र 'twice'; त्रिस्र 'thrice'; चतुस्र 'four times'; पञ्चकृत्वस् or पञ्चवारम् 'five times'; and so on, with *कृत्वस् or *वारम्. — 2. एकधा 'in one way'; द्विधा or द्वेषा 'in two ways'; त्रिधा or त्रेषा, चतुर्धा, पञ्चधा, षोडश or षड्धा, etc — 3. एकशस्र 'one by one'; शतशस्र 'by hundreds', etc.

Vocabulary XXXI.

Verbs:	भुञ्ज् in caus. (<i>bhojáyati</i>) feed.
कल् + सम् (<i>samkaláyati</i>) put together, add.	सिञ् + अभि (<i>abhiñcáti</i>) anoint as king.
क्रम् + अति pass (of time).	ह् + उद्-आ cite, mention.
जल्प् (<i>jálpati</i>) speak, chat.	

Subst.:
अथर्ववेद m., the fourth Veda.

* एक forms no ordinal.

कलियुग n., the "Iron Age" of the world.	शक m., Scythian.
चक्र n., wheel.	शरीर n., body.
ज्योतिष n., astronomy; astronomical text-book.	शाखा f., branch, edition, re-daction.
दर्शन n., philosophical system.	संवत्सर m., year.
नक्षत्र n., lunar mansion.	Adv.:
पाण्डव m., n. pr., descendant of Pāṇdu.	अनन्तरम् (<i>w. abl. — often post-pos.</i>) after, immediately after.
पुराण n., one of a class of works on the creation of the world.	क्वचित् sometimes (<i>in altern.</i>).
विक्रमादित्य m., n. pr., a famous king.	तद्यथा namely, to wit.
	साम्प्रतम् at present.

Exercise XXXI.

सकृज्जल्पन्ति राजानः सकृज्जल्पन्ति साधवः ।

सकृत्कन्याः प्रदीयन्ते त्रीण्येतानि सतां सकृत् ॥ १७ ॥

सप्तानामृषीणां शरीराणि दिवि राजमानानि दृश्यन्ते* ॥ १ ॥
चत्वारो वेदा विदन्ते ऽष्टादश पुराणानि षट्त्रिंशत्स्मृतयः षड् दर्शना-
नीति विदुषां मतम् । २ । चतुर्णां वेदानां तु बहवः शाखा वर्तन्ते । ३ ।
तद्यथा । ऋग्वेदस्य पञ्च शाखा यजुर्वेदस्य षडशीतिः सामवेदस्य सप्ता-
थर्ववेदस्य नवेति । ४ । सर्वाः संकलय्य सप्तोत्तरं शतं शाखानां श्रूयते ॥ ५ ॥
साम्प्रतं चत्वारि सहस्राणि नव शतानि त्र्यशोतिश्च कलियुगस्य वर्षा-
ख्यतिक्रान्तानि । ६ । श्रीविक्रमादित्यादनन्तरं पञ्चपञ्चाशधिके शततमे
संवत्सरे शकानां राजाभिषिक्तः । ७ । अधुना त्वष्टादश शतानि चत्वारि
च शकानां राज्ञी वर्षाणि गतानि ॥ ८ ॥ त्रीणि लक्षाणि गवां षोडश
ग्रामाथर्वभदत्तेन ब्राह्मणेभ्यो दत्तानि । ९ । स एव वर्षे वर्षे शतसहस्रं
ब्राह्मणानामभोजयत् ॥ १० ॥

11. The wagon of the Aṅvins is fitted (*युञ्ज्, part. pass.*) with three wheels. 12. The Aṅvins are praised by the seer with four

* i. e., in the seven stars of the Great Bear.

Sentences 6 and 8 were true only down to 1882.

Rik-verses. 13. Kṛṣṇa is the eldest of six brothers. 14. Arjuna is the third among the five Pāṇḍavas. 15. Some think there are eight sorts of marriage (*pl.*); others, six (*model after 2nd sentence in Sanskrit above*). 16. Twenty-seven or twenty-eight lunar mansions are mentioned in astronomy. 17. One should consecrate a Brāhman in *his* eighth year, a Kṣatriya in *his* eleventh, a Vāiçya in *his* twelfth. 18. Two great lights shine in the sky. 19. The teacher, having taught the fifth Rik-verse, recited the sixth. 20. Çākyaṃuni Buddha died in the eightieth year of his age (*life*). 21. Sometimes 33 gods are reckoned in the Veda, sometimes 3333.

Lesson XXXII.

337. Comparison of Adjectives. Derivative adjectives having comparative and superlative meaning — or often, and more originally, a merely intensive value — are made either (A.) directly from roots (by primary derivation), or (B.) from other derivative or compound stems (by secondary derivation).

338. A. The suffixes of primary derivation are ईयस् for the comparative, and इष्ठ for the superlative. The root before them is accented, and usually strengthened by *guṇa* (if capable of it), or sometimes by nasalization or prolongation. — In classical Sanskrit few such formations are in use; and these attach themselves in meaning mostly to other adjectives from the same root, which seem to be their corresponding positives. In part, however, they are connected with words unrelated to them in derivation.

339. Thus चेपीयस् and चेपिष्ठ (*√ चिप्*) attach themselves to चिप्र 'quick'; वरीयस् and वरिष्ठ (*√ वृ* 'encompass'), to उब 'broad'; पापीयस् and पापिष्ठ, 'worse' and 'worst', to the subst. पाप; पटीयस् and पटिष्ठ, to पटु 'skilful'; महीयस् and महिष्ठ to

महन्; बलीयस् and बलिष्ठ, to बलिन or बलवन्; साधीयस् and साधिष्ठ to साधु.

340. The following are examples of artificial connections:

अनिक 'near', नेदीयस्, नेदिष्ठ; अल्प 'little', कनीयस्, कनिष्ठ (but also अलीयस्, अलिष्ठ); गुरु 'heavy', गरीयस्, गरिष्ठ; दीर्घ 'long', द्राधीयस्, द्राधिष्ठ; प्रशस्त्र 'praiseworthy', 'good', त्रेयस् 'better', त्रेष्ठ 'best'; प्रिय 'dear', प्रेयस्, प्रेष्ठ; बहु 'much', भूयस्, भूयिष्ठ; युवन् 'young', यवीयस्, यविष्ठ; वृद्ध 'old', वर्षीयस्, वर्षिष्ठ. ज्यायस् and ज्येष्ठ correspond sometimes to प्रशस्त्र or साधु, sometimes to वृद्ध.

341. The stems in इष्ठ are inflected like ordinary adjectives in अ, with the fem. in आ; those in ईयस् have a peculiar declension, with a strong stem in ईयांस, and fem. ईयसी, for which see § 255. So also ज्यायस् and भूयस्.

342. B. The suffixes of secondary derivation are तर and तम. They are of almost unrestricted use. That form of stem is usually taken which appears before an initial consonant of a case-ending. Stems in अस् are always unchanged; final इस् and उस् become इष् and उष्, after which the त् of the suffix becomes ट्.

Thus, प्रियवाच्, प्रियवाक्तर, °क्तम; धनिन्, धनितर, °तम; विद्वांस, विद्वत्तर, °त्तम.

343. Some stems which are substantives rather than adjectives are found to form derivatives of comparison; thus, मातृतम 'most motherly', नृतम 'most manly', गजतम 'most like an elephant.'

344. Comparison of Adverbs. Adverbs are compared by adding the suffixes in the forms तराम् and तमाम्; thus, सु 'well', सुतराम्, सुतमाम्.

345. Construction. With a comparative (and sometimes with other words used in a similar way) the ablative is the regular construction; thus, पुत्रात्कन्या तस्य प्रेयसी "a daughter is dearer to him than a son"; मतिरेव ब्रह्मज्ञरोयसी "intellect alone is

stronger than force". After the superlative either genitive or locative may be used. The comparative often has the force of a strengthened superlative; thus, गरीयान् 'most honorable'.

Vocabulary XXXII.

Subst.:	सिन्धु m., n. <i>pr.</i> , the Indus.
गन्धर्व m., one of a band of celestial singers, a Gandharva.	सुराप m., drunkard.
दक्ष m., n. <i>pr.</i>	हेमन्त m., winter.
धात्रन् n., running, course.	Adj.:
परमात्मन् m., the world-spirit.	अणु little, small; <i>as n. subst.</i> ,
मोक्ष m., deliverance, salvation.	atom.
रोहिणी f., n. <i>pr.</i>	आसु swift.
लोह n., metal; iron.	ईदृश्, f. ईदृशी, such.
वायस m., crow.	पुराण, f. ०आ and ०ई, old.
वेदान्त m., a system of philosophy.	वर्तिन् abiding, being.
शकुन्तला f., n. <i>pr.</i>	Indecl.:
	च sometimes in sense of if.

Exercise XXXII.

ज्येष्ठो भ्राता पिता वापि यश्च विद्यां प्रयच्छति ।

त्रयस्ते पितरो ज्ञेया धर्मै* च पथि वर्तिनः ॥ १८ ॥

मोक्षाय ज्ञानं यज्ञेभ्यः साधीय इति पुराणैरुक्तम् । १ । साम्प्रतं तु भक्त्या श्रेयो लभ्यं द्विजातयो यतन्ते ॥ २ ॥ त्रयः कनीयांसो भ्रातरो रामस्थाभवन् । ३ । यवीयसीं भार्यां परिणयेत् । ४ । यदि ज्येष्ठायां भार्यायां कनिष्ठः पुत्रो जायेत तदा स एव श्रेष्ठं धनस्य भागं लभेतित्येके । ५ । परमात्मानोरप्यणीयान्महतो ऽपि महीयान्विदानेषु वर्ण्यते । ६ । पञ्चभिरिताभिर्नदीभिः सह संगतः सिन्धुर्गङ्गाया आपि वरीयान्दृश्यते । ७ । या अष्टाविंशतिर्दक्षस्य दुहितरश्चन्द्रमसा परिणीतास्तासां रोहिणी भर्तुः प्रेष्ठाभवत् । ८ । स्नेहेभ्यः सुरापाः पापीयांसः स्मर्यन्ते । ९ । पापानां पापिष्ठास्तु ब्रह्महणः । १० । प्रथीयो यश्चस्त्रिषु लोकेष्वर्जुनेन लब्धम् ॥ ११ ॥

* Translate as though genitive.

12. Of the three wives of Daçaratha, Kāusalyā was older and more honored (गुरु, *comp.*) than Kāikeyī and Sumitrā. 13. In winter the nights are very long. 14. Not very many (*express as pred.*) such jewels are found on earth. 15. Among those kings of the North Pṛthvirāja was the mightiest. 16. The poems of Kālidāsa are sweeter than the works of Bāṇa. 17. Anāthapiṇḍika was the richest among all the merchants in Rājagrha. 18. Iron is lighter than gold, but heavier than wood. 19. In running the horse is the swiftest of quadrupeds. 20. Çakuntalā was more beautiful than all other women of that time, and became the wife of the mightiest monarch (सम्राज्) of the whole earth. 21. The crow is called the shrewdest of birds.

Lesson XXXIII.

(Part I.)

346. **Compounds.** In all periods of the language the combination of stems of declension with one another, forming compounds which are treated in accent, inflection and construction as if simple words, is one of the most striking peculiarities of the Sanskrit tongue. In the Vedic period compounds of more than two elements are rare. In the later language this moderation is abandoned; and the later the period, and especially the more elaborate the style of composition, the more unwieldy and difficult do the compounds become. To such an extent is this carried that the advantages of an inflective language are often deliberately thrown away, and a clumsy aggregation of elements replaces the due syntactical union of inflected words into sentences.

347. Sanskrit compounds fall into three principal classes:

I. **Copulative or Aggregative** compounds, of which the members are syntactically coordinate: a joining together of words which in

an un-compounded state would be connected by 'and'.* E. g. कृ-
ताकृतम् 'done and undone'; देवगन्धर्वमानुषाः 'gods and Gan-
dharvas and men'. The members of such a compound may obvi-
ously be of any number, two or more.

II. **Determinative** compounds, of which the former member is syntactically dependent on the latter, as its determining or qualifying adjunct: being either a noun limiting it in a case-relation, or an adjective or an adverb describing it. Thus may be distinguished two sub-classes: A. **Dependent**, and B. **Descriptive**, compounds; their difference is not absolute.

Examples are: of dependents, अमित्रसेना 'army of enemies'; पादोदक 'water for the feet'; हस्तकृत 'made with hands'; — of descriptives, महाराज 'great king'; प्रियसख (§ 353, 2) 'dear friend'; दुष्कृत 'badly done'.

348. The character of compounds of classes I. and II., as parts of speech, is determined by their final member, and they are capable of being resolved into equivalent phrases by giving the proper independent form and formal means of connection to each member. But this is not true of the third class, which accordingly is more fundamentally distinct from them than they from each other.

349. III. **Secondary Adjective** compounds, the value of which is not given by a simple resolution into their component parts, but which, though having as final member a noun, are themselves adjectives. These again are of two sub-classes: A. **Possessive** compounds, which are noun-compounds of the preceding class (II. A. or B.), with the idea of 'having' added, turning them from nouns into adjectives; and B. compounds in which the second member is

* This class of compounds is of comparatively recent development; only the other two are common in others of the related tongues.

a noun syntactically dependent on the first: namely, 1. **Participial** compounds (only Vedic), of a present participle with its following object; and 2. **Prepositional** compounds, of a preposition and following noun. This whole sub-class B is comparatively small.

Examples: वीरसेन 'possessing a hero-army'; प्रजाकाम 'having desire of progeny'; अतिमात्र 'excessive'.

350. The adjective compounds are, like simple adjectives, sometimes used, especially in the neuter, as abstract and collective nouns; and in the accusative as adverbs. Out of these uses have grown apparent classes of compounds, reckoned and named as such by the Hindu grammarians.

351. A compound may, like a simple word, become a member in another compound, and so on indefinitely. The analysis of a compound (except copulatives), of whatever length, must be made by a series of bisections. Thus the dependent compound पूर्वजनकृत, 'done in a previous existence', is first divisible into कृत and the descriptive पूर्वजनन्, then this into its two elements.

352. **Euphonic combination in compounds.** The final of a stem is combined with the initial of another stem in composition according to the general rules for *external* combination. But:

1. Final इस् and उस् of a prior member become इष् and उष् before surd gutturals, dentals, and labials; thus, ज्योतिष्कृत.

2. Final अस् of a prior member often remains unchanged under similar circumstances.

3. After final इ, उ, ऋ, an initial स् often becomes lingual.

4. Pronouns generally take the stem-form of the neuter; for the personal pronouns are oftenest used मद् and त्वद् in the sing., अस्मद् and युष्मद् in the pl.

5. For महन्त्, in the prior member of descriptive and possessive compounds, is used महा.

6. A case-form in the prior member is not very rare.

353. In all classes of compounds, certain changes of finals are liable to appear in the concluding member; generally they have the effect of transferring the compound as a whole to the *a*-declension. Thus: 1. A stem in *अन्* often drops the final *न्*, as in *अञ्च*, *अह*, *मूर्ध*, *राज*. 2. An *इ* or *ई* is changed to *अ*, as in *भूम*, *रात्र*, *सख*, *पथ*. 3. An *अ* is added after a final consonant, sometimes even after an *u*-vowel or a diphthong, as in *अह्* (*अहन*), *गव* (*गो*).

The separate classes of compounds will now be taken up.

(Part II.)

354. I. Copulative compounds. Two or more nouns — much less often adjectives, and once or twice adverbs — having a coordinate construction, as though joined by 'and', are sometimes combined into a compound.*

355. The noun-compounds fall, as regards their inflective form, into two classes:

A. The compound has the gender and declension of its final member, and is in number a dual or plural, according to its logical value as denoting either two, or more than two, individual things. Examples are: *ब्रीहियवौ* 'rice and barley'; *रामकृष्णौ* 'Rāma and Kṛṣṇa'; *अजावयः* 'goats and sheep'; *ब्राह्मणक्षत्रियवैश्याशूद्राः* 'Brāhmins, Kṣatriyas, Vāiçyas and Çūdras'; *पितापुत्रौ* (§ 352, 6) 'father and son'.

B. The compound, without regard to the number denoted or to the gender of its constituents, becomes a neuter singular collective (so-called *samāhāra-dvandva*). Thus, *पाणिपादम्* 'hand and foot'; *सर्पनकुलम्* 'snake and ichneumon'; *छत्रोपानहम्* (§ 353, 3) 'umbrella and shoe'; *अहोरात्रम्* (§ 353, 2) 'day and night'.

356. The later language preserves several dual combinations

* This class is called by the Hindus *dvandva*, 'couple'; but a *dvandva* of adjectives they do not recognize.

of the names of divinities, etc., which retain their earlier forms; thus, *बावापृथिवी* and *बावाभूमी* 'Heaven and Earth'; *मित्रावरुणौ* 'Mitra and Varuṇa'; *अग्नीषोमी* 'Agni and Soma'.

357. Adjective copulative compounds are made likewise, but are rare. Examples are: *सुलुकृष्ण* 'light and dark'; *वृत्तपीन* 'round and plump';* *स्नातानुलिप्त* 'bathed and anointed'.

358. II. Determinative compounds. A noun or adjective is often combined into a compound with a preceding determining or qualifying word — a noun or adjective or adverb. The two principal divisions of this class are, as indicated above, A. Dependent, and B. Descriptive, compounds. Each class falls into two subdivisions, according as the final member, and therefore the whole compound, is noun or adjective.**

359. A. Dependent compounds. 1. Noun-compounds. The case-relation of the prior to the second member may be of any kind, but is oftenest genitive, and least often accusative. Thus, *तत्पुरुषः* = *तस्य पुरुषः*; *मूर्खशतानि* 'hundreds of fools'; — *पादोदक* (= *पादेभ्य उदकम्*) 'water for the feet'; — *विद्याधन* 'money (obtained) by science'; *आत्मसादृश्य* (= *आत्मना सादृश्यम्*) 'likeness with self'; — *चीरभय* (= *चीराद्भयम्*) 'fear of a thief'; — *जलक्रीडा* (= *जले क्रीडा*) 'sport in the water'; — *नगरगमन* (= *नगरं गम*) 'going to the city'; *वाचस्पति* 'lord of speech', *n. pr.* (§ 352, 6.).

360. 2. Dependent adjective compounds. Only a very small proportion of the compounds of this class have an ordinary adjective as final member; usually the final member is a participle, or a derivative of agency with the value of a participle (§ 204). The

* The Hindus reckon these as *karmadhārayas* (see next note).

** The whole class of determinatives is called by the natives *tatpuruṣa* (the name is a specimen of the class, meaning 'his man'); the second division, the descriptives, bears the special name *karmadhāraya*, a word of obscure meaning and application.

prior member stands in any possible case-relation. Thus, यामगत 'gone to the village'; वेदविद् 'Veda-knowing'; — शिवरचित 'protected by Īiva'; गोहित (= गवे हितः) 'good for the cow'; — स्वर्गपतित 'fallen from the sky'; तरङ्गचञ्चलतर 'more mobile than waves'; — द्विजोत्तम (= द्विजानाम् उत्तमः) 'best of Brāhman'; — खालीपक्क 'cooked in a pot'.

361. Compounds of this sort having as final member the bare root — sometimes modified in form, and, if it end originally in a short vowel, generally with an added त् — are very numerous: thus, वेदविद् above (§ 360); रथस्थ 'standing in the wagon' (or simply 'in the wagon'); मूर्धग 'on the head'; एकज 'only-born'; वनेचर (§ 352, 6) 'forest-dwelling'; मनसिज 'born in the heart' (i.e. 'love').

362. B. Descriptive compounds. In this division of the determinatives, the prior member stands to the other in no distinct case-relation, but qualifies it adjectively or adverbially, according as the final member is noun or adjective. Thus, प्रियसख (§ 353, 2); सुकृत 'well-done'; दुष्कृत 'evil-doing' (adj.).

The compounds of noun-value cannot well be separated in treatment from those of adjective-value.

363. The simplest case is that in which a noun as final member is preceded by a qualifying adjective as prior member. Thus, कृष्णाश्व (= कृष्णो ऽश्वः) 'black horse'; महापुरुष 'great man'. Instead of an adjective, the prior member is in a few cases a noun used appositionally or with a quasi-adjective value; thus, ब्रह्मर्षि 'priest-sage'; राजर्षि 'king-sage'.

364. Sometimes compounds of this sort express a comparison; thus, घनश्याम 'black as a thunder-cloud' (cf. 'coal-black', etc.). Reversed, पुरुषव्याघ्र 'man-tiger', i. e., 'a man fierce as a tiger';*

* Literally, a tiger which is not a tiger after all, but a man. Or, perhaps better, 'tiger of (or among) men' (so Whitney).

मरसिंह 'man-lion'; पादपद्म 'foot-lotus', i. e. 'a foot lovely as a lotus'.

365. The adverbial words most commonly used as prior members of descriptive compounds, qualifying the other member, are the verbal prefixes ("prepositions"), and the words of direction related to them; likewise the inseparable prefixes अन् or अ् privative, सु 'well', दुस् 'ill', etc. These are combined with nouns (in quasi-adjectival value) as well as with adjectives. Thus, अकृत 'not done'; अपण्डित 'not a scholar'; अनर्थ 'misfortune'; अतिदेव 'more than a god'; अतिदूर 'exceedingly far'; अतिभय 'excessive fear'; प्रतिपक्ष 'opposing side.'

Vocabulary XXXIII.

Verbs:

आप् + सम् complete.

युञ् + नि station, place, appoint.

रञ् + अनु (anurdjyati, -te) be devoted to, inclined to (loc.).

वस् + प्र go away (on a journey).

वृत् + नि return home.

Subst.:

आकाश m., air, sky.

आश्रम m., hermitage.

कण्ठ m., n. pr.

कुमार m., boy, prince.

क्रीडा f., game, sport.

तिलक m., ornament (often fig.).

तीर्थ n., bathing-place; place of pilgrimage.

त्रिलोक n., ०की f., the threefold world.

दुष्पन्त m., n. pr.

दीपिन् m., panther.

पद n., step; place.

पूरुह m., n. pr.

महिषी f., queen.

मृगया f., chase.

यात्रा f., march, journey; support.

वंश m., race, family.

वृत्तान्त m., state of affairs; news.

सखी f., female friend.

सत्कार m., hospitality.

Adj.:

अनुरूप f. ०आ. suitable.

कृत्रिम, f. ०आ. adopted.

गान्धर्व, f. °ई, in the manner of, or suitable for, the Gandharvas.	समीप, f. °आ, near; <i>as neut. subst.</i> , vicinity, nearness, presence.
दिव्य, f. °आ, heavenly, divine.	Adv.:
मानुष, f. °ई, human.	पुरा earlier, formerly.

Exercise XXXIII.

दुष्पन्तो नाम राजर्षिः पूर्ववंशतिलकस्त्रिलोकां विश्रुतः कृत्वां पृ-
थिवीमपालयत् । १ । स चैकदा मन्त्रिसूतसैनिकान्वितो मृगयाक्रोडार्थं
महावनं प्रविष्टः । २ । तस्मिन्वने दुष्पन्तो जेकान्घ्राघ्रसिंहर्षद्वीपिनो
ज्यांश्च वनेचरान्प्राणिनः स्वशरैर्यापादयत् । ३ । एकं तु हरिणं पलाय-
मानं रथस्थो ऽनुसरन्स नदीतीरे दिव्याश्रमपदं दृष्टवान् । ४ । कण्वस्य
ब्रह्मर्षेरयमाश्रम इति सूतमुखाच्छ्रुत्वा सैनिकान्वने संस्थार्यां षं ननु रा-
जा तत्र प्रविष्टः । ५ । तदा कण्वे तीर्थयात्रार्थं प्रीयति सति तस्य कृत्रिमा
दुहिता शुक्रन्तला नाम सखीसमेता महाराजमतिथिसत्कारेण पूजयितु-
माश्रमान्निर्गता ॥ ६ ॥

(Form compounds of words joined by hyphens).

7. When he had seen her, brilliant (राज् *pres. part.*) with di-
vine-beauty, as though (इव) more-than-human, the heart of the
king-sage was inclined (*pass. part.*) toward her. 8. Thereupon,
having learned that she (*acc.*) was the daughter-of-an-Apsaras (*acc.*),
he married her by the gāndharva-ceremony (विवाह) suitable-for-
Kṣatriyas. 9. Duṣṣanta, after dwelling very many days-and-nights
in the hermitage, abandoned Çakuntalā and returned to his-own-
city. 10. Afterwards, when Kaṇva had finished his pilgrimage,
and returned to the hermitage, learning (विद्) the news⁴-of-his¹-
daughter's²-marriage³, he sent her into-the-presence-of Duṣṣanta.
11. The royal-sage at first disowned (प्रत्या-ख्या, *ger.*) Çakuntalā when
she was come²-to-the-city¹; but at last he put (नि-युज्, *part. in °वन्*)
her in-the-place³-of-the-first¹-queen². 12. In the course of time

* "To engage in the sport of hunting"; cf. below, § 375, 3.

(कालेन गच्छता) a beautiful-prince, named Bharata, was born to
her (*loc.*).

Lesson XXXIV.

366. III. Secondary Adjective Compounds. A compound with
a noun as final member very often wins secondarily the value of
an adjective, being inflected in the three genders to agree with the
noun which it qualifies, and used in all the constructions of an
adjective. The two divisions of this class have been given above
(§ 349).

367. Certain changes are sometimes necessary in the stem of
the final member to make possible the inflection in different genders.
Masc. and neut. stems in अ, and fem. in आ, generally interchange;
thus, from सु + हस्त comes the compound सुहस्त 'with excellent
hands', nom. sing. सुहस्तस्, °स्ता, °स्तम्; so also (from चि + जिह्वा)
चिजिह्वस्, °ह्वा, °ह्वम्; and (from सु + फल n.) सुफलस्, °ला, °लम्.
The same holds good for masc., fem., and neut. stems in इ and उ,
and stems in consonants.

368. But often a fem. in ई is used by the side of a masc. and
neut. in अ; thus, द्विपर्ण 'two-leaved', f. द्विपर्णी.

369. Very frequently the suffix क (attenuated into an element
of indefinite value) is added to a pure possessive compound, to
help the conversion of the compounded stem into an adjective;
especially to fem. stems in ई and ऊ, and to stems in अ; and in
general, where the final of the stem is less usual or manageable
in adjective inflection. Thus, बङ्गनदीक 'rich in rivers'; मृतभर्तृका f.,
'whose husband is dead', i. e. 'widow'; महायशस् (nom. masc.
and fem. °शास्) or महायशस्क.

370. Sometimes the possessive-making suffix इन् is added to
secondary adjective compounds, without effect upon the meaning;
thus, गर्दभनादिन् (= °नाद्) 'having an ass's voice.'

371. A. Possessive compounds. The possessives are determinative compounds to which are given both an adjective inflection (as just shown), and also an adjective meaning of a kind best defined by adding 'having' to the meaning of the determinative. Thus, the dependent देवरूप n., 'beauty of a god', becomes the possessive देवरूप, ०आ, m. f. n., 'having the beauty of a god'; the descriptive दीर्घबाहु m., 'long arm', becomes the possessive दीर्घबाहु m. f. n., 'having long arms'.*

372. Dependent compounds are, by comparison, not often thus turned into possessives. But possessively used descriptives are extremely frequent and various; and some kinds of combination which are rare in proper descriptives are very common as possessives.

373. An adjective as prior member takes the masculine stem-form, even though referring to a feminine noun in the final member; thus, रूपवन्नार्य (from भार्य) 'possessing a beautiful wife'.

374. As prior members are found:

1. Adjectives proper; thus, अन्यरूप 'of other form'. — 2. Participles; thus, हतमातृक 'whose mother is slain'. — 3. Numerals; thus, चतुर्मुख 'four-faced'; त्रिलोचन 'three-eyed'. — 4. Nouns with quasi-adjectival value; thus, हिरण्यहस्त 'gold-handed'. Especially common is the use of a noun as prior member to qualify the other appositionally, or by way of equivalence. These may well be called appositional possessives. Thus, कृष्णनामन् 'having "Kṛṣṇa" as name'; वीरपुरुष 'having men who are heroes'; वारचक्षुस् 'using spies as eyes'; त्वादूत 'having thee as messenger'. — 5. Adverbial elements (especially inseparable prefixes);

* This class of compounds is called by the natives *bahuvrihi*; the name is an example of the class, meaning 'having much rice'. — The possessive may generally, in accented texts, be distinguished from the original determinative by a difference of accent.

thus, अनन्त 'endless'; अपुत्र 'childless'; सुपुत्र 'with excellent sons'; दुर्गन्धि 'ill-savored'. The associative prefix स (less often सह) is treated like an adjective element; thus, सरूप 'of like form'; सपुत्र or सहपुत्र 'with a son', or 'having one's son along with one'; सागुकूल (स + अनुकूल n.) 'favorable'. — 6. Ordinary verbal prefixes; thus, प्रश्रवस् 'of wide fame'; व्यङ्ग 'limbless'; निर्बल 'powerless'; उन्मुख 'with uplifted face'. — 7. Ordinary adverbs; thus, इहचित्त 'with mind directed hither'.

375. Certain words, very frequent in the compounds mentioned at § 374, 4, have in part won a peculiar application.

1. Thus with आदि 'beginning' (or the derivatives आद्य or आदिक) are made compounds signifying the person or thing designated along with others — such a person or thing *et cetera*. Thus, देवा इन्द्रादयः 'the gods having Indra as first', i. e. 'the gods Indra, etc.' Often the qualifying noun is omitted; thus, अन्नपानादीनि 'food, drink, etc.' — 2. Words like पूर्व (पूर्वक) etc., are used in the same way, to denote accompaniment; chiefly adverbially. — 3. The noun अर्थ 'object', 'purpose', is used at the end of a compound, oftenest as a neut. subst. (acc. or instr. or loc.), to signify 'for the sake of', and the like; thus, दमयन्त्यर्थ 'for Darnayanti's sake'; शय्यार्थ 'for a bed'. (See below, § 379). — 4. अन्तर (as neut. subst.) often means 'other' in possessives; thus, देशान्तर n., 'another region' (lit. 'that which has a difference of region').

376. In appositional possessives, the final member, if it designate a part of the body, sometimes signifies the part to which belongs what is designated by the prior member: that on or in which it is. Thus मणियोव 'with necklace on neck'. Such compounds are commonest with words meaning hand; thus, असिपाणि 'with sword in hand'; लगुडहस्त 'with club in hand'.

377. The possessives are not always used with the simple

value of qualifying adjective. Often they have a pregnant sense, and become the equivalents of dependent clauses; or the 'having' implied in them becomes about equivalent to our 'having' as a sign of past action. Thus, **प्राप्तयौवन** 'possessing attained adolescence', i. e. 'having reached adolescence'; **अनधिगतशास्त्र** 'with unstudied books', i. e. 'one who has neglected study'; **गतप्राण** 'whose breath is gone', i. e. 'lifeless'; **आसन्नमृत्यु** 'to whom death is come near'.

378. B. Compounds with governed final member.

1. Participial compounds, exclusively Vedic.

2. Prepositional compounds. Thus may conveniently be called those compounds in which the prior member is a particle with true prepositional value, and the final member a noun governed by it. Thus, **अतिरात्र** 'lasting over night'; **अतिमात्र** 'beyond measure', 'excessive'; **अपिकर्ण** 'next the ear'.

379. Adjective compounds as nouns and adverbs. Compound adjectives, like simple ones, are freely used substantively as abstracts and collectives, especially in the neuter, and less often in the feminine; and they are also much used adverbially, particularly in the acc. sing. neuter.

380. The substantively used possessive compounds having a numeral as prior member, with some of the strictly adjective compounds, are treated by the Hindus as a separate class, and called *dvigu**. Examples of such numeral abstracts and collectives are: **त्रियुग** n., 'the three ages'; **त्रियोजन** n., 'space of three leagues'. Feminines of like use occur in the later language; thus **त्रिलोकी** (by the side of **लोक** n.,) 'the three worlds'.

381. Those adverbially used accusatives of secondary adjective

* The name is a sample of the class, and means 'of two cows' (said to be used in the sense of 'worth two cows').

compounds which have an indeclinable or particle as prior member are considered by the Hindus a separate class of compounds, and called *avyayibhāva**. 1. The prepositional compounds are especially frequent in this use; thus, **प्रतिदोषम्** 'at evening'; **समक्षम्** 'in sight'; **अनुगङ्गम्** (= **गङ्गाम् अनु**) 'along the Ganges'; **उपगङ्गम्** 'on the G.'; **प्रतिवर्षम्** 'every year'. — 2. A large class of *avyayibhāvas* is made up of words having a relative adverb, especially **यथा**, as prior member. Thus, **यथावशम्**, **यथाकामम्**, **यथेच्छम्**, 'as one chooses'. And, with other adverbs: **यावज्जीवम्** 'as long as one lives'; **यत्रकामम्** 'whither one will'.

382. Occasionally quite anomalous compounds will be met with. For such, cf. Whitney, § 1314.

Vocabulary XXXIV.

Verbs:	शु (<i>varāyate</i>) choose, select.
वि + निस् determine, decide.	सद् + आ (<i>āsīdati</i>) approach.
वृ + वि in caus. (<i>vidārāyati</i>) tear open.	+ समा in caus. (<i>samāsādyati</i>) meet with, encounter.
पट् (<i>pātāyati</i>) split open.	हृष् (<i>hṛṣati</i> ; <i>hṛīsyati</i>) rejoice, be delighted.
भू + अभि overpower.	

Subst.:	तालु n., palate.
अङ्ग n., limb, member, body.	तृष्णा f., thirst, desire.
आकार m., form, figure.	दंष्ट्रा f., tooth.
इन्दु m., moon.	द्युति f., brilliancy.
उदर n., belly.	पर्वत m., mountain.
केतु m., banner.	पुलिन्द m., a tribe in India.
कोटि f., peak; point, tip.	प्रहार m., stroke, shot; wound.
चूडा f., top-knot, scalp.	प्राण m., breath, life (<i>often pl.</i>).
ज्ञान n., knowledge; insight.	मसक n., head.

* The word means 'conversion to an indeclinable'.

मीन m., fish.

वक्षस् n., chest, breast.

वराह m., boar.

वेदना f., pain.

स्नायु m., tendon; bowstring.

Adj.:

अनवद्य, f. °आ, blameless, faultless.

अनुकूल, f. °आ, favorable; as neut. subst., favor.

अन्तर, f. °आ, inner; as neut. subst., the interior, middle; interval, difference; occasion,

juncture (§ 375, 4.)

पटु skilled.

बाल, f. °आ, young.

Indecl.:

अथ then, thereupon.

तद् (adv. acc.) therefore.

तावत् so long; often merely = *donec, doch.*

यावत् as long as, while; as soon as.

अ् asseverative particle; gives to the present the force of an historical tense.

Exercise XXXIV.

अतितृष्णा न कर्तव्या तृष्णां नैव परित्यजेत् ।

अतितृष्णाभिभूतस्य चूडा भवति मस्त्रके ॥ १९ ॥

कस्मिंश्चिदने पुलिन्दः प्रतिवसति स्म । १ । स चेकदा मृगयां कर्तुं प्रस्थितः । २ । अथ तेन प्रसर्पता (pres. part.) पर्वतशिखराकारो महावराहः समासादितः । ३ । तं दृष्ट्वा कर्णान्ताकृष्टशरेण स तेन समाहतः । ४ । तेनापि वराहेण कोपाविष्टेन बालिन्दुद्युतिना दंष्ट्रायेण पाटितोदरः पुलिन्दो गतप्राणो भूमावपतत् । ५ । अथ व्याधं व्यापाद्य वराहो ऽपि शरप्रहारवेदनया मृतः । ६ । एतस्मिन्नन्तरे कश्चिदासन्नमृत्युः शृगाल इतस्ततः परिभ्रमंस्तं देशमागतः । ७ । यावद्वराहपुलिन्दौ पश्यति तावत्प्रहृष्टो ऽचिन्तयत् । ८ । भोः सानुकूलो मे विधिः । ९ । तेनैतदचिन्तितं भोजनमुपस्थितम् । १० । तदहं तथा भक्षयामि यथा बह्वन्वहानि मे प्राणयात्रा भवति । ११ । तत्तावत्प्रथमं स्नायुपार्श्वं धनुष्कोटिगतं भक्षयामि । १२ । एवं मनसा निश्चित्य धनुष्कोटिं मुखे क्षिप्त्वा स्नायुं भक्षयितुमारब्धः । १३ । ततश्च कर्तिते स्नायी तान् विदार्य धनुष्कोटिर्मसकमधेन निष्कान्ता । १४ । सो ऽपि मृतः ॥ १५ ॥

16. Those-who-have-done-evil must do penance twelve-days,

six-days, or three-days. 17. Purūravas, Indra's-friend, married the moon-faced*, faultless-limbed* Apsaras Urvaçī. 18. Bhr̥gukaccha is situated (वृत्) on the Narmadā. 19. There stands the long-armed, broad-chested king-of-the-Aṅgas, sword-in-hand. 20. The path-of-knowledge is better than the path-of-works. 21. In-the-opinion-of-the-ancient-seers (cpd in loc. or instr.) one-whose-husband-is-dead may choose a second at-pleasure. 22. Love is bodiless, and bears-a-fish-in-his-banner; so say the poets. 23. The Brāhman's-daughter, Sītā-by-name*, is lotus-eyed.* 24. The king, although (अपि) many-wived, is childless. 25. The eloquent** pandit has arrived with-his-scholars. 26. With-upturned-face (उन्मुख) Cātaka prays for rain-water.

Lesson XXXV.

383. First Conjugation of Verbs. Present System.*** In this conjugation the optative act., the 2nd sing. inv. act., and the 3rd pl. mid., are formed otherwise than in the *a*-conjugation.

384. Strong forms. The forms in which the stem assumes its strong form are these: the three persons sing. of the pres. and impf. indic. act., all first persons of the inv. act. and mid., and the 3rd sing. inv. act. All other forms of the present system are weak.

385. Endings. For the middle endings अन्ते, अन्त, and अन्ताम् are substituted अते, अत, and अताम्; and after reduplicated stems (and a few others) अति, अतु, and उत्स् are substituted for the

* Secondary adj. cpds., fem. in ई.

** Dep. cpd, "skilled in speech".

*** For a comprehensive view of the ways of forming the present-systems of verbs following this general conjugation, see Introduction, § 78.

active endings अन्ति, अन्तु, and अन् (impf.). The 2nd sing. inv. often takes the ending हि or चि. Otherwise the endings are the same as in the *a*-conjugation.

386. Optative mode-sign. The sign of the opt. act. is या *yā*, with secondary endings; but उस् is the ending in the 3rd pl., and आ is dropped before it; thus, °युस्.

387. Present participle middle. In the first conjugation this participle is made with the suffix आन [आण], before which the stem takes the same form as before the 3rd pl. pres. ind. The fem. is always in आ.

388. Class IV. A: *nu*-class. The present-stem is made by adding to the root the syllable नु *nu* [णु *ṇu*], in strong forms नो *nó* [णो *ṇó*]. The उ of the class-sign may be dropped before व् and न् of the 1st du. and 1st pl. endings, except when the root ends in a consonant; and the उ before a vowel-ending becomes व् or उव्, according as it is preceded by one or by two consonants. The ending हि of the 2nd. sing. inv. is dropped if the root end in a vowel.

389. I. Roots in vowels. सु 'press'.

Indicative.

	Active.			Middle.		
1. सुनोमि	सुनुवस्	सुनुमस्	सुन्वे	सुनुवहे	सुनुमहे	
<i>sunómi</i>	<i>sunuvás</i>	<i>sunumás</i>	<i>sunvé</i>	<i>sunuváhe</i>	<i>sunumáhe</i>	
2. सुनोषि	सुनुथस्	सुनुथ	सुनुषे	सुनुवाथे	सुनुधे	
<i>sunóṣi</i>	<i>sunuthás</i>	<i>sunuthá</i>	<i>sunuṣé</i>	<i>sunuváthe</i>	<i>sunudhvé</i>	
3. सुनोति	सुनुतस्	सुन्वन्ति	सुनुते	सुनुवाते	सुन्वते	
<i>sunóti</i>	<i>sunutás</i>	<i>sunvánti</i>	<i>sunuté</i>	<i>sunuváte</i>	<i>sunváte</i>	

The forms सुन्वस्, सुन्वस्, सुन्वहे, सुन्वहे, are alternative with those given above for 1st du. and pl., and occur oftener.

Imperfect.

1. असुनवम्* असुनुव असुनुम असुन्वि असुनुवहि °नुमहि
2. असुनोस् असुनुतम् असुनुत असुनुधास् असुनुवाथाम् °नुध्वम्
3. असुनोत् असुनुताम् असुन्वन् असुनुत असुनुवाताम् °न्वत

The briefer forms असुन्व, असुन्व, असुन्वहि, असुन्वहि, are allowed and more usual.

Imperative.

1. सुनवानि सुनवाव सुनवाम सुनवे सुनवावहे सुनवामहे
2. सुनु सुनुतम् सुनुत सुनुष्व सुनुवाथाम् सुनुध्वम्
3. सुनोतु सुनुताम् सुन्वन्तु सुनुताम् सुनुवाताम् सुन्वताम्

Optative.

1. सुनुयाम् सुनुयाव °याम सुन्वीय सुन्वीवहि सुन्वीमहि
2. सुनुयास् सुनुयातम् °यात सुन्वीयास् सुन्वीयाथाम् सुन्वीध्वम्
3. सुनुयात् सुनुयाताम् °युस् सुन्वीत सुन्वीयाताम् सुन्वीरन्

Participle.

सुन्वन्, f. सुन्वती

सुन्वान, f. °आ

390. II. Roots in consonants. आप् 'acquire'.

Indicative.

	Active.			Middle.		
1. आप्नोमि	आप्तवस्	आप्तमस्	आप्तवे	आप्तवहे	आप्तमहे	
2. आप्नोषि	आप्तथस्	आप्तथ	आप्तषे	आप्तवाथे	आप्तधे	
3. आप्नोति	आप्ततस्	आप्तवन्ति	आप्तते	आप्तवाते	आप्तवते	

* The augment, without any exception in verbal conjugation, is the accented element in the verbal form of which it makes a part.

** The rare inv. in तात् (cf. § 196) would be formed thus: सुनुतात्.

Imperative.

1. आप्रवानि आप्रवाव आप्रवाम आप्रवे आप्रवावहे °वामहे
 2. आप्रुहि आप्रुतम् आप्रुत आप्रुष्व आप्रुवाधाम °ध्वम्
 3. आप्रोतु आप्रुताम् आप्रुवन्तु आप्रुताम् आप्रुवाताम् °वताम्

Participle.

आप्रुवन्त्, f. आप्रुवती आप्रुवान्, f. °आ

The other forms of this tense follow the model of सु.

391. 1. The root श्रु, 'hear', contracts to श्रु before the class-sign, forming श्रुषी *śṛṇó* and श्रुषु *śṛṇu* as strong and weak stem; 2nd sing. imv. act. श्रुषु; 1st du. ind. act. श्रुषुवस् or श्रुष्वस्, etc.—
 2. The root ध्रु shortens its vowel in the present-system.

Vocabulary XXXV.

Verbs:

- आप् (*açnuté*) acquire, obtain.
 + सम्प obtain.
 आप (*āpnóti*, rarely *āpnuté*) acquire, reach.
 + अत्र, प्र, or सम्, reach.
 चि (*cinóti*, *cinuté*) gather..
 + प्र or सम्, gather.
 + निस् or विनिस्, decide, conclude.
 चुद् + प्र (*pracodáyati*) urge on.
 दु (*dunóti*), intr., burn, feel pain or distress; tr., pain or distress (acc.)

- ध्रु (*dhunóti*, *dhunuté*) shake.
 1 वृ (*vrñóti*, *vrñuté*) cover, surround.
 + आ cover, etc..
 + अपा open.
 + वि explain, manifest.
 + सम् shut.
 शक् (*śaknóti*) be able.
 श्रु (*śṛnóti*, *śṛnuté*) hear.
 स्तृ (*strñóti*, *strñuté*) scatter, strew.
 + उप scatter.
 हि (*hinóti*) send.
 ह्र + प्रत्या (*pratyahárati*) bring back.

Subst.:

- आहार m., food.
 दिवस m., day.

- द्वारः m., doorkeeper.
 पण्डित m. pl., n. pr., certain demons.
 प्रभाव m., might, power.

भोग m., enjoyment.

मूल n., root.

रस m., taste, feeling.

वानप्रस्थ m., a Brāhman in the third period of his life.

विप्र m., Brāhman.

शब्द m., sound; noise; word.

Adj.:

नव, f. °आ, new.

पुण्य, f. °आ, meritorious, holy, auspicious.

°भाष् sharing.

मनोहर, f. °आ, entrancing, agreeable.

रसवन्त्, f. वती, tasteful.

सदृश, f. °ई, similar; worthy.

Exercise XXXV.

आचारादिश्रुतो विप्रो न वेदफलमश्नुते ।

आचारेण तु संयुक्तः संपूर्णफलभागभवेत् ॥ २० ॥

वसुहीना अपि बुद्धिप्रभावेन महान्तं दुःखोदधिं तरीतुं* शक्नुवन्ति । १। वानप्रस्थः शब्दार्थं भूमिं नवपत्तैर्हरिणचर्मभिश्चोपास्तृणीत । २। स्वपितरापुत्रानादाह्नातुं बालं प्रहिसु । ३। हे मघवन् पण्डिभिरपहता असन्नाः प्रत्याहर्तुं मरुतः सहायानादाय गुहाया द्वारमपावृणुया इत्युषिभिरिन्द्रः प्रार्थ्यत । ४। वनवृक्षान्धुन्वानस्य वायोः शब्दं पथा** गच्छन्ताव-मृश्व । ५। पुण्यकर्मभिर्धर्मं संचित्वा मृताः स्वर्गं जन्मान्तरे च विद्यारूपादीन्गुणानाम्रवाम । ६। यज्ञेषु होतृप्रचोदिता अध्वर्यवः सोमं सुन्वताम् । ७। महावने चिरात् परिभ्रम्य चतुर्थदिवसस्य मध्याह्ने गिरिशिखरमवामु-वत । ८। मूलफलादि वन आहारार्थं प्रचिन्वीरंरूपस्त्रिनः । ९। पण्डितः शिथेभ्यः शब्दशास्त्रं व्यवृणीत ॥ १० ॥

11. Having entered the temple of the worshipful (भगवत्)-Viṣṇu we heard the ear-entrancing (श्रुतिमनोहर) song-of-the-young-women (use अज्ज at end of cpd). 12. Listen to this word of a devoted (स्निह, pass. part.) friend. 13. The greedy (लुभ, pass. part.), who are always gathering riches, never attain the enjoyment of

* Infin. of तृ.

** The instr. is sometimes used to express the medium, or space or distance or road, traversed.

them. 14. By tasteful, well-composed poems ye may attain glory in the ten regions of the world (दिग्). 15. Çakuntalā, mayest thou get (*inv.*) a husband worthy-of-thee. 16. My-two-brothers determined to travel to Benares. 17. May the king's-sword bring grief to (*दु, inv. or opt.*) the hearts-of-the-wives-of-his-enemies. 18. Clouds cover the sky. 19. Let the doorkeeper close the door.

Lesson XXXVI.

392. Verbs. Class IV. B. *u*-class. The few roots (only six) of this sub-class end already in *न्* — except one, *कृ*, of considerable irregularity — and so add only *ञ* as class-sign. The inflection is quite that of the *nu*-class, the *ञ* being gunated in the strong forms, and dropped (optionally, but in fact nearly always) before *च्* and *म्* of 1st dual and plural.

393. Thus *तन्*, 'stretch', makes *तनोमि*, *तनोषि*, etc.; 1st du. *तन्वस्* (or *तनुवस्*), 1st pl. *तन्वस्* (or *तनुमस्*); mid. *तन्वे*, *तन्वहे*, *तन्वहे*, etc. — all like a vowel-root of the *nu*-class.

394. The root *कृ*, 'make', makes the strong stem *करो*, weak *कुरु*; the class-sign *ञ* is always dropped before *च्* and *म्* in 1st du. and 1st pl., and also before *य्* of the opt. active. Thus:

Indicative.

Active.			Middle.		
1. करोमि	कुर्वस्	कुर्मस्	कुर्वे	कुर्वहे	कुर्महे
2. करोषि	कुरुथस्	कुरुथ	कुरुषे	कुर्वाथे	कुरुष्वे
3. करोति	कुरुतस्	कुर्वन्ति	कुरुते	कुर्वाते	कुर्वते

Imperfect.

1. अकरवम्	अकुर्व	अकुर्म	अकुर्वि	अकुर्वहि	अकुर्महि
2. अकरोस्	अकुरुतम्	अकुरुत	अकुरुथास्	अकुर्वाथाम्	अकुरुध्वम्
3. अकरोद्	अकुरुताम्	अकुर्वन्	अकुरुत	अकुर्वाताम्	अकुर्वत

Imperative.

1. करवाणि	करवाव	करवाम	करवे	करवावहे	करवामहे
2. कुरु	कुरुतम्	कुरुत	कुरुष्व	कुर्वाथाम्	कुरुध्वम्
3. करोतु	कुरुताम्	कुर्वन्तु	कुरुताम्	कुर्वाताम्	कुर्वताम्

Optative.

1. कुर्याम्	कुर्याव	कुर्याम	कुर्याथ	कुर्यावहि	कुर्यामहि
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

Participle.

कुर्वन्, f. कुर्वती

कुर्वाण, f. °आ.

395. This root sometimes assumes (or retains from a more original condition) an initial *स्* after the prefix *सम्**; thus, *संस्करोति*, *संस्कुरुते*, *समस्कुरुवन्*.

396. The adverbial prefixes *आविस्* and *प्रादुस्*, 'forth to sight', 'in view'; *तिरस्* 'through', 'out of sight'; *पुरस्* 'in front, forward'; and the purely adverbial *अक्षम्* 'enough, sufficient', are often used with *कृ*, and with one or two other verbs, oftenest *अस्* 'be' and *भू* 'become'.

397. Any noun or adjective-stem is liable to be compounded with verbal forms or derivatives of the roots *कृ* and *भू*, in the manner of a verbal prefix. If the final of the stem be an *a*-vowel or an *i*-vowel, it is changed to *ई*; if an *u*-vowel, to *ऊ*. Consonantal stems take the form which they have before consonant-endings — of course with observance of the usual euphonic rules; but stems in *अन्* change those letters to *ई*. Thus, *स्वीकरोति* 'he makes his own', 'appropriates'; *भस्मीकरोति* (*भस्मान्*) 'he changes to ashes', i. e. 'burns': *स्तम्भीभवति* 'becomes a post' (*स्तम्भ*); *शुचीभवति* 'becomes pure' (*शुचि*); *साधूकरोति* 'makes holy'.

398. The suffixes *ता* (f.) and *त्व* (n.) are very extensively used to form abstract nouns, denoting 'the quality of being so-

* Also sometimes after *परि* and *उप*.

and-so', from both adjectives and nouns. Thus, **चरियता** f., **चरियत्व** n., 'the rank of a Kṣatriya'.

Vocabulary XXXVI.

Verbs:

कृ (<i>karōti, kurutē</i>) do, make.
+ अप do evil to, harm (<i>gen., loc., or acc.</i>).
+ अलम् prepare, adorn.
+ आविस् (<i>āviṣkarōti</i>) make known, exhibit.
+ उप do good to, benefit (<i>gen., loc.</i>).
+ तिरस् hide; blame, find fault with (<i>acc.</i>).
+ पुरस् put at the head.
+ प्रति pay, recompense; punish (<i>acc. rei, gen., dat. or loc. pers.</i>).

+ प्रादुस् make known, or visible.
+ सम् (§ 395) prepare, adorn; consecrate.
क्षन् (<i>kṣaṇōti, kṣaṇutē</i>) wound.
तन् (<i>tanōti, tanutē</i>) stretch, extend (tr.); perform (a sacrifice).
+ आ cause, bring about.
+ प्र spread abroad (tr.).
दुष् (<i>dūṣyati</i>) be defiled.
मन् (<i>manutē</i>) think, consider.

Subst.:

अपिहोचिन् m., priest of a certain kind.
अन्वय m., progeny, descendant.
अभिप्राय m., plan; view; opinion.
उरस् n., breast.
कलिङ्ग m., name of a tribe.
कान्ति f., charm, grace.
चमत्कार m., astonishment.
चातुर्मास्य n., a certain sacrifice.
शीलुक्व m., name of a tribe.
तिरस्कारिणी f., veil.

दोष m., fault.
नीति f., conduct of life; ethics; politics.
भूभुज् m., king.
महानस n., kitchen.
मांस n., flesh.
लवण n., salt.
व्यञ्जन n., spice.
व्यवहार m., trade.
संशय m., doubt.
सूद m., cook.

Adj.:

अन्ध , f. °आ, blind.
अवश्यम् , <i>Adv.</i> , necessarily.
अज्ञ , f. °आ, knowing.
भुज् enjoying.

वह्म , f. °आ, dear.
व्यलीक , f. °आ, wrong, false.
शुभ , f. °आ, good, proper.
सज्ज , f. °आ, ready.

Exercise XXXVI.

यो ऽनधीत्य द्विजो वेदमन्त्रं कुरुते अमम् ।
 स जीवन्नेव मूढत्वमाप्नु गच्छति सान्वयः* ॥ २१ ॥
 यत्करोत्यशुभं कर्म शुभं वा यदि सत्तम ।
 अचक्ष्णं तत्समाप्नोति पुत्रवो ऽच न संशयः ॥ २२ ॥
 कुर्वन्नपि व्यलीकानि यः प्रियः प्रिय एव सः ।
 अनेकदोषदुष्टो ऽपि कायः कस्य न वह्मभः ॥ २३ ॥

यो ब्रह्मणा कर्णावावृणोति तं पितरं मातरं च मन्वागो न ब्रुहीत्तस्यै कदाचन । १ । इदं ते लोभान्धस्य वृत्तं मनसि चमत्कारमातनोति । २ । भो राजन् नीतिज्ञानां मन्त्रिणामभिप्रायं श्रुत्वा यद्विदं तत्स्वीकुर्वस्व । ३ । अस्मदशांसि दिशु प्रतनुयुरिति मत्वा भूयसीं श्रियं भूभुजः कविभ्यो विभजन्ति । ४ । मांसमूलफलादि प्रभूतव्यञ्जनैः सूदा महानसे संस्कर्युः । ५ । शत्रुषुपागतेषु शूरा युद्धाय सज्जीभूय स्वगुणानाविष्कुर्वन्तु । ६ । अप्सरसस्तिरस्कारिण्या वपुस्तिरस्कुर्वन्ते ऽविज्ञाताश्च मनुष्यानुपागच्छन्ति ॥ ७ ॥

8. Every-year an Agnihotrīn must perform the Cāturmāsya (*pl.*).
 9. Mayest thou, O Great-King, protect thy kingdom, benefitting thy friends and harming thy enemies. 10. Brāhmins find fault with the trade-in-salt. 11. What thou didst (*mid.*), that distresses thy friends even now. 12. May I recompense him (*dat.*) who has done me a service. 13. By the command of the great-king consecrate the four princes according to the law (*विधि, instr.*). 14. The Cāulukyas held sway (राज्यं कृ) in Anahilapātaka 247 years. 15. By-the-charm-of-her-face the lotus-eyed eclipses (*तिरस्कु*) even the moon. 16. If one consecrates a scholar, teaches him, makes

* Poss. cpd, cf. § 374, 5.

him holy, then this one becomes his child (प्रजा). 17. The king-of-the-Kaliṅgas wounded his enemy in the breast with an arrow.

Lesson XXXVII.

399. Verbs. *nā*-class. The class-sign is in the strong forms the syllable ना *nā* [या *nā*], accented, which is added to the root; in the weak forms it is नी *nī* [नी *nī*]; but before an initial vowel of an ending the ई *ī* of नी *nī* [नी *nī*] disappears altogether.

400. Thus, क्री 'buy': strong stem क्रीया *kriyā*, weak क्रीणी *kriṇī* (before a vowel, क्रीन् *kriṇ*).

Indicative.

Active:

Middle.

1. क्रीयामि	क्रीयीवस्	क्रीयीमस्	क्रीये	क्रीयीवहे	क्रीयीमहे
2. क्रीयासि	क्रीयीथस्	क्रीयीथ	क्रीयीषे	क्रीयाथे	क्रीयीषे
3. क्रीयाति	क्रीयीतस्	क्रीयन्ति	क्रीयीते	क्रीयाते	क्रीयते

Imperfect.

1. अक्रीयाम्	अक्रीयीव	अक्रीयीम	०यि	०यीवहि	०यीमहि
2. अक्रीयास्	अक्रीयीतम्	अक्रीयीत	०यीथास्	०याथाम्	०यीध्वम्
3. अक्रीयात्	अक्रीयीताम्	अक्रीयन्	०यीत	०याताम्	०यत

Imperative.

1. क्रीयानि	क्रीयाव	क्रीयाम	क्रीयी	क्रीयावहे	क्रीयामहे
2. क्रीयीहि	क्रीयीतम्	क्रीयीत	क्रीयीष्व	क्रीयाथाम्	क्रीयीध्वम्
3. क्रीयातु	क्रीयीताम्	क्रीयन्तु	क्रीयीताम्	क्रीयाताम्	क्रीयताम्

Optative.

1. क्रीयीयाम्	क्रीयीयाव	क्रीयीयाम	क्रीयीय	क्रीयीवहि	क्रीयीमहि
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

Participle.

क्रीयन्, f. क्रीयती

क्रीयान्, f. ०या

401. The ending of the 2nd sing. inv. act. is हि, never थि; and there are no examples of its omission. But roots of this class

ending in a consonant substitute for both class-sign and ending in this person the peculiar ending चान् *ānā*; thus, बधान्, अशान्, सभान्, गृहाय (see §§ 402, 403).

402. The roots ending in ऊ shorten that vowel before the class-sign; thus, पू, पुनाति, पुनीते. The root यङ् is weakened to गृङ्; thus, गृह्णाति.

403. A few roots which have a nasal in some forms outside the present-system, lose it in the present; thus, यच् or यन्च्, यद्वाति; बन्च्, बध्नाति; सन्च् or सन्च्, सन्नाति. Similarly, ज्ञा makes जानाति.

404. Root-class. In this class there is no class-sign; the root itself is also present-stem, and to it are added directly the personal-endings; in the opt. (and subj.: § 60, end) of course combined with the mode-sign. The root-vowel takes *guṇa*, if capable of it, in the strong forms.

405. Roots ending in vowels. Roots in ञ् of this class are inflected only in the active. In the 3rd pl. impf. act. they may optionally take as ending उस् instead of चन्, the ञ् being lost before it.*

406. Thus, या 'go':

Indicative.

Imperfect.

1. यामि	यावस्	यामस्	अयाम्	अयाव	अयाम्
2. यासि	याथस्	याथ	अयास्	अयातम्	अयात
3. याति	यातस्	यान्ति	अयात्	अयाताम्	अयान्
					or अयुस्

* The same ending is also allowed and met with in a few roots ending in consonants; viz. 1विद् 'know', चच्, दिच्, दुच्, मुच्.

	Imperative.		Optative.		
1. चानि	द्याव	याम	यायाम्	यायाव	यायाम्
2. याहि	यातम्	यात	यायास्	यायातम्	यायात
3. यातु	याताम्	यान्तु	यायात्	यायाताम्	यायुस्
Part.	यान्, f. यान्ती or याती (260).				

Vocabulary XXXVII.

Verbs:	
2अन् (acnāti) eat.	क्षु + आ (āplāvate) drench.
क्री (krīnāti, krīnīte) buy.	बन्ध् (badhnāti, badhnīte) bind;
यन् (grathnāti) string together;	catch; join; compose.
compose.	भा (bhāti) gleam, glance.
ग्रह् (grhñāti, grhñīte) take, seize.	मा (māti) measure.
+ नि hold, restrain, check.	+ निस् work, create.
+ प्रति take, receive.	मुष् (muṣnāti) steal, rob.
ज्ञा (jānāti, jānīte) know.	2लुट् (लुण्ट्) + निस् steal.
+ अनु allow, permit.	2वृ (vrñīte: also varāyati, -te)
2पा (pāti) protect.	choose.
पुष् (puṣnāti) make increase or	शिष् + उद् remain over.
grow.	सृ (sṛñāti, sṛñīte; see also in
पू (punāti, punīte) clean.	Vocab. XXXV) strew.
प्री (prīnāti, prīnīte), act., delight;	स्ना (snāti) bathe.
mid., rejoice.	हन् + अप remove.

Subst.:
अञ्जलि m., a gesture of respect- ful greeting.*
दृच्छा f., wish.
उदय m., rise.

* The two hands hollowed and opened, and raised to the forehead.

दानव m., demon.	समुन्नति f., height, elevation; high position.
नाग m., snake.	Adj.:
नेत्र n., leading-rope, cord.	अद्यतन* of to-day.
मन्थन् (§ 278) m., stirring-stick.	धार्मिक right, just.
मन्दर m., n. pr., a mountain.	प्रसन्न (part of प्र-सद्) kindly dis- posed.
धूप m., sacrificial post.	विद् knowing.
कक्षाट n., forehead.	विवेकिन् shrewd.
1वर (varā) m., suitor, bride- groom.	Adv.:
2वर (vāra) m., choice, privilege, favor.	समक्षम् before, in the presence of (w. gen.).
शेष m., n. pr., a snake-demon who supports the earth.	

Exercise XXXVII.

परकावेन कवयः परद्रव्येण चेश्वराः ।
निर्लुण्ठितेन स्वकृतिं पुष्पान्यव्यतने चणे ॥ २४ ॥
विवेकिनमनुप्राप्य गुणा यान्ति समुन्नतम् ।
सुतरां रत्नमाभाति चामीकरनियोजितम् ॥ २५ ॥
यच्च विधातुमिच्छन्व्यजमानः प्रथमं वेदविद् अत्विजो वृणीताम् । १ ।
यज्ञेषु पशुस्वलंकृतेषु यूषेषु रज्जुभिर्बध्नन्ति ॥ २ ॥ देवानां कोपापिं
शान्तिं नेतुं तान्स्मृतिभिर्नेलराजो ऽप्रीयात् । ३ । प्रसन्ना वयं वरं वृणी-
ष्वेति तैरज्ञो राजा धार्मिकत्वमवृणीत् ॥ ४ ॥ सोमं दृषद्वां सुत्वाध्व-
यसं पुनन्तु ॥ ५ ॥ मन्दरपर्वतं मन्थानं शेषनागं च नेत्रं कृत्वा देवदा-
नवा अमृतार्थं सीरोदधिममधुन् ॥ ६ ॥ यथा सूर्य उदये भाति तथा
पापान्यपहृत्वा गङ्गाजलासुता नरा विभान्ति ॥ ७ ॥ जुष्यमर्थेन गृह्णीया-
त्सुखमञ्जलिकर्मणा ॥ ८ ॥

9. Allow me to go now. 10. Take these jewels which I have

* With the suffix तन (sometimes त्र) are made adjectives from
adverbs, especially of time; thus, प्रत्न 'ancient', प्रातस्त्न 'early',
अद्यात्न 'of the morrow'.

given you (*pass. constr.*). 11. Let the great poet weave (*यन्व्*, *बन्ध्*) a verse-wreath of word-pearls (*instr.*). 12. Every-day two thieves robbed the king's treasury. 13. He who receives (*part.*) gifts from every one is polluted (*दुष्*). 34. The Creator formed the world by his will (*स्वेच्छया*) alone. 15. Betake thyself (*या*) for salvation to the gods' protection. 16. Let kings restrain the wicked by punishments. 17. We saw Rāma's daughter coming out (*pres. part.*) of the house. 18. Let the bridegroom grasp the maiden's hand before the fire. 19. An Aryan must not eat another's leavings (*उद्-शिष्*, *pass. part., neut. sing.*). 20. One must bathe daily in unconfined (*part. from नि-रुध्*) water. 21. May the three-eyed god, the great-lord (*ईश्वर*) whose-forehead-is-adorned-with-the-crescent, protect you.

Lesson XXXVIII.

407. Verbs. Root-class, cont'd.* Roots ending in an *i*-vowel or an *u*-vowel (except *ह* 'go') change these into *इय्* and *उय्* before vowel-endings in weak forms, when not gunated.

408. Root *ह* 'go' (act., but used in mid. with the prep. *अधि*: 'go over for oneself', i. e. 'repeat, learn, read'; the *ह* then becomes *इय्*, as above).

	Indicative.		
	Active.		Middle.
1. इमि	इवस् इमस्	अधीये	अधीवहे अधीमहे
2. इषि	इषस् इष	अधीषि	अधीयाथे अधीषि
3. इति	इतस् यन्ति	अधीति	अधीयाते अधीयते

* A number of roots belonging to this class accent the root-syllable throughout, in weak as well as in strong forms—except of course in the imperfect.

Imperfect.

(for augment cf. § 179.)

1. आयम्	ऐव	ऐम	अधीयि	अधीवहि	अधीमहि
2. ऐस्	ऐतम्	ऐत	अधीयास्	अधीयाथाम्	अधीध्वम्
3. ऐत्	ऐताम्	आयन्	अधीत	अधीयाताम्	अधीयत

Imperative.

1. आयानि	आयाव	आयाम्	अध्यये	अध्यावहे	अध्ययामहे
2. इहि	इतम्	इत	अधीध्व	अधीयाथाम्	अधीध्वम्
3. एतु	इताम्	यन्तु	अधीताम्	अधीयाताम्	अधीयताम्

Optative.

इयाम् etc., 3rd pl. इयुस् अधीयीय etc.

Participle.

यन्, f. यती अधीयान, f. *आ

409. The root *शी* (mid.), 'lie', has *guna* throughout; thus, *शये*, *शेषे*, *शेते*, *शेवहे* etc.; impf. *अशयि*, *अशेयास्* etc.; opt. *शयीय* etc., *part. शयान*. Other irregularities are the 3rd persons pl.: indic. *शेरते*, inv. *शेरताम्*, impf. *अशेरत*.

410. The roots of this class ending in *उ* have in their strong forms the *vrddhi* instead of the *guna*-strengthening before an ending beginning with a consonant.

411. Thus, *स्तु* 'praise':

Indicative.

	Active.		Middle.		
* 1. स्तौमि	स्तुवस्	स्तुमस्	स्तुवे	स्तुवहे	स्तुमहे
2. स्तौषि	स्तुष्यस्	स्तुष्य	स्तुषे	स्तुषाथे	स्तुष्ये
3. स्तौति	स्तुतस्	स्तुवन्ति	स्तुते	स्तुवाते	स्तुवते

Imperfect. Act.: 1. अस्तवम्, 2. अस्तोस्, 3. अस्तौत्, 3rd pl. अस्तुवन्. Mid.: 1. अस्तुषि, 3rd pl. अस्तुवत.

Imperative. Act.: स्तवानि, स्तुहि, स्तौतु, स्तवाव etc., 3rd pl. स्तुवन्तु. Mid.: स्तवे, स्तुष्व, स्तुताम्, स्तवावहे etc., 3rd pl. स्तुवताम्.

Optative. स्तुयाम् etc. स्तुयीय etc.

* स्तौमि also found.

Participle. Act.: **ब्रुवन्**, f. **वती**. Mid.: **ब्रुवान्**.

412. The root **ब्रू**, 'say', takes the union-vowel **ई** after the root when strengthened, before the initial consonant of an ending.* Thus:

Indicative.

Active.

1. ब्रवीमि	ब्रूवस्	ब्रूमस्	ब्रुवे	ब्रूवहे	ब्रूमहे
2. ब्रवीषि	ब्रूषस्	ब्रूष	ब्रुषे	ब्रूवाधे	ब्रूषे
3. ब्रवीति	ब्रूतस्	ब्रुवन्ति	ब्रूते	ब्रुवाते	ब्रुवते

Middle.

Imperfect. Act.: **अब्रुवम्**, **अब्रुवीस्**, **अब्रुवीत्**; **अब्रूव** etc.; 3rd

pl. **अब्रुवन्**. Mid.: **अब्रुवि**, **अब्रूथास्** etc.; 3rd pl. **अब्रुवत**.

Imperative. Act.: **ब्रुवास्व**, **ब्रूहि**, **ब्रुवीतु**; **ब्रुवाव** etc.; 3rd pl.

ब्रुवन्तु. Mid.: **ब्रुवे**, **ब्रूष्व** etc.

Optative. Act.: **ब्रूयाम्** etc. Mid.: **ब्रुवीथ** etc.

Participle. Act.: **ब्रुवन्**. Mid.: **ब्रुवाण**.

413. Emphatic Pronoun. The uninflected pronominal word **स्वयम्** signifies 'self', 'own self'. It is oftenest used as a nominative, along with words of all persons and numbers; but not seldom it represents other cases also.

Vocabulary XXXVIII.

Verbs:

हृ (*éti*) go.

+ **अधि** (*adhīte*) repeat, read.

+ **अप** (*apāiti*) go away, depart.

+ **अभि** approach.

+ **अक्षम** set (of heavenly bodies).

+ **उद्** rise (of heavenly bodies).

+ **उप** approach.

ब्रू (*bravīti, brūte*) speak, say, state.

+ **प्र** explain, teach; announce.

+ **वि** explain, etc.

हृ (*rāūti*) cry, scream.

+ **वि** scream.

शी (*śete*) lie, sleep.

+ **अधि** lie asleep on (*acc.*).

सू (*sūte*) bring forth, bear.

+ **प्र** bring forth.

सू (*stāūti*) praise.

* Special irregularities in this verb are occasionally met with, such as **ब्रुमि**, **ब्रुवीहि**. Some of the verbs in **उ** are allowed to be inflected like **ब्रू**, but forms so made are rare.

Subst.:

जिन m., *n. pr.*, a name of Buddha.

जिह्वा f., tongue.

नीलकण्ठ m., *n. pr.*

न्याय m., logic.

पुष्प n., flower.

प्रश्न m., question.

मानस n., sense, understanding.

वध m., killing, murder.

मुनःशेप m., *n. pr.*

सहचर m., companion; **०री** f., wife.

साक्षिन् m., witness.

सारस m., crane.

Adj.:

उद्यत, f. **०न्ना**, ready.

उद्योगिन् diligent, energetic.

करुण, f. **०न्ना**, lamentable.

०कारिन् making, doing.

Adv.:

अधस् below, down, on the ground.

Exercise XXXVIII.

पुष्पाणीव विचिन्वन्तमन्वत्र गतमानसम् ।

अनवाप्तेषु कामेषु मृत्युरभ्येति मानवम् ॥ २६ ॥

भो दुष्कृतकारिणः । अस्मादनादपेतेति क्रोधाद्दृषिराश्रमहरिण-
वधीयतान्वाधानब्रवीत् ॥ १ ॥ गुरुमभिवाद्य शिष्यस्तं ब्रूयादधीष्व भो
(§ 264) इति ॥ २ ॥ कानि शास्त्राणि काश्चां लमर्थैः ॥ ३ ॥ न्यायादीनि
षड् दर्शनानि श्रीनीलकण्ठपण्डितस्य गृहे ऽहमर्थैः ॥ ४ ॥ अयोषोमा-
वष्टाभिर्हृदिभिर्हृदिषिरस्तौदिन्द्रावरुणौ च तिसृभिः ॥ ५ ॥ उद्योगिन्
पुरुषसिंहं स्वयमुपैति लक्ष्मीः ॥ ६ ॥ सा जिह्वा या जिनं स्तौति तच्चित्तं
यज्जिने रत्नम् ॥ ७ ॥ आचार्याः शिष्यान्धर्मं प्रब्रुवन्ति ॥ ८ ॥ हतसहचराः
सारसाः करुणं विरुवन्ति ॥ ९ ॥ श्रीमञ्जी राजभिराहताः पण्डिताः
सभां यन्ति धर्मप्रश्नांश्च विब्रुवन्ति ॥ १० ॥

11. The three wives of Daçaratha bore four sons. 12. Rāma and Lakṣmaṇa, followed-by-Sītā, went (हृ) into the forest. 13. Women whose-husbands-are-dead must sleep six months on the ground. 14. A witness stating anything other-than-what-was-seen-or-heard is to be punished (*fut. pass. part.*). 15. All guilt departs from one-who-has-done-penance. 16. One must not look

at (प्र-ईष) the rising or the setting sun. 17. Why hast thou come (अभि-इ) to-my-house with-wife and with-children? 18. "Praise Varuna": thus the gods addressed Çunaḥçepa *who was* bound to the sacrificial post. 19. Always speak the truth. 20. In a kingless land the rich do not sleep in peace (सुखेन).

Lesson XXXIX.

414. Verbs. Root-class, cont'd. Roots ending in consonants. The endings of the 2nd and 3rd sing. impf. act. are generally dropped, and the resulting root-final treated according to the usual rules for finals.* Cf. §§ 239, 242. But a root ending in a dental mute sometimes drops this final mute instead of the added **स्** in the second person; and, on the other hand, a root or stem ending in **स्** sometimes drops this **स्** instead of the added **त्** in the third person: in either case establishing the ordinary relation of **स्** and **त्** in the second and third persons.

415. Roots in **च्** and **ज्** substitute **क्** for those letters before **त्**, **ष्** and **स्** (which then becomes **ष्**); and **ग्** before **घ्**. Thus, **वच्** 'speak': **वच्मि**, **वचि**, **वक्ति** (only these three forms used).

416. Root **विद्** 'know, (act. only):

Indicative.	Imperfect.
1. वेद्मि विद्मस् विस्रस् अवेदम् अविद् अविस्त्र	
2. वेत्सि वित्यस् वित्य अवेस् or अवेत् अवित्तम् अवित्त	
3. वेत्ति वित्तस् विदन्ति अवेत् अवित्तम् अविदुस्	

Imv.: वेदानि, विद्धि, वेत्तु; वेदाव, वित्तम्, वित्ताम्; वेदाम, वित्त, विदन्तु. — Opt.: विद्याम्, etc.

* In the inflection of roots with final consonant, of this class and the reduplicating and nasal classes, euphonic rules find very frequent application. The student is therefore advised at this point to read carefully the chief rules of euphonic change in Whitney's Grammar, §§ 139—232 (the two larger sizes of print).

417. This root also makes a perfect without reduplication (but otherwise regular) which has always the value of a present. The forms of the indic. are:

Sing. 1. वेद्, 2. वेत्य, 3. वेद; du. 1. विद्, 2. विद्युस्, 3. विदतुस्; pl. 1. विस्र, 2. विद्, 3. विदुस्. The participle is विद्वांस, f. विदुषी (cf. § 268).

418. The root **अद्**, 'eat' (act.), inserts **अ** before the endings of the 2nd and 3rd sing. impf.; thus, **आदस्**, **आदत्**.

419. The root **हन्**, 'kill' (act.), is treated somewhat as are noun-stems in **अन्** in declension (§ 283). Thus:

Indicative.			Imperfect.		
1. हन्मि हन्वस् हन्मस्	अहनम्	अहन्व	अहन्	अहतम्	अहत
2. हंसि हथस् हथ	अहन	अहतम्	अहत		
3. हन्ति हतस् घ्नन्ति	अहन	अहताम्	अघ्नन्		

Imv.: हनानि, जहि*, हन्तु; हनाव, हतम्, हताम्; हनाम, हत, घ्नन्तु. — Opt.: हन्याम् etc. — Part.: घ्नन्, f. घन्ती.

420. Roots in **म्**, **ष्**, **च्**, substitute **क्** before **स्** (which then becomes **ष्**), **ष्** before **त्** and **घ्** (which become **ट्** and **ठ्**), and **ङ्** before **घ्** (which becomes **ङ्**). Thus, **द्विष्** 'hate' (act. and mid.):

Indicative Act.	Imperfect Act.
1. द्विष्मि द्विष्वस् द्विष्वस्	अद्वेषम् अद्विष्व अद्विष्व
2. द्विषि द्विष्वस् द्विष्व	अद्वेट् अद्विष्टम् अद्विष्ट
3. द्विषति द्विष्वस् द्विषन्ति	अद्वेट् अद्विष्टाम् अद्विषन्

Imv. Act.: द्वेषाणि, द्विङ्गि, द्विष्टु; द्वेषाव etc.

421. **चक्ष्**, 'see' (mid.): Pres. Ind.: चक्षे, चक्षे, चष्टे; चक्षहे, चक्षथे, चक्षते; चक्षहे, चक्षुहे, चक्षते. — Impf.: अचक्षि, अचक्षास्, अचष्ट; अचक्षहि, अचक्षायाम्, अचक्षाताम्; अचक्षहि, अचक्षुहम्, अचक्षत.

* Anomalous dissimilation.

422. 1. ईम्, 'rule' (mid.), inserts इ before endings beginning with स and घ; thus, 2nd sing. ईशिषे. — 2. वम्, 'wish' (act.), is in weak forms contracted to उम्; thus, 3rd. pl. उशन्ति.

423. मृज्, 'rub', 'clean' (act.), has vrddhi in the strong forms, and optionally also in weak forms when the endings begin with a vowel. In the treatment of the root-final this verb follows the roots in ष्. Thus, ind. 3rd sing. माष्टि, du. मृष्टस्, pl. मृजन्ति or मार्जन्ति.

Vocabulary XXXIX.

Verbs:

ईम् (*īṣte*) rule, own (*w. gen.*).
 चच् (*cāṣte*)+आ relate; call, name.
 + व्या explain.
 द्विष् (*dvīṣti, dviṣṭé*) hate.
 + प्र hate extremely.
 मृज् (*mārṣti*) rub, wipe.
 + अप wipe away, off.

+ प्र wipe off.
 राध् + अप (*aparādhnōti*) do wrong.
 वम् (*vāṣti*) wish.
 विद् (*véditi; véda*) know, consider.
 हन् + अभि smite.
 + नि kill.

Subst.:

ओष्ठ m., lip.
 क्षय m., decay, destruction.
 चक्षुस् n., eye.
 जेतृ m., conqueror.
 दया f., compassion, pity.
 प्रलय m., destruction.
 भव m., *n. pr.*, a name of Çiva.
 मन्त्र m., sacred text; spell, charm.
 याम m., watch (of the night).
 वृत्त n., conduct.

व्याकरण n., grammar.
 व्यास m., *n. pr.*, a Rishi.
 शङ्का f., hesitation.
 शर्व m., *n. pr.*, a name of Çiva.
 श्रुत n., learning.
 सर्ग m., creation.
 स्थिति f., condition, existence.

Adj.:

वाच्य, f. °आ, blameworthy, culpable.

Exercise XXXIX.

करोति पापं यो ऽज्ञानान्नात्मनो वेत्ति च क्षयम् ।
 प्रदेष्टि साधुवृत्तांश्च स लोकस्त्विति वाच्यताम् ॥ २७ ॥
 पञ्च पञ्चनृते हन्ति दश हन्ति गवानृते ।
 शतमश्वानृते हन्ति सहस्रं पुरुषानृते* ॥ २८ ॥

सर्वे वृत्तान्तं यथावृत्तमाचङ्कदुम् ॥ १ ॥ शर्व इति प्राञ्चः शिवमा-
 चक्षते भव इत्युदञ्चः ॥ ३ ॥ प्रद्विषती भार्या किं मां द्वेषीत्यब्रवीत्य-
 तिः ॥ ३ ॥ पुराणेषु त्रिभुवनसर्गस्थितिप्रलयाम्ब्यासो व्याचष्टे । ४ । यो
 ऽस्मान्देष्टि यं च वयं द्विष्मस्ममेभिर्मन्त्रैर्हनाम ॥ ५ ॥ यो ब्रह्मचर्यं चरित्वा
 गुरुणानुञ्जाती यथाविधि स्नाति तं सर्वलोकपूज्यं स्नातकं विदुः ॥ ६ ॥
 अनपराङ्गं तवोपकुर्वाणं कथं भोः पापात्संस्वं मां हंसि ॥ ७ ॥ अमुचि-
 लिप्रमङ्गं मृदा प्रमृष्टमङ्गिः परिमृष्टडि ॥ ८ ॥ भवो दिवो भव ईष्टे पृ-
 थिव्याः ॥ ९ ॥ गां धयन्तीं परस्त्री नाचक्षीत ॥ १० ॥ बद्धमपि पृथ्वीराजं
 निर्देया (§ 374, 6) यवना असिनाघ्नन् ॥ ११ ॥

12. Hear the words of the learned man who explains (*pres. part.*) the-science-of-grammar. 13. Know *that* Rāma (*acc.*) is the son, famous in the-three-worlds, of Daçaratha, and the conqueror of Rāvaṇa, lord-of-Lānkā. 14. Having sipped (आ-चम्) water thrice, one wipes the lips twice; according to others, once.** 15. Two warriors smote (अभि-हन्) with arrows the king-of-the-Aṅgas, who had murdered their companions. 16. Kill without hesitation even (अपि) a teacher who approaches (*past. pass. part.*) in order to kill you. 17. Why dost thou consider (विद्) me a Çūdra, *though* knowing (आ *ger.*) my learning-and-conduct? 18. Do not hate the sons-of-Pāṇḍu. 19. The women *whose-sons-were*-dead, having lamented greatly, wiped the tears from their eyes. 20. Thou, O Lord, rulest over bipeds and quadrupeds (*gen.*).

* Refers to false witness before a court. An untruth where small beasts (sheep, etc.) are concerned, involves the destruction of five ancestors; where cattle are concerned, of ten, etc.

** सकदित्यने.

Lesson XL.

424. Verbs. Root-class, cont'd. आस् 'sit' (mid.): Indic. आसे, आस्ते, आस्ते; आस्वहे etc.; आसहे, आसुहे*, आसते. Impf. आसि, आसास्, आसत् etc. Inv. आसे, आस्व, आसात् etc. Part. आसीन (unique).

425. The root शास्, 'command' (act.), substitutes in the weak forms with consonant-endings the weakened stem शिष्; thus, indic. sing. शासि etc.; du. शिष्वस् etc.; but 3rd pl. शासति. Impf.: अशासम्, अशास, अशात**; अशिष्व etc.; but 3rd pl. अशासुस्. Inv. 2nd sing. शाधि; 3rd pl. शासतु.

426. The extremely common root 1अस्, 'be' (act.), loses its vowel in weak forms, except when protected by the augment. The 2nd sing. inv. is एधि; in the 2nd sing. indic. one स् is omitted; in the 2nd and 3rd sing. impf. ई is inserted before the ending. Thus:

Indicative.			Imperfect.		
1. अस्मि	स्वस्	सस्	आसम्	आस्व	आस
2. असि	स्वस्	स्व	आसीस्	आसाम्	आस
3. अस्ति	स्वस्	सन्ति	आसीत्	आसाम्	आसन्

Imperative.

1. असानि	असाव	असाम	Opt.: स्वाम् etc.; 3rd pl. स्वुस्.
2. एधि	स्वम्	स्व	Part.: सन्, f. सती.
3. असु	स्वाम्	सन्तु	

427. Roots in ह् (except दिह् and दुह्) combine ह् with त्, थ् and ध् into ह्, and then lengthen preceding अ, इ, उ; before स्, ह् becomes क्; in 2nd and 3rd sing. impf. act. (where the endings are dropped) the ह् becomes ट्. Thus, लिह् 'lick' (act. and mid.): Impf. act.: अलेहम्, अलेट्, अलेट्; अलिह्, अलीढम्,

* Or आधे. So आङ्म् or आध्वम् (inv., impf.).

** See § 414. अशात is said to be used in 2nd pers. also.

अलीढाम्; अलिह्, अलीढ, अलिहन्. Inv. mid.: लेहे, लिह्व, लीढाम्; लेहावहे, लिहाथाम्, लिहाताम्; लेहामहे, लीढम्, लिहताम्.

428. In the two roots दुह्, 'milk' (act. and mid.), and दिह्, 'smear' (act.), the final ह् represents an earlier guttural which reappears in the inflection. Thus, from दुह्:

Indicative.

Imperfect.

1. दोह्मि	दुह्वस्	दुह्वस्	अदोहम्	अदुह्	अदुह्व
2. धोचि*	दुग्धस्	दुग्ध	अधोक्	अदुग्धम्	अदुग्ध
3. दोग्धि**	दुग्धस्	दुहन्ति	अधोक्	अदुग्धाम्	अदुहन्

Ind. mid.: दुहे, धुचे, दुग्धे; दुह्वहे etc. Impf. mid.: अदुहि, अदुग्धास्, अदुग्ध; अदुह्वहि etc.; अदुह्वहि, अधुग्धम्, अदुहत. Inv. mid.: दोहे, धुक्त्, दुग्धाम्; दोहावहे etc.; दोहामहे, धुग्धम्, दुहताम्.

429. The roots रुद्, 'weep', स्वप्, 'sleep', अन्, 'breathe', अस्, 'breathe' (all act.), insert इ before all endings beginning with a consonant, except स् and त् of 2nd and 3rd sing. impf., where they insert either अ or ई. Thus, रुद्: Pres. indic.: रोदिमि, रोदिषि etc., 3rd pl. रुदन्ति. Impf.: अरोदम्, अरोदस् or °दोस्, °दत् or °दीत्; अरुदिव etc.; 3rd pl. अरुदन्. Inv.: रोदानि, रुदिहि, रोदित् etc. Opt.: रुवाम् etc. (चा being mode-sign).

Vocabulary XL.

Verbs:
अन् (ānti) breathe.
+ प्र (prāṇiti) live.
अस् (āsti) be.

आस् (āste) sit.

+ उप sit by; wait upon; attend; reverence.

* cf. §§ 244, 249.

** When the final sonant aspirate of a root is followed by त् or थ् of an ending, the whole group is made sonant, and the aspiration of the root-final is not lost, but is transferred to the initial of the ending.

चल् + प्र-वि (pravicālati) move,
stir (tr.).

दिह् (dēgdhi) smear.

दुह् (dōgdhi, dugdhé) milk.

मील् + नि (nimīlati) shut (the
eyes).

रूद् (rōditi) weep.

लिह् (lēdhi, lihdé) lick.

+ अक्व lick.

विश् + समा approach.

शास् (śāsti) command, govern.

श्वस् (śvasiti) breathe.

+ आ or समा breathe gently,
revive.

+ वि be confident, trust (*w. gen.*
or *loc. of pers.*)

स्था + उद्* (uttisṭhati) arise.

Subst.:

उपभोग m., enjoyment.

केश m., hair.

दान n., gift, generosity.

बाला f., girl, maiden.

मुसल m. n., club, pestle.

रुधिर n., blood.

सत्त n., sacrifice.

सवितृ m., *n. pr.*, the sun-god

Savitar; the sun.

स्लन्ध m., shoulder.

Adj.:

धीर, f. °आ, firm, resolute.

निपुण, f. °आ, shrewd, skilled.

न्याय, f. °आ, right, proper.

प्रमत्त, f. °आ, careless.

Indecl.:

प्रातर् early, in the morning.

भृशम् greatly, much.

Exercise XL.

निन्दन्तु नीतिनिपुणा यदि वा सुवन्तु

लक्ष्मीः समाविशतु गच्छतु वा यद्येष्टम् ।

अथैव वा मरणमस्तु युगान्तरे वा

न्याय्यात्पथः प्रविचलन्ति पदं न धीराः ॥ २९ ॥

स्तेनो मुसलं स्लन्धे कृत्वा मुक्तकेशो राजानमुपेत्य शाधि मामि-
ति ब्रूयात् ॥ १ ॥ मित्रधृत्तु पापेषु न विश्वसिति बुद्धिमान् ॥ २ ॥ महो-
दधिमध्ये शेषनागमधिशयानो विष्णुः सुखं स्वपिति ॥ ३ ॥ प्रमत्तैर्ध्व-

* After उद्, the initial स् of स्था and स्लन्ध is dropped; thus,
उत्थातुम् for उत्स्थातुम्.

त्वितिभ्रूमौ निहितानि हवींषि श्वानाववालीढाम् ॥ ४ ॥ सुखमास्तां
भवानिति गन्तुमनुज्ञातो ऽपयन्सखा सखायं ब्रूयात् ॥ ५ ॥ सुन्दरि
समाश्वसिहि समाश्वसिहीति भयनिमीक्षिताक्षीमुर्वशीं पुरुरवा अत्र-
वीत् ॥ ६ ॥ गुरुक्रोधभीताः शिष्या रात्रिं वेदानधीयत ॥ ७ ॥ अस्तु
यशः श्रुतवृत्ते स्तां त्रियः सन्तु न तु भक्तिं विना स्वर्गं प्राप्नुयाः ॥ ८ ॥
दानोपभोगहीनः पुमाञ्चसन्नपि न जीवति ॥ ९ ॥ दीर्घसत्तमुपासते ये
ब्रह्मचर्यं चरन्ति ॥ १० ॥

11. Long may the great-king govern the earth according to
law. 12. There was a mighty king, Nala by name (नाम), son of
Virasena. 13. The lion, satiated-with-the-blood-of-the-slain-gazelle,
licked his mouth with his tongue. 14. Let the householder say to
the guest: "where didst thou sleep during the night"? 15. The
cowherd milked the cows twice daily. 16. The boy, beaten by
his father, wept bitterly (भृशम्). 17. Whose daughter art thou,
girl? 18. Know that that by which thou livest, and the whole
world lives, is the world-spirit. 19. Having arisen in the morning,
reverence the sun (सवितृ). 20. If you do not praise Rāma, there
will be no salvation for you (use अस्, in pres. opt.).

Lesson XLI.

430. Verbs. Reduplicating Class. This class forms the present-
stem by prefixing a reduplication to the root.*

431. The rules governing the reduplication are as follows:

1. The consonant of the reduplicating syllable is in general
the first consonant of the root; thus, दा, ददा. But, (a) a non-as-
pirate is substituted for an aspirate; and (b) a palatal for a guttural

* Only a small proportion of the roots of this class retain the
accent on the root-syllable in the strong forms. In the great ma-
jority, the accent is on the reduplication, both in the strong forms
and in those weak forms whose endings begin with vowels.

or ह्; thus, धा, दधा; खिद्, चिखिद्; द्वी, जिद्वी; (c) if the root begin with a sibilant followed by a non-nasal mute, the latter is repeated (with observance of a), not the sibilant; thus, स्था, तस्था.

2. A long vowel is shortened in the reduplicating syllable; and अ is replaced by इ; thus, ददा and दधा above; भी, बिभी; भू, बिभू.

432. The present-stem gunates the root-vowel in the strong forms; thus, बिभी, strong बिभे; बिभू, strong बिभर्.

433. The verbs of this class lose the न् from the endings of the 3rd pl. in the active as well as in the middle; and in the 3d pl. impf. act. always take उस्, before which a final radical vowel has guna; thus, अबिभरस्.

434. Root भृ, 'bear, carry'. For 2nd and 3rd sing. impf. act., cf. §§ 122, 414.

Indicative.

	Active.			Middle.	
1. बिभर्मि	बिभृवस्	बिभूमस्	बिभे	बिभृवहे	बिभूमहे
2. बिभर्षि	बिभृथस्	बिभृथ	बिभृषे	बिभ्राथे	बिभृषे
3. बिभर्ति	बिभृतस्	बिभ्रति	बिभृते	बिभ्राते	बिभ्रते

Imperfect.

1. अबिभरम्	अबिभृव	अबिभूम	अबिधि	अबिभृवहि	०भूमहि
2. अबिभर्	अबिभृतम्	अबिभृत	अबिभृथास्	अबिभ्राथाम्	०भृधम्
3. अबिभर्	अबिभृताम्	अबिभरस्	अबिभृत	अबिभ्राताम्	०भ्रत

Imperative.

1. बिभराणि	बिभराव	बिभराम	बिभरै	बिभरावहे	बिभरामहे
2. बिभृहि	बिभृतम्	बिभृत	बिभृष्व	बिभ्राथाम्	बिभृध्वम्
3. बिभर्तु	बिभृताम्	बिभृतु	बिभृताम्	बिभ्राताम्	बिभ्रताम्

Opt. act.: बिभृयाम् etc.; mid.: बिभ्रीय etc.

Part. act.: बिभ्रत् (§ 259), f. बिभ्रती; mid.: बिभ्राण्.

435. The roots 1द्वा, 'give', and 1धा, 'put', lose their radical vowel in the weak forms, leaving the weak stems दद् and दध्.

In the 2nd sing. inv. act. they form देहि and घेहि. The inflection of धा is as follows:*

Indicative.

	Active.			Middle.	
1. दधामि	दध्वस्	दध्वस्	दधे	दध्वहे	दध्वहे
2. दधासि	धत्स्	धत्स्	धत्से	दधाथे	धत्से
3. दधाति	धत्स	दधति	धत्ते	दधाते	दधते

Imperfect.

1. अदधाम्	अदध्व	अदध्व	अदधि	अदध्वहि	अदध्वहि
2. अदधास्	अधत्तम्	अधत्त	अधत्थास्	अदधाथाम्	अधत्तम्
3. अदधात्	अधत्ताम्	अदधुस्	अधत्त	अदधाताम्	अदधत्

Imperative.

1. दधानि	दधाव	दधाम	दधे	दधावहे	दधामहे
2. घेहि	धत्तम्	धत्त	धत्स्व	दधाथाम्	धत्तम्
3. दधातु	धत्ताम्	दधतु	धत्ताम्	दधाताम्	दधताम्

Opt. act.: दध्याम् etc.; mid.: दधीय etc.

Part. act.: दधत्, f. दधती; mid.: दधान्.

436. The root 1द्वा is inflected in precisely the same way, but with change everywhere of ध् to द्, except where ध् belongs to the ending.

437. The root 1द्वा, 'quit, abandon' (act.), drops the आ in weak forms where the ending begins with a vowel, and in the opt.; thus, indic. 3rd sing. जहाति, pl. जहति; impf. 3rd. sing. अजहात्, pl. अजहत्; opt. जहात्. The 2nd sing. inv. is जहोहि or जहिहि. In the other weak forms before consonant-endings the stem is either जही or जहि; thus, जहीमस् or जहिमस्.

438. 1मा, 'measure' (mid.), and 2द्वा, 'move, go' (mid.), form

* In combination with त् or थ् of an ending, the ध् of दध् does not give द्ध, but follows the general rule of aspirate and of surd and sonant combination; and the lost aspiration is thrown back upon the initial of the root.

मिमी and जिही before consonant-endings, मिस and जिह् before vowel-endings; thus, 3rd persons indic. मिमीति, मिमाति, मिसते.

439. ऊ 'pour, sacrifice' (act. and mid.), makes the 2nd sing. inv. जुञ्चि; 3rd persons impf. अजुहोत्, अजुञ्जताम्, अजुहवुस्.

440. 1. भी, 'fear' (act.), may shorten its vowel in weak forms; thus, बिभीमस् or बिभिमस्, बिभीयात् or बिभियात्. — 2. ही, 'be ashamed' (act.), changes its weak stem जिही to जिह्रिय before vowel-endings; thus, indic. 3rd persons जिह्रिति, जिह्रीतस्, जिह्रियति.

Vocabulary XLI.

Verbs:

1दा (dādāti, datté) give.

+ प्र entrust.

1धा (dādhati, dhatté) put, place.

+ अपि close, shut.

+ आ put on; (mid.) take, receive.

+ वि arrange, ordain.

+ सम् unite, put together; lay on.

1हा (jāhāti) quit, abandon, neglect.

ही (jihréti) be ashamed.

Subst.:

अभय n., safety; feeling of safety.

असुर m., demon.

आहुति f., oblation.

महिष m., n. pr.

मृग m., gazelle.

वित्त n., possessions, wealth.

शेष m., n., rest, remainder.

स्नातक m., one who has per-

formed the ablution customary at the end of religious pupilage.

Adj.:

दिव, f. ०ई, divine.

विशिष्ट, f. ०आ, excellent, remarkable.

Adv.:

सायम् at evening.

Exercise XLI.

यद्दासि विशिष्टेभ्यो यच्चाप्नासि दिने दिने ।
तस्ते वित्तमहं मन्ये शेषं कस्यापि रचसि ॥ ३० ॥

यश्च काष्ठमयो* हस्ती यश्च चर्ममयो मृगः ।

यश्च विप्री ऽनधीयानस्त्रयस्ते नाम बिभ्यति ॥ ३१ ॥

यः सर्वभूतेभ्यो ऽभयं दत्त्वा प्रव्रजति तस्माद्यतेभूतानि न बिभ्यति स च तेभ्यो न बिभेति ॥ १ ॥ सायं प्रातर्ब्रह्मचारी प्रत्यहं समिधमपावाद-
ध्यात् ॥ २ ॥ ये द्वे कालं विधत्तस्ते महती ज्योतिषी स्तवीमि** ॥ ३ ॥
नैकं पुत्रमन्यस्मै दद्यादन्यस्मात्प्रतिगृह्णीयाद्वा ॥ ४ ॥ यस्मान्महिषासुरात्सर्वे
ऽपि देवा अविभयुस्तं शिवस्य पत्नी पार्वती न्यहन ॥ ५ ॥ भिचां भव-
ति (voc. sing. f.) देहीति चत्रियो भिचां चरन्ब्रूयात् ॥ ६ ॥ राजा जरसा
वाक्रान्तं पतिं पत्नी कदापि न जह्यात् ॥ ७ ॥ यत्र भूषणालंकृतां कन्यां
पिता यज्ञभूम्यामृत्विजे ददाति स दैवो विवाह उच्यते ॥ ८ ॥ शत्रूना-
यातो (part., acc. pl.) दृष्ट्वा चत्रियाविषू धनुषोः समधत्ताम् ॥ ९ ॥
प्रायश्चित्तार्थे ऽष्टशतं घृताहुतीनां जुञ्चि ॥ १० ॥

11. Let the Adhvaryus pour the sacrificial offerings into the fire. 12. The seers ordain forty sacraments in the law-books (स्मृति). 13. Daçaratha entrusted his sons to Vasiṣṭha as scholars. 14. Meeting a woman in the forest, one should say to her: "Sister, be not afraid". 15. Let a Snātaka carry (wear) a garland, and an umbrella-and-shoes. 16. One who takes (part.) roots-fruits-or-grain from a strange-field, is to be punished. 17. Let the two doorkeepers close the door. 18. Do not neglect the teacher's command. 19. The royal-sage, who wore much jewelry, shone (वि-भत्) with great-brilliancy, like the sun. 20. The scholars who-have-not-learned-their-lessons are ashamed before their teacher (acc. or gen.).

Lesson XLII.

441. Verbs. Nasal class. All roots of this class end in consonants. As class-sign they insert a nasal before the final con-

* With the suffix मय, f. ०ई, are formed adjectives signifying 'made or composed or consisting of'. — In the second line, 'bear the name' merely, i. e. are not in reality such.

** See note on § 411.

sonant, unless one be there already (as in भङ्ग); this nasal is adapted to the consonant, except in the strong forms, where it is expanded to the syllable न [ण], which bears the accent.

442. The combination of the final radical consonants with those of the personal endings is in accordance with the rules already given for the root and reduplicating classes.

443. Thus, युञ् 'join'; strong stem युञ्ज, weak युञ्ज्.

Indicative.

	Active.			Middle.		
युनक्ति	युञ्ज्वस्	युञ्ज्मस्	युञ्जे	युञ्ज्वहे	युञ्ज्महे	
युनक्ति	युञ्ज्वथस्*	युञ्ज्वथ	युञ्जे	युञ्जाथे	युञ्ज्मथे	
युनक्ति	युञ्ज्मस्	युञ्जन्ति	युञ्जे	युञ्जाते	युञ्जते	
Imperfect.						
अयुनज्म	अयुञ्ज्व	अयुञ्ज्म	अयुञ्जि	अयुञ्ज्वहि	अयुञ्ज्महि	
अयुनक्	अयुञ्ज्म	अयुञ्ज्	अयुञ्ज्वथस्	अयुञ्जाथाम्	अयुञ्ज्मथम्	
अयुनक्	अयुञ्ज्म	अयुञ्जन्	अयुञ्ज्	अयुञ्जाताम्	अयुञ्जते	

Imperative.

	Active.			Middle.		
युनञ्जानि	युनञ्जाव	युनञ्जाम	युनञ्जे	युनञ्जावहे	युनञ्जामहे	
युनञ्जि	युञ्ज्म	युञ्ज्	युञ्जे	युञ्जाथाम्	युञ्ज्मथम्	
युनञ्जि	युञ्ज्म	युञ्जन्तु	युञ्ज्म	युञ्जाताम्	युञ्जताम्	

Opt. act.: युञ्ज्याम् etc.; mid.: युञ्जीय etc.

Part. act.: युञ्जन्, f. युञ्जती; mid.: युञ्जान्.

444. Root रुध् 'obstruct'; strong stem रुध्, weak रुन्ध्.

Indicative.

	Active.			Middle.		
रुध्मि	रुन्ध्वस्	रुन्ध्वस्	रुन्ध्वे	रुन्ध्वहे	रुन्ध्वमहे	
रुध्मि	रुन्ध्वस्	रुन्ध्वस्	रुन्ध्वे	रुन्ध्वथे	रुन्ध्वमथे	
रुध्मि	रुन्ध्वस्	रुन्ध्वन्ति	रुन्ध्वे	रुन्ध्वते	रुन्ध्वते	

* Instead of युञ्ज्वथस्, युञ्ज्वथे, and the like, it is allowed (and more usual) to write युञ्ज्वथस्, युञ्ज्वथे etc.; also रुन्ध्वस्, रुन्ध्वे etc., instead of रुन्ध्वस् etc.; in each case omitting the consonant immediately following the nasal.

Imperative.

रुध्मि	रुध्माव	रुध्माम	रुध्मे	रुध्मावहे	रुध्मामहे
रुन्धि	रुन्ध्वस्	रुन्ध्वस्	रुन्ध्वस्	रुन्ध्वथाम्	रुन्ध्वमथम्
रुन्धि	रुन्ध्वस्	रुन्ध्वन्तु	रुन्ध्वस्	रुन्ध्वताम्	रुन्ध्वताम्

Imperf. act.: अरुध्मन्, अरुध्मन्, अरुध्मन्; अरुन्ध्व etc.; mid.: अरुन्धि etc. — Opt. act.: रुन्ध्याम् etc.; mid.: रुन्धीय etc. — Part. act.: रुन्धन्, f. रुन्धती; mid.: रुन्धान्.

445. Roots पिष्, 'grind, crush' (act.); and हिंस, 'injure, destroy' (act.):

Imperfect.

अपिन्षम्	अपिंष्व	अपिंष्व	अहिंसम्	अहिंस्व	अहिंस्व
अपिन्ट्	अपिंष्टम्	अपिंष्टम्	अहिंसन्	अहिंसाम्	अहिंसन्
अपिन्ट्	अपिंष्टाम्	अपिंष्वन्	अहिंसन् or ०न्त	अहिंसाम्	अहिंसन्

Ind. 2nd persons: पिन्चि, पिंषस्, पिंष्ट; — हिन्सिस्, हिंस्वस्, हिंस्व. Imv. 2nd persons: पिण्ड्ढि, पिंष्टम्, पिंष्ट; — हिन्धि, हिंसाम्, हिंसन्.

446. तुह्, 'crush' (act.), combines तृष्ह् with ति and तु into तृष्हेदि and तृष्हेदु.

Vocabulary XLII.

Verbs:

इध् (inddhē) kindle, light.	युञ् (yunaṅkti, yuñṅkte) join; yoke, harness.
छिद् (chindāti, chinttē) cut, cut off.	+ णि appoint, establish.
+ आ take away, remove.	रुध् (rudhāddhi, runddhē) obstruct, check; besiege.
+ उद् exterminate.	शिष् (śiṅṅṅti) leave, leave remaining.
जागरय (caus. stem) awaken.	+ वि set apart, distinguish.
पिष् (piṅṅṅti) grind, crush.	हन् + सम् unite.
भङ्ग (bhaṅṅṅti) break, destroy.	हिंस (hiṅṅṅti) injure, destroy.
भिद् (bhindāti, bhinttē) split.	
भुञ् (bhunaṅkti, bhunṅkte) eat, enjoy.	

Subst.:
 अवस्था f., condition, state.
 उषस् f., dawn; also personified,
 Uṣas, the Dawn.
 कण्टक m., thorn; enemy.
 यास m., bite, mouthful.
 तण्डुल m., rice.
 पातक n., crime.
 पीच m., grandson.
 बन्धु m., relative.

लेखन n., writing, copying.
 हिमवन्त् m., the Himālaya Mts.
 Adj.:
 उच्चित high.
 चाच suitable for Kṣatriyas.
 गृह्य domestic.
 प्रतिकूल, f. अशा, unfavorable.
 शुभ, f. आ, splendid, beautiful,
 excellent.

Exercise XLII.

यद्यायति यत्कुरुते धृतिं बध्नाति यत्र च ।
 तदवाप्तोत्पयत्नेन यो* हिनस्ति न किंचन ॥ ३२ ॥
 यस्यां यस्यामवस्थायां यत्करोति शुभाशुभम् ।
 तस्यां तस्यामवस्थायां तत्फलं समुपाप्नुते ॥ ३३ ॥
 दूत एव हि संधत्ते भिनत्त्येव च संहतान् ।
 दूतस्तत्कुरुते कर्म येन भिद्यन्ते वा न वा ॥ ३४ ॥

ये गा हिंसन्ति तेषां** गरीयः प्रायश्चित्तं विदधति तस्मान्नां मा
 हिन्धि ॥ १ ॥ जीवत्युचपीचो वर्षशतं निष्कण्टकं राष्यं भुञ्जेति कवयो
 महाराजमस्तुवन् ॥ २ ॥ यथा वातो बलेन वृक्षान्भनत्त्येवं त्वं मे द्विषो
 भङ्गि ॥ ३ ॥ रथे शत्रुभिर्युध्यमानः शूरः काञ्चिदिषुभिरभिनत्केषां
 चिन्मूर्धहस्तपादादिकमसिनाच्छिनत् ॥ ४ ॥ प्रातरश्चिनावुषसा स्वसा
 सह भूतानि जागरयितुं त्रिचक्रे रथे ऽश्वी युङ्क्त इत्युच्यते ॥ ५ ॥ यो
 भूमिदानमाच्छिन्वाद् आच्छिद्यमानं वानुमोदते स पञ्चभिर्महापा-
 तकैः संयुक्तः स्यात् ॥ ६ ॥ अहो प्रतिकूलो विधिर्विशिनष्टि मनोरजं
 मे ॥ ७ ॥ यत्र पित्रादीनां बन्धूनां शिरांसि भिन्दन्तो रुदतीं कन्यां
 बलाद्धरन्ति तं चाचं विवाहमृषयो विदुः ॥ ८ ॥

11. After Jayasinha had long besieged Girinagara, he destroyed

* The antecedent of this relative is the subject of बध्नाति.

** Translate as though drive.

(भङ्ग) it at last. 12. An ascetic shall eat only 240 mouthfuls in a
 month (loc.). 13. "Kindle the fire; cut branches for firewood
 (समिधर्षम); milk the cows; grind grain": thus said one priest
 to another early in the morning. 14. The teacher entrusted (नि-युज्)
 the scholars with the copying of the books (cpd., dat.). 15. The
 mountain-range Himavant checks the course of the clouds
 with its exceedingly-high peaks. 16. The doers-of-right (ऋतु)
 are happy in Heaven, enjoying the fruits-of-their-works. 17. A
 king who has conquered a foreign realm must not exterminate
 the royal-family. 18. Aryans must kindle the domestic-fire at the
 time-of-the-wedding. 19. Women pounded the rice with pestles.

Lesson XLIII.

447. Verbs. Perfect-System. In the later language the perfect-
 system comprises only an indicative mode and a participle, each
 both active and middle. Its formation is essentially alike in all
 verbs; its characteristics are: 1. reduplication; 2. distinction of strong
 and weak forms; 3. endings in some respects peculiar; 4. the fre-
 quent use of the union-vowel i.

448. Reduplication. 1. Initial consonants are reduplicated ac-
 cording to the rules given in Less. XLI for the reduplicated pre-
 sent-stem.

2. Medial and final vowels, short and long, are represented by
 the corresponding short vowel, diphthongs by their second element;
 but अ (or अर्) is represented always by अ, never by इ as in the
 reduplicated present-stem. Thus, क्रम्, चक्रम्; स्या, तस्या; सिच्,
 सिषिच्; सेव्, सिषेव्; गा, जगा; कृ, चकृ.

3. Initial अ, followed by a single consonant, becomes आ
 (through अ-अ); thus, अद्, आद्

4. Initial इ and उ follow the same analogy; but in the strong

forms, where the root-vowel is gunated, the reduplicating vowel is protected from combination by the insertion of **य्** or **व्**; thus, **इष्**, strong perfect-stem **इयेष्** (*i-y-eṣ*) weak **ईष्** (i.e. *i-iṣ*); **उच्**, strong **उवोच्** (*u-v oc*), weak **ऊच्** (*u-uc*).

5. Roots beginning with vowels long by nature or position do not in general make the ordinary perfect-system, but use instead a periphrastic formation (see below). But **आप्** is an exception, making the constant perfect-stem **आप्**; and a few roots with initial **अ** or **इ** show the anomalous reduplication **आन्** in the perfect.*

449. **Strong and weak forms.** In the three persons sing. act. the root-syllable is accented, and exhibits usually a stronger form. As regards the strengthening:

1. In roots with medial vowels long by nature or position, and in those with initial **अ**, the difference of strong and weak forms does not appear, except in accented texts.

2. Medial and initial vowels are gunated, if possible, in the strong forms; thus, **भिद्**, w. **बिभिद्**, s. **विभेद्**; **इष्**, w. **ईष्**, s. **इयेष्**; **उच्**, w. **ऊच्**, s. **उवोच्** (§ 448, 4).

3. Medial **अ** before a single final consonant is vriddhi in the 3rd pers., and optionally in the 1st; thus, from **पच्**, in 1st sing. either **पपच्** or **पपाच्**, in 2nd **पपच्**, in 3rd **पपाच्**.

4. A final vowel takes either *guṇa* or *vriddhi* in the 1st person, *guṇa* in the 2nd, *vriddhi* in the 3rd; thus, from **नी**, in 1st **निने** or **निनि**, 2nd **निने**, 3rd **निनि**.

450. The root **भू** makes, irregularly, the perfect-stem **बभू**, and adds **व्** before a vowel-ending.

451. Some roots, instead of strengthening the vowel in the

* The grammarians prescribe (doubtless falsely) this reduplication for all verbs beginning with **अ** or **इ** followed by more than one consonant.

strong forms, weaken it in the weak forms; some few even do both. See below.

452. **Personal Endings.** The perfect-endings are these:

	Active.			Middle.		
1.	<i>a</i>	<i>vá</i>	<i>má</i>	<i>é</i>	<i>váhe</i>	<i>máhe</i>
2.	<i>tha</i>	<i>áthas</i>	<i>á</i>	<i>sé</i>	<i>áthe</i>	<i>dhvé</i>
3.	<i>a</i>	<i>átus</i>	<i>ús</i>	<i>é</i>	<i>áte</i>	<i>ré</i>

But roots ending in *ā* take *āu* in 1st and 3rd sing. act.; thus, **आ, तथी**.

453. **Union-vowel.** The endings beginning with consonants are in classical Sanskrit usually joined to the base by the union-vowel **इ**. The most important rules for the use of **इ** are as follows:

1. The **रे** of 3rd pl. mid. always has **इ** before it.

2. The other endings beginning with consonants, except **अ**, take it in nearly all verbs. But it is rejected throughout (except from **रे**) by eight verbs: viz. 1कृ 'make', भृ 'bear', सृ 'go', 2वृ 'choose', द्रु 'run', श्रु 'hear', सु 'praise', सु 'flow'.

3. For its use or omission in 2nd sing. act. the rules are too complicated to be given here.

454. With the union-vowel **इ** a final radical **इ** or **ई** is not combined into **ई**, but becomes **य्** or (if more than one consonant precede) **इय्**; thus, from **नी**, **निन्यिव** *ni-ny-i-va*.

Examples of inflection. A. Roots in final vowels.

455. I. **Roots in इ or ई.** The **ए** and **ऐ** of gunated and vriddhi vowels become **अय्** and **आय्** before the vowel beginning an ending. See also § 454.

Thus, 1. **नी**: Act.: Sing. 1. **निनय** or **निनाय**, 2. **निनयिथ** or **निनेथ**, 3. **निनाय**; du. 1. **निन्यिव**, 2. **निन्यथुस्**, 3. **निन्यतुस्**; pl. 1. **निन्यिम**, 2. **निन्य**, 3. **निन्युस्**. — Mid.: Sing. 1. **निन्ये**, 2. **निन्यिथे**, 3. **निन्ये**;

du. 1. निन्विह, 2. निन्वाथे, 3. निन्वाते; pl. 1. निन्विमहे, 2. निन्विध्वे, 3. निन्विरि.

2. क्री: Act.: Sing. 1. चिक्रय or चिक्राय, 2. चिक्रयिथ or चिक्रेथ, 3. चिक्राय; du. 1. चिक्रयिव, 2. चिक्रयथुस्, 3. ०थतुस्; pl. 1. चिक्रियिम, 2. चिक्रिय, 3. चिक्रियुस्.

456. II. Roots in उ or ऊ follow the model of the last-mentioned. Thus, सु: Act.: Sing. 1. तुष्टव or तुष्टाव, 2. तुष्टोथ (not तुष्टविथ — see § 453, 2), 3. तुष्टाव; du. 1. तुष्टव, 2. तुष्टवथुस्, 3. तुष्टवतुस्. — लू: Act.: du. लूलुविव etc.

457. भू is irregular in the perfect. (Cf. § 450):

	Active.		Middle.		
1. बभूव	बभूविव	बभूविम	बभूवे	बभूविवहे	बभूविमहे
2. बभूविथ	बभूवथुस्	बभूव	बभूविषे	बभूवाथे	बभूविध्वे
3. बभूव	बभूवतुस्	बभूवुस्	बभूवे	बभूवाते	बभूविरि

458. III. Roots in च्च. 1. 1कृ (see § 453, 2):

1. चकार, चकार	चकृव	चकृम	चक्रे	चकृवहे	चकृमहे
2. चकर्थ	चक्रथुस्	चक्र	चकृषे	चक्राथे	चकृध्वे
3. चकार	चक्रतुस्	चक्रु	चक्रे	चक्राते	चक्रिरि

So also भृ, सृ, 2वृ 'choose'. 2. The other roots in च्च make the first persons thus: from धृ, दधर or दधार, दधिव, दधिम; दधे, दधिवहे, दधिमहे.

459. If the final च्च be preceded by more than one consonant, the formation is as follows: स्मृ, 1. सस्मर or सस्मार, 2. सस्मर्थे, 3. सस्मार; du. सस्मरिव, सस्मरथुस्, etc. — the च्च being gunated.

460. IV. Roots in आ (including those written by the natives with ए or ऐ or औ). These take औ in 1st and 3rd sing. act.; and the आ is lost before vowel-endings and इ. 1. 1धा:

1. दधी	दधिव	दधिम	दधे	दधिवहे	दधिमहे
2. दधाथ, दधिय	दधथुस्	दध	दधिषे	दधाथे	दधिध्वे
3. दधी	दधतुस्	दधुस्	दधे	दधाते	दधिरि

2. धा, ह्रा, and similar roots, make their weak forms from the

simpler root-forms पी, ह्र etc.; and ह्रा makes its strong forms also from ह्र; thus, जुहव or जहाव etc.

B. Roots in final consonants.

461. I. With medial vowel capable of *guṇa*.

1. भिद्: Act: Sing. 1. विभेद, 2. विभेदिथ, 3. विभेद; du. विभिदिथ etc.; pl. विभिदिम etc. Mid.: विभिदि etc. 2. So from तुद्: तुतोद etc.; 3. from दृग्: 1. ददर्श, 2. ददर्शिथ or दद्रष्ट, 3. ददर्श; du. ददृशिव etc.

462. II. With initial vowel capable of *guṇa*.

1. इष्: Sing. 1. इषेथ, 2. इषेथिथ, 3. इषेथ; du. 1. ईषिव, 2. ईषथुस्, 3. ईषतुस्; pl. 1. ईषिम, 2. ईष, 3. ईषुस्. 2. उच्: उवोच etc. 3. The root इ, 'go', also follows this rule, forming इयाथ etc., 3rd. pl. ईयुस्. 4. ञच् makes (see § 448, 5) आनर्च, आनर्चिथ etc.

463. III. With initial च्च.

चस्, चास etc.; चद्, चाद etc. But च्चम् (originally च्चम्) makes च्चानंश् etc. (§ 448, 5).

464. IV. With medial च्च.

1. क्रम्: Act.: sing. 1. चक्रम or चक्राम, 2. चक्रमिथ, 3. चक्राम; du. चक्रमिव etc. Mid.: चक्रमे etc.

Thus all such roots beginning with more than one consonant, or with an aspirate, a guttural mute, or ह्र.

465. 2. Roots in general having medial च्च before a single final consonant, and beginning also with a single consonant which is repeated unchanged in the reduplication — i. e. not an aspirate, a guttural, or ह्र — contract with the reduplication into one syllable, with ए as its vowel, in the weak forms; and this is allowed also in 2nd sing act. when the union-vowel इ is taken.* Thus, पच्, s. पपच् and पपाच्, w. पेच्:

* Several roots not having the form here defined are said to undergo the same contraction, most of them optionally.

पपक्व, पपाच	पेचिव	पेचिम	पेचे	पेचिवहे	पेचिमहे
पपक्थ, पेचिव	पेचयुस्	पेच	पेचिमे	पेचाचे	पेचिधे
पपाच	पेचतुस्	पेचुस्	पेचे	पेचाते	पेचिरे

466. 3. Certain roots beginning with *v* *va* (also one with *y* *ya*) and ending in one consonant, reduplicate with the syllable *उ* (the one root just mentioned, with *इ*), and abbreviate the *v* (*य*) of the root to *उ* (*इ*) in weak forms. They are treated like roots with initial *उ* (*इ*: § 462) but retain the full root form in the strong persons. These roots are *वच्*, *वद्*, *वप्*, *वष्*, *वस्* 'dwell', and *वह्*; also *यज्*. Thus, *वच्*: Act. sing. 1. *उवच* or *उवाच*, 2. *उवक्थ* or *उवचिथ*, 3. *उवाच*; du. *ऊचिव* (*u-uc-i-va*) etc. Mid. *ऊचे* etc. — *यज्*: Act. sing. 1. *इयज* or *इयाज*, 2. *इयष्ठ* or *इयजिथ*, 3. *इयाज*; du. *ईजिव* etc. Mid. *ईजे* etc.

467. 4. Several roots which have medial *अ* between single consonants, but cannot follow the rule of § 465, drop out the *अ* from the weak forms. These roots are, in the classical language, *खन्*, *गम्*, *घस्*, *हन्*; and also *जन्*, which might be expected to follow § 465. They form the weak stems *चखू*, *जग्म्*, *जघ्*, *जघ्*; and *जज्*. Thus, *चखन्* or *चखान* etc., *चख्वि* etc. *हन्* makes its strong stem *जघन्* and *जघान्*.

468. 5. The roots *व्वध्*, *स्वप्*, and one or two others, reduplicate from the semivowel, and contract *य* and *व* to *इ* and *उ* in weak forms. Thus, strong *सुव्वप* or *सुव्वाप*, weak *सुवुप्*.

469. 1. The root *अह्*, 'speak', is found only in this tense, and only in the following forms: sing. 2. *आत्य*, 3. *आह्*; du. 2. *आह्युस्*, 3. *आहतुस्*; pl. 3. *आऊस्*. These forms have only the value of the present. — 2. The root *1विद्*, 'know', makes a perfect without reduplication, but otherwise regular, which has only present-value; see § 417. *2विद्*, 'find', forms the regular *विवेद्*.

470. The roots *चि*, *चित्*, *जि*, and *हि*, form as perfect-stems *चिकि*, *चिकित्*, *जिगि*, and *जिघि*.

471. Perfect participle. 1. Active. The ending of the pf. part. active is *वांस* (mid. *वत्*, w. *उष्*), which is added to the weak perfect-stem.* When this is monosyllabic the union-vowel *इ* is inserted (but not in the weakest cases, before *उष्*). Thus, *a*. from *इष्*, strong stem of part. *ईषिवांस*, mid. *ईषिवत्*, w. *ईषुष्*; from *पच्*, *पेषिवांस*, *पेषिवत्*, *पेषुष्*; from *वच्*, *ऊचिवांस*, *ऊचिवत्*, *ऊचुष्*; from *दा*, *ददिवांस*, *ददिवत्*, *ददुष्*. But, from *नी*, *निनीवांस*, *निनीवत्*, *निनुष्*; from *खु*, *तुष्टुवांस*, *तुष्टुवत्*, *तुष्टुनुष्*; from *भिद्*, *विभिद्वांस*, *विभिद्वत्*, *विभिदुष्*. — *b*. The root *गम्* makes as its strong stem of pf. part. *जग्मिवांस* or *जगन्वांस*, mid. *जग्मिवत्* or *जगन्वत्*, weakest only *जग्मुष्*. Similarly, from *हन्*, *जघ्निवांस* or *जघन्वांस*, *जघ्निवत्* or *जघन्वत्*, *जघ्नुष्*. — *c*. *1विद्*, 'know', makes *विद्वांस* etc.; *2विद्*, 'find', *विविद्वांस* etc.

2. Middle. The pf. part. middle is made with the suffix *आन*, which is added to the weak stem as this appears in the middle voice; thus, *बुध्*, *बुबुधान*; *धा*, *दधान*; *कृ*, *चक्राण*; *नी*, *निन्यान*; *तन्*, *तेनान*.

Periphrastic Perfect.

472. Most roots beginning with a vowel long by nature or position adopt a periphrastic formation in the perfect tense; the same is also taken by the secondary conjugations, and optionally by a few primary roots not falling in the above category. It is made as follows:

473. To the accusative of a derivative noun-stem in *आ*, made from the present-stem which is the general basis of each conjugation, are added, for the active, the perfect active forms of *कृ* or *अस्* (or, very rarely, of *भू*); for the middle, only the perfect middle forms

* Mechanically, the weakest participle-stem is identical with the 3rd pl. act. (of course, *ष्* instead of *स्*).

of कृ. Thus, from चोरयति, pf. चोरयामास or चोरयांचकार; from ईच्, ईषांचक्रे.

474. Force of the Perfect. In classical Sanskrit the perfect coincides in meaning with the imperfect, as a tense of narration, but is less often met with.

Lesson XLIV.

475. Verbs. Future-System (and Conditional). The verb has two futures: I. The simple, or s-future, which is by far the older, and much more common, than the other; and II. the periphrastic future.

476. I. Simple Future. This tense contains an indicative mode and a participle, active and middle. It may be made from all verbs. The tense-sign is the syllable स्, added to the root either directly, or by the union-vowel इ (in the latter case becoming इष्). The root has the *guna*-strengthening when possible; and some roots with medial च् gunate with र instead of चर्. The inflection is precisely like that of the present indicative of a verb of the a-conjugation; thus, from भू भविष्यति, °ते.

477. When इ is not taken, final radical consonants suffer the same changes before स् as before स in the inflection of the root-class or reduplicating or nasal class. Thus, from दुह्, धोष्यति; मुच्, मोष्यति; भिद्, भित्थति; रुध्, रोत्थति; नम्, नंथति; लिह्, लेत्थति; द्विष्, द्वेत्थति; दृम्, द्रत्थति. The root वस् 'dwell', makes वत्थति.

478. 1. Most roots ending in vowels reject इ; thus, दा, दास्यति; गा, गास्यति; जि, जेष्यति; श्रु, श्रोष्यति. 2. But all roots in च् take इ; thus, कृ, करिष्यति; तृ, तरिष्यति; and also the roots शी (श्रियिष्यति) and भू (भविष्यति). 3. यह् makes यहीष्यति.

479. In general, the verbs which take इ in the infinitive and periphrastic future (see below), take it also in this tense. But the accordance is far from complete; and these parts should be learned, as a matter of usage, for any given verb.

480. Stems of causative inflection, and denominatives in अय, make their future-stems in अयिष्य; thus, चूर्, चोरयिष्यति.

481. Participle. The participles, act. and mid., are made from the future-stem precisely as from the present-stem; thus, दा, दास्यन् (f. °स्यती), दास्यमान; कृ, करिष्यन्, करिष्यमान. Cf. §§ 260, 262.

482. Conditional. A tense called the conditional (indic. only) is made from the stem of the simple future precisely as the imperfect is made from the present-stem, and similarly inflected. Thus, अदास्यम्, अकरिष्यम्; अदासे, अकरिषे. It is of extremely rare occurrence.

483. II. Periphrastic Future. This tense, which is allowed to be made from all verbs, contains a single indicative tense, active,* It is formed by the *nomen agentis* in तृ, having the value of a future active participle, to the nom. sing. of which (ता) are added, in the 1st and 2nd persons of all numbers, the corresponding inflected forms of the pres. of 1अस् 'be'. In the 3rd persons the *nomen agentis* is used alone, in the proper number, without the auxiliary.

484. The root has in most cases the same form before the suffix तृ which it takes before the तुम् of the infinitive. Thus, गातृ; जि, जेतृ; सु, स्रोतृ; भू, भवितृ; कृ, कर्तृ; कथय, कथयितृ.

485. The inflection is then as follows:

* The Hindus also prescribe a middle formation; it has, however, practically no existence.

1. कर्तास्मि	कर्तास्वस्	कर्तास्वस्
2. कर्तासि	कर्तास्वस्	कर्तास्वस्
3. कर्ता	कर्तारौ	कर्तारस्

Aorist-System.

486. The aorist comprises three quite distinct formations, each with certain sub-varieties; but all are bound together into one complex system by certain correspondences of form and meaning. In classical Sanskrit aorists are comparatively rare. Their value is quite that of impf. or pf. as tenses of narration. But they are used also (though not nearly so often as the prohibitive opt.) with the particle **मा**, in prohibitions, the augment being then omitted; thus, **मा दाः** 'do not give'; **मा भैषीः** 'do not fear'. With this exception the aorist always has the augment in classical Sanskrit. The tense comprises, in the later language, only an indicative mode.* The main varieties of aorist are three: I. Simple Aorist; II. Reduplicated Aorist; III. Sibilant Aorist.

487. I. Simple aorist. (1) Root aorist. This aorist is precisely like an imperfect of the root-class. It is limited to the active voice of a few roots in **आ**, and of **भू**. E. g.

	1दा			भू	
1. अदाम्	अदाव	अदाम्	अभूवम्	अभूव	अभूम
2. अदास्	अदातम्	अदात्	अभूस्	अभूतम्	अभूत
3. अदात्	अदाताम्	अदुस्	अभूत्	अभूताम्	अभूवन्

Like **दाः** धा, अधातः; स्था, अस्थातः; पा, अपातः; गा 'go', अगात्.

488. (2) The *a*-aorist. This is like an imperfect of the *a*-class, active and middle. Thus, from **सिच्**, 1st persons असिचम्, असिचाव, असिचाम्; असिचे, असिचावहि, असिचामहि. In general the root

* The precative is strictly a peculiar aor. optative; but it is so rare that its formation need not be explained here.

assumes a weak form; but three or four roots in final **ञ्** take *guna*. Thus, **आप्**, आपत्; **गम्**, अगमत्; **भञ्**, अभञ्जत्; **मुच्**, अमुचत्; **सद्**, असदत्; **शक्**, अशकत्; **संस**, असंसत्. — Irregular: **स्था**, अस्थत्; **ह्रा**, अह्रत्; **श्वा**, अश्वत्; **शास्**, अशिषत्; **अस्** 'throw', अस्त् (anomalous). **वच्** makes अवीचत्, and **पत्**, अपपत्, which, with one or two others, were doubtless originally reduplicated aorists.

489. II. Reduplicated Aorist (३). This aorist differs from all others in that it has come to be attached nearly always to the derivative (caus., etc.) conjugation in **अद्य**, as its aorist. The connection is not formal, as the aorist is not made from the stem in **अद्य**, but from the root. Its characteristic is a reduplication, of quite peculiar character.

490. The reduplicated aorist is very unusual in classical Sanskrit, and it will be sufficient for the present to give an example or two of its formation. Thus, **जन्** makes अजीजनत्; **सृष्**, असृशत्; **स्था**, अतिष्ठिपत्. The inflection is the usual one of imperfects of the *a*-conjugation.

491. III. Sibilant Aorist, of four varieties. (4) The *s*-aorist. The tense-stem is made by adding **स्** to the augmented root, which usually has its vowel strengthened. E. g. **नीः** Act.: sing. 1. अनैषम्, 2. अनैषीस्, 3. अनैषीत्; du. 1. अनैष्व, 2. अनैष्टम्, 3. अनैष्टाम्; pl. 1. अनैष्व, 2. अनैष्ट, 3. अनैषुस्. Mid.: sing. 1. अनैषि, 2. अनैष्टास्, 3. अनैष्ट; du. 1. अनैष्वहि, 2. अनैषायाम्, 3. अनैषाताम्; pl. 1. अनैष्वहि, 2. अनैष्टुम्, 3. अनैषत. — **लभ्** (mid. only): sing. 1. अलप्सि, 2. अलप्थास्, 3. अलप्य etc.

492. (5) The *is*-aorist. The tense-stem is made by adding **स्** by means of an inserted **ह्**. The root is generally strengthened. E. g. **पू** 'purify': Act.: sing. 1. अपाविषम्, 2. अपावीस्, 3. अपावीत्; du. 1. अपाविष्व, 2. अपाविष्टम्, 3. °ष्टाम्; pl. 1. °विष्व, 2. °विष्ट, 3. °विषुस्. — Mid. sing. 1. अपविषि, 2. अपविष्टास्, 3. अ-

पविष्ट; du. 1. °विष्वहि, 2. °विषायाम्, 3. °ताम्; pl. 1. °विष्वहि, 2. °विष्टम्, 3. °विषत. — This is the only aorist of which forms are made in the secondary and denominative conjugations (but for causatives and denominatives in अय, cf. § 489).

493. (6) The *sis*-aorist is active only, the corresponding middle being of the *s*-form. An example will suffice here. या: sing. 1. चासाषम् etc., quite like the inflection of the *is*-aorist.

494. (7) The *sa*-aorist. दिम्: Act. sing. 1. अदिचम्, 2. °चस्, 3. °चत्; and so on, like an impf. of the *a*-conjugation. But in the mid. the grammarians prescribe the 1st. sing. अदिचि, and 2nd and 3rd du. अदिचायाम् and °ताम्.

495. Aorist Passive. Generally the middle forms of aorists 4, 5, or 7, are used also for the passive. Roots which do not ordinarily take aorists of these forms, may make them like 4 or 5 especially for the passive.

496. But a 3rd pers. sing., of peculiar formation, has become a recognized part of the passive conjugation. It is formed by adding इ to the root, which takes also the augment, and is usually strengthened, in some cases by *guna*, in others by *vrddhi*. After final आ is added य्. Thus, नी, अनायि; यु, अयावि; कृ, अकारि; वच्, अवाचि; — but दम्, अदमि; दृष्, अदर्शि; दा, अदायि.

Lesson XLV.

Derivative or Secondary Conjugations.

497. Secondary conjugations are those in which a whole system of forms, more or less complete, is made from a derivative conjugation-stem, this whole system being usually connected with a certain definite modification of the original radical sense. These conjugations are: I. Passive. II. Intensive. III. Desiderative. IV. Causative. V. Denominative.

498. I. Passive. The present-system of the passive has been described; as also the peculiar 3rd pers. sing. used as aor. pass., the past pass. participle in त् or न्, and the fut. pass. participles or gerundives. In all other parts of the verb middle forms are used, if necessary, with passive meaning.

499. II. Intensive. The intensive conjugation signifies the intensification or the repetition of the action expressed by the primary conjugation of a root. Forms outside the present-system are too rare to need notice here; indeed, even within that system they are by no means common in the later language. Intensives fall into two classes.

500. 1. The verbs of the first class (only act.) form their intensive-stem by reduplication, and the reduplicating syllable is strengthened. *a.* Radical च् and च्च are reduplicated with आ, इ and ई with ए, उ and ऊ with औ; thus, वावह्, दाधु, नेनी, शीशुच्. *b.* Sometimes the reduplicating syllable has a final consonant, taken from the end of the root; thus, चर्चर्, मर्मृञ्. *c.* Sometimes the reduplication is dissyllabic, an *i*-vowel being inserted after the final consonant of the reduplicating syllable; thus, वरीवृत्. — The model of inflection is the present-system of the reduplicating-class, but deviations are not rare; in particular, an ई is sometimes inserted between stem and ending.

501. 2. From the intensive-stem as just described may be formed another, formally identical with a passive-stem, by the suffix च्. It takes middle inflection, but has no passive value, being used precisely as is the intensive just mentioned. Thus, मृञ्, मर्मृञ्यते.

502. A few intensives, having lost their value as such, come to be used as presents, and are treated by the native grammarians as simple roots. Thus जागृ, really intensive of गृ 'wake', is assigned to the root-class: pres. जागर्मि etc., du. जागृवस् etc.; impf. 1. अजागरम्, 2. अजागर्, 3. अजागर्; du. अजागृव etc. So

also दरिद्रा, intens. of द्रा 'run', used as a present with the sense 'be poor'. निज् 'wash', and some others, use the intensive present-system in the same way, and are assigned to the reduplicating class; thus, 3rd sing. जेनेक्ति, 3rd pl. नेजिजति.

Intensive forms outside the present-system are very rare.

503. III. Desiderative. By this conjugation is denoted a desire for the action or condition denoted by the simple root; thus, पिबामि 'I drink', desid. पिपासामि 'I wish to drink'.

504. To form the desiderative-stem the root is reduplicated, and adds स, sometimes ह्. The consonant of the reduplication is determined by the usual rules; the vowel of reduplication is इ if the root has an *a*-vowel, an *i*-vowel, or अ, and उ if the root has an *u*-vowel. Thus, या, यियासति; नी, निनीषति; भू, बुभूषति; कृ, चिकीर्षति; भिद्, बिभित्सति; तिज्, तितिजते.

505. A number of roots form an abbreviated desiderative-stem; thus, आप्, ईप्सति; दा, दित्सति.

506. The conjugation in the present-system is like that of other *a*-stems. Outside of that desiderative forms are quite infrequent. The perfect is the periphrastic. The aorist is of the *is*-form; thus, ईप्स, ऐप्सीत्; अतितिच्छिष्ट. The futures are made with the auxiliary vowel इ; thus, ईप्सिष्यति, ईप्सितास्मि. The verbal nouns are made with इ in all forms where that vowel is ever taken. A passive may be made; thus, ईरस्यति 'it is desired to be obtained'; part. ईप्सित.

507. IV. Causative. 1. The present-system of the causative has been treated of already. 2. The perfect is the periphrastic, the derivative noun in आ being formed from the causative-stem; thus, धारयां चकार. 3. The aorist is the reduplicated, made in general directly from the root, and formally unconnected with the causative-stem; thus, धृ, अदीधरम्, अबुभुवम्. In a few instances, where the root has assumed a peculiar form before the causative-sign, the reduplicated aorist is made from this form, not from the

simple root; thus, स्या, स्यापयति, अतिष्ठिपत्. 4. Both futures are made from the causative-stem, the auxiliary इ replacing the final अ; thus, धारयिष्यति, धारयितास्मि. 5. The verbal nouns and adjectives are in part formed from the causative-stem in the same manner as the futures, in part from the causatively strengthened root-form; thus, pass. part. आवित; fut. pass. part. (gerundive) तर्पयितव्य, स्याप्य; inf. जीषयितुम्; gerund सादयित्वा, °स्याप्य, °नमय्य (§ 310).

508. Causative passive and desiderative. These may be made from the causative-stem as follows. 1. The passive-stem is formed by adding the usual passive sign च् to the causatively strengthened root, the syllables अच् being omitted; thus, धारयते. 2. The desiderative-stem is made by reduplication and addition of the syllables ह्, of which the इ replaces the final अ of the causative-stem; thus, दिधारयिषति, बिभावयिषति. This is a rare formation.

509. V. Denominative. A denominative conjugation is one that has as basis a noun-stem. In general, the base is made from the noun-stem by means of the conjugation-sign च्, which has the accent. Intermediate between the denominative and causative conjugations stands a class of verbs plainly denominative in origin but having the causative accent. Thus, from मन्त्र, मन्त्रयते *mantráyate*; from कीर्ति, कीर्तयति *kirtáyati*. See § 76.

510. The denominative meaning is of the greatest variety; e. g. 'be like', 'act as', 'regard or treat as', 'make into', 'desire, crave' — that which is signified by the noun-stem. Examples: from तपस् 'penance, asceticism', तपस्यति 'practise asceticism'; from नमस्, नमस्यति 'honor'; कृष्णयति 'blacken'; अश्वायति 'seek horses'; गोपायति 'play the herdsman, protect'; वसूयति 'desire wealth'; भिषयति 'play the physician, cure'; पुत्रायति 'desire a son', from the poss. cpd. पुत्रकाम 'desiring a son'

Glossary to the Exercises.

For the alphabetic order of Sanskrit words see p. xii.

I. Sanskrit-English.

Adjectives in -a form their feminine in -ā, unless otherwise stated.

<i>akṣa</i> m., die, dice.	<i>adhas</i> adv., below, down.
<i>akṣan</i> (<i>akṣi</i> : 275) n., eye.	<i>adhastāt</i> adv., below; prep., w. gen., underneath.
<i>agni</i> m., fire; as <i>n. pr.</i> , Agni, the god of fire.	<i>adhi</i> adv., over, above, on.
<i>agnihotrin</i> m., a kind of priest.	<i>adhika</i> a., additional; superior.
<i>agra</i> n., front; tip, end.	<i>adhīta</i> part. of <i>adhi-i</i> .
<i>aṅga</i> n., limb; body.	<i>adhunā</i> adv., now.
<i>aṅgiras</i> (253) m., certain mythical characters.	<i>adhvaryu</i> m., priest who recites the Yajurveda.
<i>aṅjali</i> m., a gesture (Voc. 37).	√ <i>an</i> (<i>āniti</i> : 429) breathe; — + <i>pra</i> breathe; live.
<i>anu</i> a., small; as n., atom.	<i>an</i> , before cons. <i>a</i> , negative prefix.
<i>atas</i> adv., hence.	<i>anaḥ</i> (278) m., ox.
<i>ati</i> adv., across, past; in cpds, to excess.	<i>anantaram</i> adv., after, immediately afterward; as prep., w. abl., right after.
<i>atithi</i> m., guest.	<i>anartha</i> m., misfortune.
<i>atra</i> adv., here, hither.	<i>anavadya</i> a., faultless.
<i>atha</i> adv., then; thereupon.	<i>anahilapātaka</i> n., <i>n. pr.</i> , a city.
<i>ātharvaveda</i> m., the fourth Veda.	<i>anu</i> adv., after, along, toward.
<i>adas</i> (<i>asāu</i> : 287) pron., that one; so-and-so.	<i>anukūla</i> a., favorable; as n., favor.
<i>adya</i> adv., to-day.	<i>anujñā</i> f., permission.
<i>adyatana</i> adj., of to-day.	<i>anurūpa</i> a., suitable.
<i>adroha</i> m., faithfulness.	<i>aneka</i> a., several.
<i>adharma</i> m., injustice, wrong.	

<i>anṛta</i> n., untruth.	<i>avaçyam</i> adv., necessarily.
<i>anta</i> m., end; in loc., at last.	<i>avasthā</i> f., condition, state.
<i>antara</i> a., inner; as n., interior, middle; interval, difference; occasion, juncture. Cf. 375, 4.	<i>avāñc</i> (272) a., downward.
<i>andha</i> a., blind.	√ <i>1aç</i> (<i>açnuté</i>) acquire, obtain; — + <i>sam-upa</i> idem.
<i>andhra</i> m., <i>n. pr.</i> , a people.	√ <i>2aç</i> (<i>açnāti</i>) eat; caus. (<i>āçyati</i>) make eat, give to eat.
<i>anna</i> n., food, fodder.	<i>açiti</i> (332) num., eighty.
<i>anya</i> (231) pron. adj., other.	<i>açru</i> n., tear.
<i>anyatra</i> adv., elsewhere.	<i>açva</i> m., horse.
<i>anvañc</i> (272) a., following.	<i>açvin</i> m. du., <i>n. pr.</i> , the Açvins (the Indian Διὸς κοῦροι).
<i>anwaya</i> m., descendant, progeny.	<i>aṣṭa</i> (332) num., eight.
<i>ap</i> (277) f. pl., water.	<i>aṣṭādaça</i> (332) num., eighteen.
<i>apara</i> (233) pron. adj., hinder; other.	<i>aṣṭāvīṣṭi</i> (329, 332) num., twenty-eight.
<i>api</i> (190) adv., unto; further; as conj., also, even.	√ <i>1as</i> (<i>āsti</i> : 426) be, exist.
<i>apsaras</i> f., heavenly nymph.	√ <i>2as</i> (<i>āsyati</i>) throw, hurl; — + <i>abhi</i> repeat, study, learn; — + <i>ni</i> entrust; — + <i>pra</i> throw forward or into.
<i>abhaya</i> n., feeling of safety; safety.	<i>asi</i> m., sword.
<i>abhi</i> adv., to, unto.	<i>asura</i> m., demon.
<i>abhiprāya</i> m., plan, design; view.	<i>asāu</i> same as <i>adas</i> .
<i>abhyāsa</i> m., study, recitation.	<i>asthan</i> (<i>asthi</i> : 275) n., bone.
<i>amṛta</i> a., immortal; as n., nectar.	<i>asmad</i> same as <i>vayam</i> ; as stem in cpds, cf. 352, 4.
<i>ambā</i> (273) f., mother.	<i>ahan</i> (<i>ahar</i> , <i>ahas</i> : 271) n., day.
<i>ayam</i> same as <i>idam</i> .	<i>aham</i> (223) pron., I.
<i>ari</i> m., enemy.	<i>ahita</i> a., disagreeable.
<i>artha</i> m., purpose; meaning; wealth.	<i>aho</i> excl., oh! ah!
√ <i>arthaya</i> (den.: <i>arthāyate</i>) ask for (w. two acc.); + <i>pra</i> idem.	<i>ahorātra</i> n., a day and a night.
<i>aryaman</i> (284) m., <i>n. pr.</i>	
√ <i>arh</i> (<i>ārhati</i>) deserve; have a right to; w. inf. (320), be able.	
<i>alam</i> adv., enough; very; w. instr., enough of, away with; w. dat., suitable for.	
<i>ali</i> m., bee.	
<i>ava</i> adv., down, off.	

ā (130) adv., hither, unto; as prep., w. abl., hither from; until.
 ākāra m., form, figure.
 ākāça m., air, sky.
 ākr̥ṣṭa part. of ā-kr̥ṣ.
 ākr̥ṣṭa part. of ā-kram.

āgamana n., arrival.
ācāra m., "walk and conversation"; conduct; observance.
ācārya m., teacher.
ājñā f., command.
ātman m., soul, self; often simple reflexive pronoun.
ādī m., beginning; in cpds, cf. 375, 1.
āditya m., sun.
ādeṣa m., command, prescription.
√ āp (āpnōti, āpnuté) acquire, reach; — + *ava*, *pra*, or *anu-pra*, idem; + *sam* idem; finish.
āpad f., calamity.
āpta part. of *āp*, trustworthy; fit.
āyusmant (263) a., long-lived.
āvīṣṭa, part. of *viṣ* + *ā*, entered (by), i. e. filled (with).
ācā f., hope.
ācū a., swift.
ācrama m., hermitage.
√ ās (āste: 424) sit; caus. (āsāyati) place; — + *upa* sit by; wait upon; reverence.
āsana n., seat, chair.
āharaṇa n., bringing.
āhāra m., food.
āhuti f., oblation, offering.
√ i (ēti [-itē: 408]) go: — + *adhi* mid., go over, repeat, read; caus. (*adhyāpāyati*) teach; — + *anu* follow; — + *apa* go away; — + *abhi* approach; — + *astam* (lit'ly go home) set (of the sun, etc.); — + *ud* rise; + *upa* approach; — + *pra* go forth; die; — + *sam-ā* come together, join.
icchā f., wish.

itara (231) pron. adj., other.
itas adv., hence.
iti adv., thus, so.
ittham adv., in this way, so.
idam (285-286) pron., this, this here.
√ idh, *indh* (inddhē: 444) kindle, light.
indu m., moon.
indra m., n. pr., the god Indra.
indrāprastha n., n. pr., Delhi.
indrāñī f., n. pr., a goddess.
iyant (263) a., so great; so much.
iyam fem. of *idam*.
iva adv., postpos., as; like.
√ iṣ (icchāti: 109) wish, desire.
iṣu m., arrow.
iha adv., here, hither.
√ iks (ikṣate) see, behold; — + *upa* neglect; — + *prati* expect.
īdr̥ṣ, f. -ī, a., such.
√ iṣ (iṣṭe: 422) rule, own (gen.).
īcvara m., master; lord; rich man.
ucchrīta part. of *ud-ṣri*, high.
ud adv., up, up forth or out.
udañc (272) a., northward.
udadhi m., ocean.
udaya m., rise.
udara n., belly.
udyata part. of *ud-yam*, ready.
udyāna n., garden.
udyoga m., diligence.
udyogin a., diligent, energetic.
upa adv., to, toward.
upanayana n., initiation.
upanīṣad f., certain Vedic works.
upabhoga m., enjoyment.

upavīta n., sacred cord of the three higher castes.
upānah (249) f., sandal, shoe.
ubha a., du., both.
uras n., breast.
uru, f. *urvī*, a., wide.
urvaṣī f., n. pr., an Apsaras.
uṣas f., dawn; as n. pr., Uṣas, goddess of the dawn.
√ r (rcchāti: 109) move; go to; fall to one's lot, fall upon; caus. (*arpāyati*) send; put; give.
r̥kṣa m., bear.
ṛgveda m., the Rigveda.
ṛc f., verse of the Rigveda; in pl., the Rigveda.
ṛṇa n., debt.
ṛvij m., priest.
ṛṣabhādatta m., n. pr.
ṛṣi m., seer.
eka (231) num., one; pl., some; *eke* . . *eke*, some . . others.
ekadā adv., once upon a time.
ekādaśa (332) num., eleven.
ekādaśa (334) a. eleventh.
etad (231) pron., this, this here.
eva adv., just, exactly.
evam adv., so, thus.
eṣa same as *etad*.
oṣṭha m., lip.
āuśadha n., medicine.
ka (232) pron. 1. interrogative, who, what; *kim* w. instr., cf. note on p. 89. — 2. indefinite, adj. and subst., chiefly w. parti-

cles *ca*, *cana*, *cid*, *api*, some one or other; so also w. relatives; oftenest in neg. clauses: no one whatever (236).
kaṭa m., mat.
kañṭaka m., thorn, enemy.
kañṭha m., neck.
kaṇva m., n. pr.
katham adv., how?
√ kathaya (den.: *kathāyati*) relate, tell.
kadā adv., when? — + *cana*, *cid*, *api*, at some time, ever; often w. neg.
kaniṣṭha a., youngest.
kaniyas a., younger.
kanyā f., daughter, maiden.
kapi m., monkey.
kapota m., dove.
√ kamp (*kāmpate*) tremble.
kara m., hand; trunk (of elephant); ray; toll, tax.
karin m., elephant.
karuṇa a., lamentable.
karṇa m., ear.
karṭṛ m., doer, maker (202); author.
karman n., deed; ceremony; fate
√ kal + *sam* (*samkalāyati*) put together, add.
kalaha m., quarrel.
kalā f., crescent.
kalīṅga m., n. pr., a people.
kaliyuga n., the "Iron Age" of the world.
kalyāna n., advantage; salvation.
kavi m., poet.
kāṇa a., one-eyed.
kānti f., charm; grace.

kāma m., desire, love; as *n. pr.*, the god of love.
kāmadugha a., granting wishes; as *f. subst.*, *sc. dhenu*, the fabulous Wonder-cow.
kāmaduh a., idem.
kāya m., body.
kāraṇa n., reason, cause.
-kārīn a., causing, making.
kārya n., business, concern.
kāla m., time.
kālidāsa m., *n. pr.*, a poet.
kāvya n., poem.
kāñī f., *n. pr.*, a city, Benares.
kāñṭha n., fagot; wood.
kāñṭhamaya a., made of wood.
kim neut. of *ka*; *w. tu*, however.
kiyant (263) pron. adj., how great?
kīrti f., glory.
kutas adv., whence? why?
kutra adv., where? whither?
kunta m., spear.
√kup (*kūpyati*) be angry (gen. or dat.).
kumāra m., boy, prince.
kuçala a., able; clever; learned.
√1kr (*karōti*, *kurutē*: 394-5) make, do, perform; — + *adhi* put at the head, make ruler over (loc.); — + *apa* do evil to, harm (gen., loc., acc.); — + *apa-ā* pay; — + *alam* prepare, adorn; — + *āvīś* (*āvīṣkaroti*) make known, exhibit; — + *upa* do good to, benefit (gen., loc.); — + *tiras* (*tīrask.*) hide; blame; — + *purāś* put at the head; — + *prati* pay, recompense, punish (acc. rei,

gen., dat., or loc. pers.); — + *prādus* make known or visible; — + *sam* (395) prepare, adorn.
√2kr (*kirāti*) strew, scatter; — + *vi*, idem.
√kṛt (*kṛntāti*: 110) cut, cut off; — + *ava* idem.
kṛti f., work (literary).
kṛtrima a., adopted.
kṛtsna a., whole, entire.
kṛpaṇa a., poor; niggardly.
kṛpā f., graciousness, pity.
√kṛṣ (*kārṣati*) draw; — + *ā* draw on or up; — (*kṛṣāti*) plough.
kṛṣi f., agriculture.
kṛṣivāla m., husbandman, peasant.
kṛṣṇa a., black; as *m.*, *n. pr.*, the god Kṛṣṇa.
√kṛp (*kālpatē*) be in order; tend or conduce to (dat.); caus. (*kālpāyati*, *-te*) ordain, appoint.
ketu m., banner
keça m., hair.
kāilāsa m., *n. pr.*, a mountain.
koñi f., peak; point, tip.
kopa m., anger.
koṣa m., treasure; treasury.
kāunteya m., *n. pr.*
kāusalyā f., *n. pr.*
√kram (*krāmāti*, *krāmāte*: 134) step; — + *ati* pass beyond; transgress; pass (of time); — + *ā* stride up to, attack; — + *nis* go out.
√krī (*kṛñāti*, *kṛñāte*) buy.
kṛīḍā f., game, sport.
√krudh (*krūdhyati*) be angry (gen. or dat.).
krodha m., anger.

kva adv., where? whither? + *cit* + *sam* (mid.) come together, sometimes, ever.
kṣaṇa m. n., moment; time.
kṣatriya m., warrior, man of the second caste.
kṣaya m., decay, destruction.
√kṣan (*kṣaṇōti*, *kṣaṇutē*) hurt, wound.
√kṣal (*kṣālāyati*) wash; — + *pra* idem.
kṣātra a., suitable for Kṣatriyas.
√2kṣi (*kṣiṇōti*) destroy.
kṣitipa m., king.
√kṣip (*kṣipāti*) hurl, throw.
kṣiṇa part. of *2kṣi*, reduced, decayed, ruined.
kṣīra n., milk.
kṣudra a., little, small.
kṣudh f., hunger.
kṣetra n., field.
√khan (*khānati*) dig.
khara m., ass.
gaṅgā f., *n. pr.*, the Ganges.
gaja m., elephant.
√gaṇaya (den.: *gaṇāyati*) number, count; — + *ava* despise.
gati f., gait; course.
gandha m., odor, perfume.
gandharva m., a Gandharva, one of a band of celestial singers.
√gam (*gacchati*: 100) go; — + *anu* follow; — + *abhi* visit, attend; — + *ava* understand; — + *astam* go down, set (cf. *i* + *astam*); — + *ā* come; — + *upa-ā* come near; — + *ud* rise; — + *nis* come forth; proceed from; — + *sam* (mid.) come together, meet (instr.).
garīyas comp., very honorable.
√2gā (*gāyati*) sing.
gāndharva, *f. -ī*, a., in the manner of Gandharvas.
√gāh (*gāhate*) plunge; — + *ava* dive or plunge under (acc.).
gir f., voice, song.
giri m., mountain.
gīta n., song; singing.
guṇa m., quality, excellence.
guru m., teacher.
√guh (*gūhāti*: 101) hide, conceal; caus. (*gūhāyati*) idem.
guhā f., cave.
grha n., house.
grhastha m., householder, head of family.
grhya a., domestic.
go (209) m., f., bull, steer, cow; as *f.*, fig., speech.
gotva n., ox-nature, stupidity.
gopa m., cowherd, shepherd; guardian.
√gopāya (den.: *gopāyati*) be keeper; guard.
gāurava n., weight; dignity.
√granth (*grathnāti*) string together; compose.
grantha m., literary work, book.
√grah (*grhñāti*, *grhñāte*) receive, seize; — + *ni* hold, restrain, check; — + *prati* take.
grāma m., village.
grāsa m., bite, mouthful.
ghaṭa m., pot, vessel.

ghāsa m., fodder, hay.
ghṛta n., clarified butter; *ghee*.
√ghrā (*jighrati*: 102) smell.

ca encl. conj., and, also, *ॐ*, -*que*;
 sometimes = *if*.
cakra n., wheel.
√cakṣ (*cāṣṭe*: 421) see, behold;
 — + *ā* relate; call, name; —
 + *vi-ā* explain.
cakṣus n., eye.
catur (332) num., four.
caturtha, f. -ī, a., fourth.
caturdaśa (332) num., fourteen.
catuspad (282) a., quadruped.
catvāriṅśat (332) num., forty.
candra m., moon.
candramas m., moon.
√cam, used only with *ā* (*ācāmati*),
 sip; rinse the mouth.
camatkāra m., astonishment.
√car (*cāraṭi*) go, wander; graze
 (of cattle); tr., perform, commit;
 — + *ā* perform, complete, do;
 — + *sam-ā* idem; — + *ud* caus.
 (*uccārāyati*) pronounce, say.
-cara a., moving, going.
carāṇa m., n., foot, leg.
carita n., behavior, life.
carman n., hide, skin; leather.
carmamaya a., leathern.
√cal (*cālati*) stir; — + *pra* move
 on, march; — + *pra-vi*, tr., move,
 stir.
cāturmāsya n., a certain sacrifice.
cāmikara n., gold.
cāra m., spy.
cāru a., beautiful.
√ci (*cinōti*, *cinutē*) gather; — +

nis or *vi-nis* decide, conclude;
 + *pra* gather; — + *vi* idem; —
 + *sam* collect.
citta n., notice; thought; mind.
√cint (*cintāyati*) consider.
ciram adv., long, a long time.
√cud + *pra* in caus. (*pracodāyati*),
 impel.
√cur (*corāyati*) steal.
cūḍā f., top-knot, scalp.
ced adv., postpos., *if*.
√ceṣṭ (*cēṣṭati*, -*te*) stir, be alive.
cāulukya m., n. *pr.*, a people.
√cyu (*cyāvate*) totter, fall; — + *vi*
 fall away.

chattra n., umbrella.
chāyā f., shade.
√chid (*chinōti*, *chinddhē*) cut, cut
 off; — + *ava* idem; — + *ā* take
 away, remove; — + *ud* exter-
 minate.

jagat n., that which moves; men
 and beasts; the world.
√jan (*jāyate*: 155; *janāyati*) trans.
 (*janāyati* and active forms) beget,
 produce; intrans. (*jāyate* and
 middle forms) be born (mother in
 loc.), arise, spring up; — + *ud*
 (*ujjāyate*) be born, arise (abl.);
 — + *pra* or *sam* idem.
jana m., man; pl., and coll. in
 sing., people, folks.
janaka m., father.
jananī f., mother.
janman n., birth, existence.
jaya m., victory.
jaras (280) f., old age.

jarā (280) f., old age.
jala n., water.
 | *jalp* (*jālpati*) speak; chat.
 | *jāgaraya* (caus.) awaken.
jāti f., birth; caste; kind.
jāmātr m., son-in-law.
jāyā f., woman, wife.
jāla n., net.
√ji (*jāyati*) trans. and intrans.,
 conquer, win; — + *parā*, mid.,
 be conquered (cf. in Voc. 9).
jina m., n. *pr.*, a name of Buddha.
jihvā f., tongue.
√jiv (*jīvati*) live.
jivita n., life.
juhū f., spoon, esp. sacrificial
 spoon.
jetr m., conqueror, victor.
-jña a., knowing.
√jñā (*jānāti*, *jānitē*: 403) know;
 — + *anu* permit; — + *ā* caus.
 (*ājñāpāyati*) command; — + *vi*
 recognize.
jñāna n., knowledge; insight.
jyā f., bowstring.
jyestha (340) a., best; oldest.
jyotiṣa n., astronomy; astronomi-
 cal text-book.
jyotis n., light; star; heavenly
 body.

ta (228-230) pron., he, etc.; that,
 both subst. and adj.; also as
 def. article.
takṣaṣilā f., n. *pr.*, Taxila, a city.
√taḍ (*tāḍāyati*) strike, beat.
taḍāga m., pond.
taḍit f., lightning.
taṇḍula m., rice.

tatas adv., thence, therefore; there-
 upon.
tatra adv., there, thither.
tathā adv., in that way, so.
tad nom. and acc. s. n. to *ta*; as
 adv., therefore.
tadā adv., then.
tadyathā adv., namely, to wit.
√tan (*tanōti*, *tanutē*), tr., stretch,
 extend; perform (a sacrifice);
 — + *ā* cause, bring about; —
 + *pra* extend.
√tap (*tāpati*, -*te*), tr. and intr.,
 burn; pain; in pass., suffer, do
 penance.
tapas n., heat; self-torture.
tapasvin a., practising ascetism;
 as m., ascetic.
√tam (*tāmyati*: 131) be sad.
taru m., tree.
taruṇa, f. -ī, a., young, delicate.
tasthivāṅs pf. part. of *sthā*; as n.,
 the immovable.
tādṛc a., such.
tālu n., palate.
tāvant adj., so great, so much;
tāvāt as adv., so long, so much;
 often concessive, like *donec*, *doch*.
tiraskariṇī f., veil.
tiryāṅc (272) a., going horizontally;
 as subst., animal.
tilaka m., ornament (often fig.).
tīra n., bank, shore.
tīrtha n., bathing-place; place of
 pilgrimage.
tīvra a., great, strong, violent.
tu conj., but, however.
√tud (*tudāti*) push; strike.
√tul (*tolāyati*) weigh.

√*tuṣ* (*túṣyati*) rejoice, take pleasure in (w. instr.).
 √*tr* (*táratī*) cross over; — + *ava* descend; + *ud* emerge; — + *pra* in caus. (*pratárāyati*), deceive.
trīya, f. -ā (335), a., third.
 √*trp* (*tṛpyati*) satisfy oneself.
trṣṇā f., thirst, desire.
tejasvin a., courageous.
 √*tyaj* (*tyájati*) leave, abandon; + *pari* leave off, give up.
trayodaśa (332) num., thirteen.
tri (332) num., three.
triṅśat (332) num., thirty.
triloka n., -*kī* f., the threefold world.
trivṛt a., triple, threefold.
triṣṭraṇ a., three-headed.
triṣṭubh f., name of a metre.
tryaṣṭī num., eighty three.
tva stem of pron. of 2d pers. (226; cf. 352, 4).
tvad so-called stem of pron. *tva*.
tvaṣṭr m., n. *pr.*, a god, Tvaṣṭar.
 —
 √*dañç* (*dáçati*) bite.
dañṣṭrā f., tooth.
dakṣa m., n. *pr.*
dakṣiṇa a., right-hand; southern.
daṇḍa m., stick; punishment.
 √*danḍaya* (den.: *danḍáyati*) punish.
dadhan (*dadhi*: 275) n., curds.
dadhyañc (weakest -*dhic*) m., n. *pr.*
 √*dam* (*dámtyati*: 131) control; caus. (*damáyati*) tame; compel.
dayā f., compassion, pity.
daridra a., poor.
darçana n., philosophical system.

daça (332) num., ten.
daçaratha m., n. *pr.*
daṣṭa part. of *dañç*.
 √*dah* (*dáhati*) burn.
 √*1dā* (*dádāti*, *datté*: 436) give; in caus. (*dāpáyati*) make give or pay; — + *ā* take (312); — + *pra* entrust; give in marriage.
 √*2dā* (*dyáti*: 132) cut.
dātṛ m., giver; as adj. (204), generous.
dāna n., gift, present; generosity.
dānava m., demon.
dāsa m., slave, groom.
dāsī f., female slave, servant.
dīna n., day.
dīv (277) f. (rarely m.), sky.
dīvasa m., day.
dīvyā a., heavenly, divine.
 √*diç* (*diçáti*) show, point out; — + *ā* command; — + *upa* teach, instruct.
dīç f., point, cardinal point; quarter, region; direction.
 √*dih* (*dégdhi*: 428) smear.
dīrgha a., long; — *am* adv., afar.
dīrghāyus a., long-lived.
 √*dīv* (*dīvyati*) play.
 √*du* (*dunóti*), intr., burn, feel distressed; tr., distress (acc.).
duḥkha n., misery; misfortune.
dugdha n., milk.
durjana m., scamp, rogue.
durdaçā f., misfortune.
durlabha a., hard to find or reach; difficult.
 √*duṣ* (*dúṣyati*) be defiled.
duṣprayukta a., badly arranged.
duṣṣanta m., n. *pr.*

duṣ insep. prefix, bad; hard.
 √*duh* (*dógdhi*, *dugdhé*: 428) milk.
duhitṛ f., daughter.
duṭa m., messenger, envoy.
 √*dr* in caus. (*dāráyati*) + *vi* tear open.
 √*drç* (127) see; cans. (*darçáyati*) show; pass. (*drçyáte*) seem, look.
drç f., look, glance; eye.
drṣad f., stone (in Vocab. XX).
deva m., god; f. -ī, goddess; queen.
devakī f., n. *pr.*
devakula n., temple.
devatā f., divinity, deity.
deça m., region, land.
dāiva, f. -ī, divine.
doṣa m., fault.
dyuti f., brilliancy.
dravya n., property; object.
draṣṭṛ m., seer; author (of Vedic hymns, etc.).
 √*dru* (*drávati*) run.
 √*druh* (*drúhyati*) be hostile, offend.
dva (332) num., two.
dvāḥstha m., doorkeeper.
dvār f., door, gate.
dvija m., Aryan.
dvijāti m., Aryan.
dvitīya (335) a., second.
dvipad (282) a., biped.
 √*dviṣ* (*dvéṣti*, *dvīṣté*) hate; — + *pra* hate extremely.
dviṣ m., enemy.
dviṣ adv., twice.
dvīpin m., panther.
dhana n., money, riches.
dhanin a., wealthy.

dhanus n., bow.
dharma m., right; law; virtue.
 √*1dhā* (*dádhati*, *dhatté*: 435) put, place; — + *api* close, cover, keep shut; — + *ā* put on; mid., receive; — + *sam-ā* lay or place on; — + *ni* lay down; — + *pari* in caus. (*-dhāpáyati*), make put on, clothe in (two acc.); — + *vi* arrange, ordain; — + *sam* put together, unite; lay on.
 √*2dhā* (*dháyati*: 126) suck.
dhātṛ m., creator.
dhānya n., grain.
dhārmika a., right, just.
 √*dhāv* (*dhāvati*) run; — + *anu* run after.
dhāvana n., running; course.
dhī f., understanding, insight.
dhīmanti a., wise, prudent.
dhīra a., steadfast, firm, brave.
 √*dhū* (*dhunóti*, *dhunuté*: 391), shake.
 √*dhṛ* in caus. (*dhāráyati*) bear.
dhṛti f., firmness; courage.
dhenu f., cow.
dhairya n., steadfastness.
 √*dhyā* (*dhyáyati*) think, ponder.
 —
na adv., not; with opt., cf. 207.
nakṣatra n., lunar mansion.
nagara n., -ī f., city.
nadī f., river.
 √*nand* (*nándati*, -*te*) + *abhi* rejoice in, greet joyfully (acc.).
 √*nam* (*námati*), intr., bow, bend; tr., honor, reverence (acc.).
namas n., honor, glory.
nara m., man (*vir* and *homo*).

naraka m., hell.
narmadā f., *n. pr.*, a river in India.
nala m., *n. pr.*
nava a., new.
nava (332) num., nine.
navati (332) num., ninety.
navadaça (332) num., nineteen.
navina a., new.
√naç (*nāçyati*) perish; — + *vi* perish; disappear.
√nah (*nāhyati*) bind; — + *sam* gird, equip oneself.
nāga m., snake.
nāṭaka n., drama, play.
nāman n., name; *nāma* adv., by name.
nārī f., woman, wife.
nālī f., pipe, conduit.
nāça m., destruction.
ni adv., down; in, into.
nitya a., constant; daily; — *am* as adv., always, daily.
nideça m., command.
√nind (*nindati*) blame.
nipuça a., shrewd, skilled.
niyata, part. of *ni-yam*, ordained, fixed, permanent.
nirdaya a., pitiless.
nirvṛti f., contentment, happiness.
nis adv., out, forth.
niçcaya m., decision, certainty.
√nī (*nāyati*; caus. *nāyāyati*) lead, guide; — + *apa* lead away; — + *ā* bring; — + *upa* introduce, consecrate, initiate; — + *nis* bring to an end, determine, settle; — + *pari* lead about; marry.
nica a., low.

nīti f., conduct of life; ethics, politics.
nīruj a., healthy, well.
nīlakaṇṭha m., *n. pr.*
√nṛt (*nṛtyati*) dance.
nṛtta n., dance, dancing.
nṛpa m., king.
nṛpati m., king.
netṛ m., leader.
netra n., leading-rope, cord; eye.
nāu f., ship.
nyañc (272) a., low.
nyāya m., logic.
nyāyya a., right, proper.
pakça m., wing, side; party.
pakṣin m., bird.
pañka n., mud, bog.
√pac (*pācati*) cook.
pañca (332) num., five.
pañcadaça (332) num., fifteen.
pañcapañcāça (334) a., fifty-fifth.
pañcāçat (332) num., fifty.
√paç (*pāçyati*) split open.
paçu a., skilled.
√paṭh (*pāṭhati*) recite, read.
paṇi m. pl., *n. pr.*, certain demons.
pañḍita m., learned man; pandit.
√pat (*pātati*) fall, fly; — + *ud* fly up.
pāti (274) m., lord, master; husband.
patra n., leaf, letter.
patnī f., wife, consort.
pathi same as *panthan*.
pathya a., wholesome.
pad (282) m., foot.
√pad (*pādya*) go; — + *vi-ā* in caus. (*vyāpādya*) kill; — +

nis (*niçpādyate*) grow, arise from (abl.); — + *pra* flee for refuge to (acc.).
pada n., step; place.
padma m. n., lotus.
panthan (278) m., road, path.
payas n., milk.
para (233) a., chief, highest; other.
paramātman m., the world-spirit.
paraçu m., axe.
parā adv., to a distance, away.
pari adv., round about, around.
parivrāj (247, 2) m., wandering ascetic.
pariṣad f., assembly.
parvata m., mountain.
√palāy (*pālāyate*: cf. p. 116, note) flee.
√paç (*pāçyati*: 127) see.
paçu m., beast.
paççāt adv., behind (w. gen.).
√1pā (*pībati*: 102) drink; caus. (*pāyāyati*) give to drink, water.
√2pā (*pāti*) protect; caus. *pāldya*ti) idem.
pāṭaliputra n., *n. pr.*, the city Patnā.
pāṭha m., lecture, lesson.
pāṇi m., hand.
pāṇini m., *n. pr.*
pāṇḍava m., descendant of Pāṇḍu.
pātaka n., crime, sin.
pātra n., pot, vessel.
pāda m., foot; quarter; ray, beam.
pāpa a., bad; as *n. subst.*, sin.
pārthiva m., prince.
pārvatī f., *n. pr.*
pālana n., protection.
pāça m., noose, cord, snare.

pāçupālya n., cattle-raising.
pitr m., father; *du.*, parents; pl., Manes.
√piç (*pināçti*) grind, crush.
√pī same as *pyā*.
pīna part. of *pī*, fat.
√pīḍ (*pīḍya*ti) torment, vex.
pūnis same as *pumāñs*.
pūnya a., meritorious, holy, auspicious; as *n.*, merit.
putra m., son; — *trī* f., daughter.
punar adv., again, but.
pumāñs (279) m., man, male.
pur f., city.
purā adv., earlier, formerly.
purāṇa, f. — *ā* and — *ī*, a., former, ancient; as *n.*, one of a class of works on the creation, etc.
puruça m., man (*homo*).
purūravas m., *n. pr.*, Purūravas.
purohita m., domestic priest.
pulinda m., *n. pr.*, a tribe in India.
√puç (*puççāti*) make increase or grow.
puçça part. of *puç*, stout, fat.
puşpa n., flower.
pustaka n., book (manuscript).
√pū (*punāti*, *punitē*) clean.
√pūj (*pūjāyati*) honor.
pūra m., flood, high-water.
pūru m., *n. pr.*
pūşan (284) m., *n. pr.*, Pūşan, the Sun-god.
prthivī f., earth, ground.
prthu a., broad, wide.
prthvī f., earth.
prthvīrāja m., *n. pr.*
√1pṛ (*pīpāti*; caus. *pūrāyati*) fill.

√2 <i>pr</i> (<i>pārāyati</i>) overcome (evils); prevail.	<i>priyakarman</i> a., kind.
<i>poṣaka</i> m., supporter, maintainer.	<i>priyavāc</i> a., saying pleasant things, sociable.
<i>pāutra</i> m., grandson.	<i>priyavādin</i> a., idem.
<i>pāura</i> m., citizen.	√ <i>prī</i> (<i>prīṇāti</i> , <i>prīṇīte</i>), act., delight; mid., rejoice; caus. (<i>prīṇāyati</i>), make glad, please.
√ <i>pyā</i> (<i>pyāyate</i>) swell, get stout.	√ <i>plu</i> (<i>plāvate</i>) + <i>ā</i> drench.
<i>pra</i> adv., forward, forth.	
<i>prakāśin</i> a., bright, glistening; act., illuminating.	<i>phala</i> n., fruit, reward.
√ <i>prach</i> (<i>prachāti</i>) ask, ask about.	<i>phalavant</i> a., fruitful.
<i>prajā</i> f., creature, subject.	
<i>prati</i> adv. and prep., back, back again; towards (postpos., w. acc.).	√ <i>bandh</i> (<i>badhnāti</i> , <i>badhnīte</i>) bind; entangle, catch; join; compose.
<i>pratikūla</i> a., unfavorable.	<i>bandhu</i> m., relative.
<i>pratyañc</i> (272) a., backward, westward.	<i>bala</i> n., strength, might.
<i>pratyaham</i> adv., daily.	<i>balavant</i> a., strong, mighty.
√ <i>prath</i> in caus. (<i>prathāyati</i>), spread; proclaim.	<i>baṣiṣṭha</i> a., strongest.
<i>prathama</i> (335) a., first.	<i>bahu</i> a., much, many.
<i>prabhāva</i> m., might, power.	<i>bāla</i> a., young; as m., child, boy; f. - <i>ā</i> , girl.
<i>prabhūta</i> a., much; many.	<i>bāṣpa</i> m., tear, tears.
<i>pramatta</i> a., careless.	<i>bāhu</i> m., arm.
<i>prayāga</i> m., <i>n. pr.</i> , Allahābād.	<i>bindu</i> m., drop.
<i>prayukta</i> part. of <i>pra-yuj</i> .	<i>buddha</i> part. of <i>budh</i> , awakened; enlightened.
<i>prayoktṛ</i> m., arranger, user.	<i>buddhi</i> f., prudence, intelligence.
<i>pralaya</i> m., destruction.	<i>buddhimant</i> a., prudent.
<i>praçna</i> m., question.	√ <i>budh</i> (<i>bódhati</i> , - <i>te</i> ; <i>búdhyati</i> , - <i>te</i>), wake; know.
<i>prasanna</i> , part. of <i>pra-sad</i> , well-disposed.	<i>budha</i> m., wise man, sage.
<i>prahāra</i> m., stroke, shot; wound.	<i>brahmacarya</i> n., life of holiness, esp. religious studentship.
<i>prāñc</i> (272) forward, eastward.	<i>brahmacārin</i> a., studying sacred knowledge; as m., Brāhman student.
<i>prāṇa</i> m., often pl., breath, life.	<i>brāhman</i> n., devotion; sacred word (of God); sacred knowledge; world-spirit.
<i>prāṇin</i> m., living creature.	
<i>prātar</i> adv., early, in the morning.	
<i>prāyaçcitta</i> n., penance, expiation.	
<i>prāyeṇa</i> adv., commonly.	
<i>prāsāda</i> m., palace.	
<i>priya</i> a., dear.	

<i>brahmán</i> (a personification of <i>bráhma</i>) m., the supreme All-Soul; Brahma, the Creator.	<i>bhāṣā</i> f., speech, language.
<i>brahmahan</i> (283) m., killing a Brāhman.	<i>bhāsvant</i> a., shining, brilliant.
<i>brāhmaṇa</i> m., priest, Brāhman.	√ <i>bhikṣ</i> (<i>bhikṣate</i>) beg, get by begging.
√ <i>brū</i> (<i>bravīti</i> , <i>brūtē</i>), speak, say; — + <i>pra</i> explain, teach, announce; — + <i>vi</i> explain, announce.	<i>bhikṣā</i> f., begging, alms.
	<i>bhikṣu</i> m., beggar; ascetic.
	√ <i>bhīd</i> (<i>bhīndāti</i> , <i>bhīnddhē</i>) split.
	√ <i>bhī</i> (<i>bībhetī</i>) fear; in caus. (<i>bhīṣyate</i> , <i>bhāyāyate</i>) terrify.
	√ <i>bhuj</i> (<i>bhūndkti</i> , <i>bhūñktē</i>) eat, enjoy; caus. (<i>bhojāyati</i>) feed; — + <i>upa</i> enjoy.
<i>bhakta</i> a., devoted, true.	- <i>bhuj</i> a., enjoying.
<i>bhakti</i> f., devotion; honor.	<i>bhujyu</i> m., <i>n. pr.</i> , a Vedic person.
√ <i>bhakṣ</i> (<i>bhakṣāyati</i>) eat.	<i>bhuvana</i> n., world.
<i>bhakṣana</i> n., eating.	√ <i>bhū</i> (<i>bhāvati</i> , - <i>te</i>) become; be, exist; — + <i>abhi</i> overpower; — + <i>pari</i> despise; — + <i>pra</i> arise; be mighty, rule; <i>valere</i> .
<i>bhagavant</i> a., honorable, blessed.	<i>bhū</i> f., earth, ground.
√ <i>bhaj</i> (<i>bhājati</i> , - <i>te</i>) divide; — + <i>vi</i> distribute.	<i>bhūta</i> part. of <i>bhū</i> ; as n. subst., being, creature.
√ <i>bhañj</i> (<i>bhañkti</i>) break, destroy.	<i>bhūti</i> f., prosperity, blessing.
<i>bhadra</i> a., good, pleasant; as n., fortune.	<i>bhūbhuj</i> m., king.
<i>bhaya</i> n., fear.	<i>bhūbhṛt</i> m., king; mountain.
<i>bharatakhaṇḍa</i> m., <i>n. pr.</i> , India.	<i>bhūmi</i> f., earth, ground, land.
<i>bhartṛ</i> m., supporter; preserver; lord, master; husband.	<i>bhūyas</i> (340) comp. adj., more; - <i>yas</i> adv., mostly.
<i>bhava</i> m., <i>n. pr.</i> , a name of Çiva.	<i>bhūṣaṇa</i> n., ornament.
<i>bhavant</i> , f. <i>bhavatī</i> ; in voc. <i>bhos</i> , f. <i>bhavati</i> ; used in respectful address instead of pronoun of 2nd person. Cf. § 264.	√ <i>bhr</i> (<i>bhāratī</i> , - <i>te</i>) support (lit. and fig.).
<i>bhasman</i> n., ashes.	<i>bhṛgukaccha</i> n., <i>n. pr.</i> , Baroch, a holy place in India.
√ <i>bhā</i> (<i>bhāti</i>) gleam, glance; — + <i>ā</i> or <i>vi</i> idem.	<i>bhṛtaka</i> m., servant.
<i>bhāga</i> m., part, piece, share.	<i>bhṛtya</i> m., servant.
- <i>bhāj</i> a., sharing.	<i>bhṛçam</i> adv., greatly, much.
<i>bhānu</i> m., sun.	<i>bheka</i> m., frog.
<i>bhāra</i> m., burden.	<i>bhoga</i> m., enjoyment.
<i>bhāryā</i> f., wife, woman.	<i>bhojana</i> n., meal.
√ <i>bhāṣ</i> (<i>bhāṣate</i>) speak; — + <i>prati</i> answer (acc. of pers.); — + <i>sam</i> converse.	<i>bhos</i> see <i>bhavant</i> .

√ *bhram* (*bhrāmati*, -te; *bhrām-yati*: 131) wander about, flit; — + *pari* idem.
bhrātr m., brother.
bhrū f., eyebrow.

—

makṣikā f., fly, gnat.
maghavan (270) m., Indra.
√ *majj* (*mājjati*) sink; — + *ni* idem.
maṇi m., jewel.
mati f., mind.
matimant a., shrewd, prudent.
matsya m., fish.
mathi same as *manthan*.
mad called stem of *aham*; cf. 352, 4.
√ *mād* (*mādyati*) get drunk; — + *pra* be careless.
madhu n., honey.
madhuparka m., sweet drink.
madhulih m., bee.
madhya a., middle; as n., middle; waist.
√ *man* (*mānyate*; *manutē*) think, suppose; — + *sam* honor.
manas n., mind.
manuṣya m., man (*homo*).
manoratha m., wish.
manohara a., agreeable; entrancing.
mantra m., sacred text; spell, charm.
mantrin m., minister; councillor.
√ *manth* (*mathnāti*) stir.
manthan (278) m., stirring-stick.
mandara m., n. pr., a mountain.
maraṇa n., death.
marut m., wind; pl., n. pr., the Storm-gods.
mastaka n., head.

mahant (261) a., great.
mahānasa n., kitchen.
mahārāja m., great king.
mahiṣa m., n. pr.
mahiṣī f., queen.
√ *mā* (*māti*; *mimītē*: 438) measure; — + *nis* work, create.
mā adv. and conj., not; used in prohibitions, etc., like Lat. *ne*, Greek *μη*; cf. 195, 486.
māṃsa n., flesh.
mātr f., mother.
mādhurya n., sweetness.
mānava m., man (*homo*).
mānasa n., sense; understanding.
mānuṣa, f. -ī, human.
mārga m., road, way, street.
mālā f., garland.
māsa m., month.
mītra n., friend.
mītradrūh (249) a., friend-betraying.
mīna m., fish.
√ *mīl* (*mīlati*) wink; + *ni* close the eyes.
muktā f., pearl.
mukti f., salvation, deliverance.
mukha n., mouth, face.
mukhya a., principal, first.
√ *muc* (*muñcāti*: 110) free, release, let fly, shoot; *muktvā*, without (312).
√ *mud* (*mōdate*) rejoice; — + *anu* allow.
muni m., sage; ascetic.
√ *muṣ* (*muṣṇāti*) steal, rob.
musala m. n., club, pestle.
√ *muh* (*mūhyati*) be confused or dazed or stupid.
mūrdhaga a., on the head.

mūrdhan m., head.
mūla n., root.
√ *mṛ* (*mriyāte*: 155) die; caus. (*mārāyati*) kill.
mṛga m., wild animal; gazelle.
√ *mṛgaya* (den.: *mṛgāyate*) hunt for, seek.
mṛgayā f., chase, hunting.
√ *mṛj* (*mārṣti*: 423) rub, wipe; caus. (*mārjāyoti*) rub off, polish; — + *apa*, *pari* or *pra*, wipe off.
mṛta, part. of *mṛ*, dead, fallen.
mṛtyu m., death.
mṛd f., earth, dirt.
mekhalā f., girdle.
megha m., cloud.
mokṣa m., deliverance; salvation.
moha m., infatuation.

—

ya (231) rel. pron., used as subst. and adj., who, which, what; cf. 234 ff.
√ *yaj* (*yājati*, -te) sacrifice (acc. pers., instr. rei); caus. (*yājāyati*) make to sacrifice, offer sacrifice for (acc.).
yajus n., sacrificial formula, text.
yajña m., sacrifice.
yajñiya a., suitable for sacrificing.
√ *yat* (*yātate*) strive after (dat.).
yatas adv., whence; wherefore.
yati m., ascetic.
yatna ra., exertion.
yatra adv., where, whither.
yathā adv., in which way; as.
yadā adv., when, if.
yadi adv., if.
√ *yam* (*yacchati*: 100) furnish, give; — + *ud* undertake; — + *ni* or

dain, fix, appoint; + *pra* give, give in marriage.
yamunā f., n. pr., the river Jumna.
yavana m., Greek, barbarian.
yaśas n., glory, fame.
yaṣṭi f., stick, staff.
√ *yā* (*yāti*) go; with abstracts, come into such and such a state; — + *ā* approach.
yātrā f., march, journey; support.
yāma m., watch of the night.
yāvānt a., how much or many; *yāvāt* as adv., as long as, while; as soon as.
yuga n., age of the world.
yugma n., pair.
√ *yuj* (*yunakti*, *yukte*) join, yoke, harness; caus. (*yojāyati*) idem; — + *ni* place, appoint, establish, -caus. set (as jewels); — + *pra* arrange; use.
yuddha n., battle.
√ *yudh* (*yūdhate*) fight (instr.).
yuvati f. to *yuvan*.
yuvan (269) a., young; f. *yuvati*.
yuṣmad called stem of *yūyam*; as stem in cpds. (352, 4.), you.
yūpa m., sacrificial post.
yūyam (226) pron., you.

—

√ *rakṣ* (*rakṣati*) protect.
rakṣaṇa n., protection.
rakṣitr m., protector.
√ *rac* (*racdyati*) arrange, compose (a literary work).
raju f., cord.
√ *rañj* + *anu* (*anurājyati*, -te) be inclined or devoted to (loc.).
raṇa m. n., battle.
ratna n., jewel.

ratha m., wagon.
rathyā f., street.
 √*rabh* (*rābhate*) grasp; — + *ā* take hold on, begin.
 √*ram* (*rāmate*) amuse oneself; — + *vi* (*virāmati*) cease (abl.).
raçmi m., ray; rein.
rasa m., taste, feeling.
rasavant a., tasteful.
rākṣasa m., demon.
 √*rāj* (*rājati*, -te) direct, rule; shine; be illustrious.
rājan m., king.
rājya n., kingdom.
rātri f., night.
 √*rādh* (*rādhnoti*) succeed; — + *apa* do wrong.
rāma m., n. pr., a hero.
rāmāyaṇa n., a noted poem.
rāvaṇa m., n. pr., a demon.
rāçi m., heap.
 √*ru* (*rāuti*: 410) cry, scream; — + *vi* idem.
 √*ruc* (*rócate*) please (dat., gen.).
ruj f., sickness, disease.
 √*rud* (*róditi*: 429) weep.
ruddha, part. of *rudh*, besieged, surrounded; suffused.
 √*rudh* (*ruṇāddhi*, *ruṇddhē*) obstruct, check, besiege; — + *upa* besiege.
rudhira n., blood.
 √*rūh* (*róhati*) rise, spring up, grow; caus. (*rohāyati*, *ropāyati*) make rise or grow, plant; — + *ava* descend; — + *ā* climb, mount, ascend; — + *pra* grow up.
rūkṣa a., harsh, rough.

rūpa n., form, beauty.
rūpaka n., gold-piece.
rāi (277) m., rarely f., possessions, wealth.
rohiṇī f., n. pr.
lakṣa n., a hundred thousand.
lakṣmī (276) f., goddess of fortune.
 √*lag* (*lāgati*) attach, hang, cling.
laghu, f. -ghu or -ghvī, a., light; small, little.
laṅkā f., n. pr., Ceylon.
 √*lap* (*lāpati*) prate; — + *vi* complain.
 √*labh* (*lābhate*) receive; take; caus. (*lambhāyati*) make receive, give.
lalāṭa n., forehead.
lavaṇa n., salt.
lāṅgala n., plough.
lābha m., acquisition, gain.
 √*likh* (*likhāti*) scratch, write.
 √*lip* (*līpāti*) smear.
 √*lih* (*lēḥi*, *līḥē*: 427) lick; — + *ava* idem.
 √*luṅṭh* (*luṅṭhāyati*) + *nis* rob.
 √*lup* (*lumpāti*) break to pieces; devastate; plunder.
 √*lubh* (*lūbhyati*) covet (dat., loc.).
lekhana n., writing, copying.
loka m., world; sing. and pl., people.
lobha m., desire, avarice.
loman n., hair.
loha n., metal; iron.
vaṅça m., race, family.
vakra a., crooked, bent.

vakṣas n., chest, breast.
 √*vac* (*vakṭi*: 415) speak, say; name; caus. (*vācāyati*) make (a written leaf) speak, i. e. read.
vaṅij m., merchant.
vatsa m., calf.
 √*vad* (*vādati*) speak, say; — + *abhi* in caus. (*abhivādāyati*) greet; — + *vi* (mid.) dispute, argue.
vadha m., killing, murder.
vadhū f., woman; wife.
vana n., woods, forest.
vanavāsin a., forest-dwelling.
 √*vand* (*vāndate*) greet, honor.
 √*vap* (*vāpati*) scatter; sow.
vapus n., body; figure.
vayam (223) pron., we.
vayas n., age.
1varā m., suitor, bridegroom.
2vāra m., choice, privilege; favor.
3vara a., best; better (w. abl.: than).
varāha m., boar.
varuṇa m., n. pr., a god.
varṇa m., color; caste.
 √*varṇaya* (*varṇāyati*) describe, portray.
vartin a., abiding, being.
varṣa n., year.
vallabha a., dear.
 √*vaç* (*vāsti*) wish.
 √*vas* (*vāsati*) dwell; — + *ni* inhabit, dwell; — + *pra* go away on a journey; — + *prati* inhabit.
vasati f., dwelling.
vasu n., wealth, money.
vasudeva m., n. pr.
vastra n., garment.
 √*vah* (*vāhati*) tr., carry, bear; intr., proceed; flow; blow.
vā encl., or.
vāc f., voice; word.
vācya a., blameworthy, culpable.
vāṅjya n., trade.
vāta m., wind.
vānaprastha m., a Brāhman in the third stage of his life.
vāpī f., cistern.
vāyasa m., crow.
vāyu m., wind.
vāri n., water.
vi adv., apart, away, out.
viṅça (334) a., twentieth.
viṅçati (332) num., twenty.
viṅçatitama (334) a., twentieth.
vikramāditya a., n. pr., a king.
 √*vij* (*vijāti*) tremble; — + *ud* in caus. (*udvejayati*) terrify.
vitta n., possessions; wealth.
 √*vid* (*vētti*; *vēda*: 416—417) know, consider; caus. (*vedāyati*) inform (dat.); — + *ni* caus., idem.
 √*2vid* (*vindāti*, -te) find, acquire.
 -*vid* a., knowing.
vidyā f., knowledge, learning.
vidvāns a., knowing, wise.
vidviṣṭa pass. part. of *vi-dviṣ*, detested.
vidhi m., rule, fate; Brahma.
vidheya a., obedient.
vinaya m., obedience.
vinā prep., without (with instr. or acc., often postpos).
vipāka m., ripening; recompense.
vipra m., Brāhman.

vibhu, f. -*bhvī*, a. pervading, far-reaching; omnipresent, mighty.
vivāha m., wedding, marriage.
vivekin a., shrewd.
 √*viç* (*viçāti*) enter; — + *sam-ā* approach; — + *upa* seat oneself; — + *pra* enter, penetrate.
viç m. pl., people; the Vāiçya-caste.
viçīṣṭa part. of *vi-çis*, excellent, remarkable.
viçruta part. of *vi-çru*, famous.
viçva (231) a., all (Vedic).
viçvāsa m., trust, confidence.
viṣa n., poison.
viṣṇu m., n. pr., a god.
vihaga m., bird.
vihita part. of *vi-dhā*, ordained.
 √*lvṛ* (*vṛṇōti*, *vṛṇutē*) cover, surround; — + *ā* cover; — + *apa-ā* open; — + *vi* explain; manifest; — + *sam* shut.
 √*lvṛ* (*vṛṇōti*; *varāyati*, -*te*) choose, select.
vṛka m., wolf.
vṛkṣa m., tree.
 √*vṛt* (*vārtate*) turn; exist, subsist, be, become; — + *ni* return home; — + *pra* get a-going, break out, arise; continue; caus. (act.) continue (trans.).
vṛtta n., conduct.
vṛttānta m., state of affairs; news.
vṛtra m., n. pr., a demon.
vṛddha part. of *vṛdh*, old.
 √*vṛdh* (*vārdhate*) grow; caus. (*vārdhāyati*, -*te*) make grow; bring up.

√*vṛṣ* (*vāṛṣati*) rain, give rain; fig., shower down; overwhelm.
veda m., science, knowledge; esp. sacred knowledge, holy writ.
vedanā f., pain.
vedānta m., a system of philosophy.
vedī f., altar.
vāi assev. particle, to be sure, in sooth; often untranslated.
vāiçya m., man of the third caste.
vyāñjana n., spice.
 √*vyath* in caus. (*vyathāyati*) torment.
 √*vyadh* (*vidhyati*) hit, pierce.
vyalika a., false, wrong.
vyavahāra m., trial, law-suit; trade.
vyākaraṇa n., grammar.
vyāghra m., tiger.
vyādha m., hunter.
vyādhi m., disease, illness.
vyādhitā a., sick, ill.
vyāsa m., n. pr.
 √*vraj* (*vṛājati*, -*te*) proceed; — + wander forth; become an ascetic.
vraṇa m., wound.
vrata n., vow, obligation; duty.
 √*vaṅs* (*vaṅsati*) praise; proclaim; — + *pra* proclaim.
 √*çak* (*çaknōti*) be able; sometimes pass., cf. 322.
çaka m., Scythian.
çakaṭa m., car.
çakuntalā f., n. pr.
çāṅkā f., hesitation.
çata (332-333) n., a hundred.
çatatama a., hundredth.

çatru m., enemy.
çabda m., sound, noise, word.
 √*çam* (*çāmyati*) become quiet, be extinguished, go out.
çayyā f., bed, couch.
çara m., arrow.
çaraṇa n., protection.
çarad f., autumn; year.
çarira n., body.
çarva m., n. pr., a name of Çiva.
çākhā f., branch; edition, redaction.
çānti f., repose.
 √*çās* (*çāste*) command; rule; punish.
çāstr m., governor, punisher.
çāstra n., science; text-book.
 √*çikṣ* (*çikṣate*) learn.
çikhara m., summit.
çiras n., head.
çiva a., beneficent, gracious; blessed; as m., n. pr., a god.
çiçu m., child.
 √*çiç* (*çināṣti*) leave, leave remaining; — + *ava* remain over, survive; — + *ud* idem; — + *vi* set apart, distinguish.
çiçya m., pupil, scholar.
 √*çī* (*çēte*: 409) lie; sleep; — + *adhi* lie asleep on (acc.).
çīta a., cold.
 √*çuc* (*çōcati*) grieve, sorrow.
çuci a., pure, clean.
çunaḥçepa m., n. pr.
 √*çubh* (*çōbhate*) be brilliant, shine.
çubha a., good; splendid.
 √*çuṣ* (*çūsyati*) dry up.
çūdra m., man of the fourth caste.
çūdratva n., condition of a Çūdra.

çūra m., hero.
çṛgāla m., jackal.
çeṣa m. n., rest, remainder.
çeṣa m., a fabulous snake supporting the earth.
 √*çram* (*çṛāmyati*: 131) become weary.
çrama m., pains, trouble.
çṛāddha n., oblation to the Manes (cf. in Voc. 16).
 √*çri* + *ā* (*āçṛāyate*) go for protection, take refuge with (acc.).
çrī f., luck, fortune, riches; as n. pr., goddess of fortune; as prefix to proper names, famous, honorable, etc.
çṛimant a., rich; famous.
 √*çru* (*çṛṇōti*, *çṛṇutē*: 391) hear; in caus. (*çṛāvāyati*) make hear, i. e. recite, proclaim (acc. pers.).
çruta part. of *çru*; as n., learning.
çruti f., hearing; holy writ.
çreyas a., better; best; *çreyas* as n., salvation.
çvan (269) m., dog.
çvaçura m., father-in-law.
çvaçrū f., mother-in-law.
çvas adv., to-morrow.
 √*çvas* (*çōdsiti*: 429) breathe; — + *sam-ā* breathe gently: revive; — + *vi* be confident; trust (gen. or loc.).
çveta a., white.
 √*çatrin*çat (329) num., thirty-six.
çadaçiti (329) num., eighty-six.
ças (332) num., six.
çasṭi (332) num., sixty.
çasṭha, f. -ī (334), a., sixth.

ṣoḍaṣa (332) num., sixteen.
 ———
 saṃyukta part. of sam-yuj, provided with.
 saṃvatsara m., year.
 saṃcaya m., doubt.
 sakṛt adv., once.
 sakthan (sakthi: 275) n., thigh.
 sakhi (274) m., friend.
 sakhī f., female companion, friend.
 sajjā a., ready.
 √sañj (sājati; sajjāte: cf. in Voc. 22) hang on, be fastened on (loc.).
 satkāra m., hospitality.
 sattra n., sacrifice.
 satya n., truth, righteousness.
 √sad (sīdati) sit; settle down; be overcome or exhausted; — + ā approach; — + sam-ā seat oneself; caus. (-sādāyati) meet, encounter; — + ni sit down; — + pra be favorable.
 sadā adv., always.
 sadṛṣa, f. -i, a., similar; worthy.
 saṃdigdha a., doubtful; unsteady.
 saṃdhyā f., twilight.
 sant, part. of las, being, existing; good; as m., good man; as f. satī, good woman, especially a widow who immolates herself.
 sapta (332) num., seven.
 saptati (332) num., seventy.
 saptadaṣa (332) num., seventeen.
 sabhā f., council, meeting, court.
 sam adv., along with; completely.
 samakṣam adv., before, in the presence of (gen.).
 samartha a., capable, able.

samāgama m., meeting, encounter.
 samāja m., convention, company.
 samidh f., fagot.
 samīpa a., near; as n., vicinity, nearness, presence.
 samudra m., ocean.
 samunnati f., height, elevation; high position.
 sameta a., provided with.
 sampūrṇa part. of 1pṛ + sam, full.
 samyak adv., well, properly.
 samrāj m., great king; emperor.
 sarit f., river.
 sarga m., creation.
 sarpa m., snake.
 sarva (231) a., all.
 sarvatra a., everywhere.
 savitṛ m., n. pr., the Sun-god Savitar; sun.
 √sah (sāhate) endure.
 saha adv., together; prep., often postpos., with, along with, (instr.).
 sahacara m., companion; -ī f., wife.
 sahasā adv., suddenly, quickly.
 sahasra n., a., thousand.
 sahāya m., companion, helper.
 sāksin m., witness.
 sādhana n., means, device.
 sādhu m., holy man, saint.
 sāman n., Vedic melody, song; pl., the Sāmaveda.
 sāmanta m., vassal.
 sāmpratam adv., at present.
 sāyam adv., at evening.
 sārasa m., crane.
 sīha m., lion.

√sic (siñcāti) drip, drop, moisten; — + abhi anoint as king.
 √1sidh (sēdhati) repel; — + prati hold back; forbid.
 √2sidh (sīdhyati) succeed; in caus. (sādāyati) perform; acquire.
 sindhu m., n. pr., the Indus.
 sīman f., border, boundary; outskirts.
 su adv., well; easy; very.
 √su (sunōti, sunutē) press.
 sukha n., fortune, luck, happiness.
 sundara, f. -ī, a., beautiful.
 sumanas a., favorably-minded; as f., flower.
 surāpa m., drunkard.
 suvarṇa n., gold.
 suhṛd m., friend.
 √sū (sūtē) generate, bring forth; — + pra generate.
 sūkta n., Vedic hymn.
 sūta m., driver, charioteer.
 sūda m., cook.
 sūrya m., sun.
 √sr (sārati) flow; — + anu follow up; — + apa go away; in caus. (-sārāyati) drive away.
 √srj (srjāti) let go, create; — + ud let loose or out; raise (the voice).
 √srp (sārpāti) move; — + pra idem.
 srṣṭi f., creation.
 setu m., bridge, dike.
 senā f., army.
 √sev (sēvate) serve, honor; — + ni dwell; devote oneself to; attend.
 sēnika m., soldier.
 sēnīya n., army.

soma m., the intoxicating fermented juice of the Soma-plant.
 skandha m., shoulder.
 √stu (stāuti: 411) praise.
 stuti f., song of praise; praise.
 √str (strṇōti, strṇutē; strṇāti, strṇitē) scatter, strew; — + upa scatter, bestrew.
 stena m., thief.
 stotra n., song of praise.
 strī (276) f., woman.
 √sthā (tiṣṭhati) stand, intr.; be in or on, etc., be situated; caus. (sthāpāyati) put, place; appoint; stop; — + adhi mount, stand over; rule, govern; — + anu follow out, accomplish; (cf. also p. 96, last note); — + ud arise, rise (cf. Voc. 40); — + upa approach, reach; — + pra mid., start off; in caus. (act.), send; — + sam in caus., cause to remain
 sthāna n., place, locality; stead.
 sthita part. of sthā; cf. 290, end.
 sthiti f., condition.
 √snā (snāti) bathe.
 snātaka m., one who has performed the ablutions customary at the end of religious pupillage.
 snāna n., bathing, bath.
 snāyu m., tendon, bowstring.
 snigdha part. of snih, affectionate.
 √snih (snihyati) feel inclined to, love (gen., loc.).
 snuṣā f., daughter-in-law.
 √sprṣ (sprṣāti) touch.
 √sprh (sprhāyati) desire (dat.).
 sma encl., slightly assev.; often accompanies a present tense,

giving it the force of an historical tense.	<i>hariṇa</i> m., gazelle.
√ <i>smṛ</i> (<i>smárati</i>) remember; think on; call to mind; teach; esp. in pass. <i>smaryate</i> 'it is taught, i. e. traditional'.	<i>hala</i> m. n., plough.
<i>smṛti</i> f., tradition; law-book.	<i>havis</i> n., oblation.
<i>sraja</i> f., garland.	<i>hasta</i> m., hand.
<i>sraṣṭṛ</i> m., creator.	<i>hastin</i> m., elephant.
<i>sva</i> a., own; one's own.	√ <i>lhā</i> (<i>jāhāti</i>) abandon, give up; neglect.
√ <i>svāñj</i> (<i>svájate</i>) embrace; — + <i>pari</i> (Cf. Voc. 21) idem.	√ <i>2hā</i> (<i>jihīte</i> : 438) move.
<i>svadr̥ṣ</i> a., similar.	√ <i>hi</i> (<i>hindōti</i>) send; — + <i>pra</i> idem.
√ <i>svap</i> (<i>svápiti</i> : 429) sleep.	<i>hi</i> assev. particle, surely; causal, for, because.
<i>svapna</i> m., sleep, dream.	√ <i>hiṅs</i> (<i>hindāsti</i>) injure, destroy.
<i>svayam</i> pron., own self, self.	<i>hita</i> part. of <i>1dhā</i> ; as adj., advantageous; as n., advantage.
<i>svayambhū</i> a., self-existent; as m., epithet of Brahma.	<i>himavant</i> a., snowy; as m., the Himālaya Mts.
<i>svarga</i> m., heaven.	<i>hīna</i> part. of <i>1hā</i> , abandoned; wanting in; w. instr., without.
<i>svasṛ</i> f., sister.	√ <i>hu</i> (<i>juhōti</i> , <i>juhutē</i>) sacrifice.
<i>svādu</i> a., sweet.	<i>hutabhuj</i> (nom. - <i>bhuk</i>) m., fire.
<i>svādhyāya</i> m., private recitation of sacred texts.	√ <i>hū</i> see <i>hvā</i> .
<i>svāmin</i> m., possessor, lord.	√ <i>hr̥</i> (<i>hárati</i>) take away; steal; plunder; — + <i>apa</i> idem; — + <i>ā</i> act. and mid., fetch, bring; — + <i>ud-ā</i> cite, mention; — + <i>praty-ā</i> bring back; — + <i>ud</i> save, rescue.
<i>svāiram</i> adv., at pleasure.	<i>hr̥d</i> (281) n., heart.
<i>hata</i> part. of <i>han</i> .	<i>hr̥daya</i> n., heart.
√ <i>han</i> (<i>hánti</i> : 419) kill; caus. (<i>ghā-táyati</i>), have killed; — + <i>apa</i> remove; — + <i>abhi</i> smite; — + <i>sam-ā</i> wound; — + <i>ni</i> kill; — + <i>prati</i> hinder; injure, offend; — + <i>sam</i> write.	√ <i>hr̥ṣ</i> (<i>hárṣati</i> , <i>hr̥ṣyati</i>) rejoice, be delighted; — + <i>pra</i> idem.
- <i>han</i> (283) a., killing.	<i>he</i> interj., O, ho.
<i>hanu</i> f., jaw.	<i>hemanta</i> m., winter.
<i>hanumant</i> m., n. pr., a monkey-king.	<i>hrasvam</i> adv., near by.
<i>hantr̥</i> m., killer, slayer.	√ <i>hrī</i> (<i>jihréti</i>) be ashamed.
<i>hari</i> m., n. pr., a god.	<i>hrī</i> f., modesty, bashfulness.
	√ <i>hvā</i> (<i>hváyati</i>) call; in caus. (<i>hvā-yáyati</i>) have called; — + <i>ā</i> call, summon.

II. English-Sanskrit.

abandon, to: <i>tyaj</i> ; <i>1hā</i> .	answer, to: <i>bhāṣ</i> + <i>prati</i> .
able: <i>samartha</i> ; <i>ṣakya</i> .	appoint, to: <i>klp</i> , caus.; <i>yuj</i> + <i>ni</i> .
able, to be: <i>ṣak</i> .	approach, to: <i>gam</i> + <i>ā</i> ; <i>yā</i> + <i>ā</i> .
according to: <i>anu</i> , postpos.	argument (reason): <i>vāc</i> f.
acquire, to: <i>labh</i> ; <i>āp</i> .	arise, to: <i>bhū</i> ; (get up) <i>sthā</i> + <i>ud</i> .
Açvins: <i>açvināu</i> , du.	arm: <i>bāhu</i> m.
address, to: <i>brū</i> .	army: <i>senā</i> f.
adore, to: <i>nam</i> + <i>pra</i> .	arrive, to: <i>gam</i> + <i>ā</i> .
adorn, to: <i>1kr</i> + <i>alam</i> .	arrow: <i>ṣara</i> m.; <i>iṣu</i> m.
advantage: <i>hita</i> n.; <i>kalyāṇa</i> n.	Aryan: <i>dviya</i> m.; <i>dviyāti</i> m.
adversity; <i>duḥkha</i> n.	ascetic: <i>muni</i> m.; <i>yati</i> m.; <i>pari-vrāj</i> m.; <i>tapasvin</i> m.; — to become an a., <i>vraj</i> + <i>pra</i> .
afraid, to be: <i>bhī</i> .	ashamed, to be: <i>hrī</i> .
afterward: <i>tatas</i> .	ashes: <i>bhasman</i> n.
again: <i>punar</i> .	ask, to (inquire): <i>prach</i> .
against: <i>prati</i> .	ask for, to: <i>arthaya</i> .
age: <i>vayas</i> n.	assembly: <i>sabhā</i> f.; <i>pariṣad</i> f.
all: <i>sarva</i> ; (entire) <i>viçva</i> .	astronomy: <i>jyotiṣa</i> n.
all-protecting: <i>viçvapā</i> .	attain, to: <i>labh</i> ; <i>2vid</i> ; <i>1aṣ</i> ; <i>āp</i> ; <i>āp</i> + <i>ava</i> or <i>pra</i> .
allow, to: <i>jñā</i> + <i>anu</i> .	attainment: <i>lābha</i> m.
alms: <i>bhikṣā</i> f.	author: <i>karṭṛ</i> m.; (of Vedic hymns, etc.) <i>draṣṭṛ</i> m.
alone (adv.): <i>eva</i> .	axe; <i>paraçu</i> m.
also: <i>api</i> .	
altar: <i>vedī</i> f.	bad: <i>pāpa</i> .
although: <i>api</i> .	bank: <i>tīra</i> n.
always: <i>sadā</i> , <i>nityam</i> .	banner: <i>ketu</i> m.
amuse oneself, to: <i>ram</i> .	barbarian: <i>yavana</i> m.
ancient: <i>purāṇa</i> .	bathe, to: <i>snā</i> .
and: <i>ca</i> , postpos.; <i>tathā</i> .	
anger: <i>kopa</i> m.; <i>krodha</i> m.	
animal: <i>tiryāṅc</i> m.	
announce, to: <i>1vid</i> + <i>ni</i> , caus.	

battle: <i>raṇa</i> m. n.; <i>yuddha</i> n.	born, to be: <i>jan</i> ; <i>jan + ud.</i>
be, to: <i>bhū</i> ; <i>vṛt</i> ; (be situated) <i>sthā</i> .	both: <i>ubha</i> du.
bear, to: <i>bhṛ</i> ; (bring forth) <i>sū</i> ; <i>sū + pra</i> .	bow, to: <i>nam</i> .
bear: <i>ṛkṣa</i> m.	boy: <i>bāla</i> m.; <i>kumāra</i> m.
beat, to: <i>taḍ</i> .	Brāhman: <i>brāhmaṇa</i> m.; <i>devīja</i> m.; <i>dvijāti</i> m.; <i>vipra</i> m.
beautiful: <i>sundara</i> ; <i>rūpavant</i> .	branch: <i>śākhā</i> f.
beauty: <i>rūpa</i> n.	brave: <i>dhīra</i> .
become, to: <i>bhū</i> ; <i>vṛt</i> .	breast: <i>uras</i> n.; <i>vakṣas</i> n.
bee: <i>alī</i> m.; <i>madhulīh</i> m.	bridegroom: <i>varā</i> m.
beg, to: <i>bhikṣ</i> .	brilliance: <i>tejas</i> n.
begin, to: <i>rabh + ā</i> .	bring, to: <i>nī + ā</i> ; <i>hr + ā</i> .
behind: <i>paścāt</i> (w. gen.).	broad: <i>pṛthu</i> ; <i>uru</i> .
behold, to: <i>ikṣ</i> .	brother: <i>bhrātṛ</i> m.
Benares: <i>kāṣī</i> f.	burn, to: <i>dah</i> .
bend, to: <i>nam</i> .	business: <i>kārya</i> n.
benefit, to: <i>lṛ + upa</i> .	but: <i>tu</i> ; <i>kimtu</i> ; <i>punar</i> .
beseech, to: <i>pad + pra</i> .	call, to: <i>hvā</i> ; (name) <i>vac</i> ; <i>vad</i> .
besiege, to: <i>rudh</i> ; <i>rudh + upa</i> .	capable: <i>samartha</i> .
best: <i>creṣṭha</i> ; <i>jyeṣṭha</i> .	caste: <i>jāti</i> f.
betake oneself, to: <i>yā</i> ; <i>ṣri + ā</i> .	cattle: <i>go</i> m. pl.
better: <i>creyas</i> ; <i>jyāyas</i> .	cease, to: <i>ṣam</i> ; <i>ram + vi</i> .
bind, to: <i>bandh</i> .	celebrated: <i>viçruta</i> ; <i>çrīmant</i> .
biped: <i>dvipad</i> .	chain: <i>hāra</i> m.
bird: <i>vihaga</i> m.; <i>pakṣin</i> m.	charioteer; <i>sūta</i> m.
birth: <i>jāti</i> f.; <i>janman</i> n.	charm: <i>kānti</i> f..
black: <i>krṣṇa</i> .	check, to: <i>dam</i> , caus.; <i>rudh</i> .
blame, to: <i>nind</i> ; <i>lṛ + tīras</i> .	chest: <i>vakṣas</i> n.; <i>uras</i> n.
blessed: <i>bhagavant</i> ; (as prefix) <i>çrī</i> .	child: <i>bāla</i> m.; <i>çiçu</i> m.
blood: <i>rudhira</i> n.	choose, to: <i>çvr</i> .
blow, to (intr.): <i>vah</i> .	cistern: <i>vāpī</i> f.
boat: <i>nāu</i> f.	citizen: <i>pāura</i> m.
body: <i>çarīra</i> n.; <i>vapus</i> n.; <i>kāya</i> m.; (heavenly: sun, etc.): <i>jyotis</i> n.	city: <i>nagara</i> n.; -ī f.; <i>pur</i> f.
bone: <i>asthan</i> n.	cleverness: <i>buddhi</i> f.
book: (manuscript) <i>pustaka</i> n.; (work) <i>grantha</i> m.	climb, to: <i>ruh + ā</i> .
	close, to: <i>lṛ + sam</i> ; <i>ldhā + api</i> .
	cloud: <i>megha</i> m.
	coachman: <i>sūta</i> m.
	come, to: <i>gam + ā</i> ; <i>yā + ā</i> ; <i>i +</i>

<i>abhi</i> or <i>ā</i> ; come out: <i>gam + nis</i> ;	daughter: <i>kanyā</i> f.; <i>putrī</i> f.; <i>duhitṛ</i> f.
<i>yā + nis</i> .	day: <i>divasa</i> m.; <i>dina</i> n.; <i>ahan</i> n.; d. by d.: <i>dine dine</i> ; <i>pratyaham</i> ;
command, to: <i>diç + ā</i> ; <i>jñā + ā</i> caus.	a day and a night: <i>ahorātra</i> n.
command: <i>ajñā</i> f.; <i>nideça</i> m.	dead: <i>mṛta</i> ; <i>vipanna</i> .
commit, to: <i>car + ā</i> ; <i>lṛ</i> .	decide, to (settle): <i>nī + nis</i> .
companion: <i>sahāya</i> m.; <i>sahacāra</i> m.	deed: <i>karman</i> n.
company: <i>samāja</i> m.	deity: <i>devatā</i> f.
compose, to: <i>rac</i> .	delicate: <i>taruṇa</i> .
conduct: <i>vṛtta</i> n.	delight, to (tr.): <i>tuṣ</i> , caus.
confine, to: <i>rudh + ni</i> .	deliverance: <i>mukti</i> f.
conquer, to: <i>ji</i> .	demon: <i>rākṣasa</i> m.
consecrate, to: <i>nī + upa</i> .	depart, to: <i>i + apa</i> .
consider, to: <i>cint</i> ; <i>ivid</i> .	describe, to: <i>varṇaya</i> .
consort: <i>patnī</i> f.	desire, to: <i>lubh</i> .
cook, to: <i>pac</i> .	destroy, to: <i>bhañj</i> .
copying: <i>lekhana</i> n.	despise, to: <i>man + ava</i> ; <i>bhū + pari</i> .
cord, sacred: <i>upavīta</i> n.	determine, to: <i>ci + nis</i> or <i>vi-nis</i> .
count, to: <i>gaṇaya</i> .	devoted: <i>bhakta</i> ; <i>smigdha</i> .
courageous: <i>tejasvin</i> .	devotion: <i>bhakti</i> f.
course: <i>gati</i> f.	die: <i>akṣa</i> m.
cover, to: <i>lṛ</i> (mid.); <i>lṛ + sam</i> (mid.).	die, to: <i>mṛ</i> ; <i>i + pra</i> ; <i>pad + vi</i> .
cow: <i>dhenu</i> f.; <i>go</i> f.	difficult: <i>durlabha</i> ; <i>duṣkara</i> .
cowherd: <i>gopa</i> m.	dig, to: <i>khan</i> .
create, to: <i>çṛj</i> .	diligence: <i>udyoga</i> m.
creator: <i>dhātṛ</i> m.; <i>çraṣṭṛ</i> m.	diligently: <i>bhṛçam</i> .
creature: <i>prāṇin</i> m.; <i>jagat</i> n.	disappear, to: <i>naç + vi</i> .
crescent: <i>kalā</i> f.	disease: <i>ruç</i> f.; <i>vyādhi</i> m.
cross, to: <i>ṭṛ</i> .	dismount, to: <i>ruh + ava</i> .
crow: <i>vāyasa</i> m.	disown, to: <i>khyā + prati-ā</i> .
curds: <i>dadhan</i> n.	dispute, to: <i>vad + vi</i> .
cut, to: <i>kṛt</i> ; <i>chid</i> .	distress, to: <i>du</i> .
cut off, to: <i>kṛt + ava</i> ; <i>chid + ava</i> .	distribute, to: <i>bhaj + vi</i> .
	divine: <i>divya</i> .
	do, to: <i>lṛ</i> ; <i>car + sam-ā</i> .
daily: <i>nitya</i> ; (adv.) <i>nityam</i> ; <i>pratyaham</i> .	domestic: <i>gṛhya</i> .
dancing: <i>nṛtta</i> n.	dog: <i>çvan</i> m.; <i>çunī</i> f.
	door: <i>dvār</i> f.

doorkeeper: *dvāḥsthā* m.
dove: *kapota* m.
draw, to: *vah*.
drink, to: *1pā*.
driver: *sūta* m.
drop, to: *sic*.
drop: *bindu* m.
dwell, to: *3vas*; *vas + ni*; dwell
on (fig.): *sañj*.

ear: *kārṇa* m.
earth: *prthivī* f.; *bhū* f.; *bhūmi* f.
east, eastern: *prāñc*; the E.: *prācī*
f., sc. *diç*.
eat, to: *ad*; *2aç*; *bhakç*; *bhuj*.
eating: *bhakçana* n.
eclipse, to: *1kṛ + tiras*.
eight: *açta*.
eighth: *açtama*.
eighty: *açtīti* f.
eightieth: *açtītītama*.
eldest: *jyestha*.
elephant: *gaja* m.; *hastin* m.
eleventh: *ekādaça*.
emerge, to: *tṛ + ud*.
eminent, to be: *çubh*.
emperor: *samrāj* m.
encompass, to: *1vṛ*; *chid + ava*.
end: *anta* m.
endure, to: *sah*.
enemy: *ari* m.; *çatru* m.; *dviç* m.
enjoy, to: *bhuj*.
enjoyment: *bhoga* m.
enter, to: *viç + pra*.
entrancing: *manohara*.
envoy: *dūta* m.
entrust, to: *1dā + pra*.
equip, to: *nah + sam*.
eulogy: *stotra* n.

even (adv.): *api*.
every: *sarva*.
evil (adj.): *pāpa*; (subst.) *pāpa* n.
exceedingly: *ati*.
explain, to: *brū + vi*; *1vṛ + vi*;
cakç + vi-ā.
exterminate, to: *chid + ud*.
eye: *netra* n.; *cakçus* n.; *akçan* n.;
locana n.

face: *mukha* n.
fagot: *samidh* f.
fair: *sundara*.
fall, to: *pat*; *pat + ni*; fall to
one's lot: *r*; fallen (killed):
patita; *mṛta*.
fame: *kīrti* f.; *yaças* n.
family: *vañça* m.
famous: *viçruta*.
fast (firm): *dr̥gha*.
fasten, to: *bandh*.
fat: *pīna*; *puçta*.
father: *janaka* m.; *pitr* m.
fault, to find: *1kṛ + tiras*.
faultless: *anavadya*.
fear: *bhaya* n.
field: *kçetra* n.
fifth: *pañcama*.
fight, to: *yudh*.
filled: *pūrṇa*; *sampūrṇa*.
finally: *ante*.
find, to: *2vid*.
finish, to: *āp + sam*.
fire: *agni* m.; *hutabhuj* m.
firewood: *samidh* f.
first: *prathama*; at first: *pra-*
thamam.
fish: *matsya* m.; *mīna* m.
fit, to: *yuj*.

five: *pañca*.
flee, to: *palāy*.
flit, to: *bhram*.
flock: *paçu* m. pl.
flower: *puçpa* n.; *sumanas* f.
fly, to: *pat*; fly up: *pat + ud*.
fodder: *ghāsa* m.
foe: *ari* m.; *çatru* m.
follow, to: *gam + anu*; *i + anu*.
fond, to be: *tuç*.
food: *anna* n.
foot: *pāda* m.; *pad* m.
force: *bala* n.
foreign: *para*.
forehead: *lalāṭa* n.
forest: *vana* n.
forest-dwelling: *vanavāsin*.
form, to: *1mā + nis*.
formula (sacrificial): *yajus* n.
fortune: *çrī* f., often pl.; goddess
of f.: *çrī* f.
forty: *catvāriñçat* f.
four: *çatur*.
free, to: *muc*.
friend: *mitra* n.; *sakhi* m.; *su-*
hyd m.
friend-betrayer: *mitradruh*.
front: *agra* n.; in f. of: *agre*,
samakçam (gen.).
fruit: *phala* n.
fruitful: *phalavant*.
full: *pūrṇa*; *sampūrṇa*.

gain, to: *labh*.
garden: *udyāna* n.
garland: *mālā* f.; *sraj* f.
gate: *dvār* f.
gather, to: *ci + sam*.
gazelle: *hariṇa* m.; *mṛga* m.

generous: *dātṛ*.
get, to: *labh*; *1aç*; *āp*.
gift: *dāna* n.
gird, to: *nah + sam*.
girdle: *mekhalā* f.
girl: *kanyā* f.; *bālā* f.
give, to: *yam*; *1dā*.
giver: *dātṛ* m.
glance: *drç* f.
glory: *kīrti* f.; *yaças* n.
go, to: *car*: *yā*; *gam*; *i*; go on
(continue): *vṛt + pra*.
god: *deva* m.; goddess: *devī* f.
gold: *suvarṇa* n.
govern, to: *çās*; *rājyaṃ kṛ*.
good: *sādhu*; *sant*.
gracious: *çiva*.
graciousness: *kṛpā* f.
grain: *dhānya* n.
grammar: *vyākaraṇa* n.
grasp, to: *grah*.
graze, to: *car*.
great: *mahant*.
great king: *mahārāja* m.
greater: *mahīyas*; *adhika*.
greatly: *bahu*; *bhṛçam*.
greedy: *lubdha*.
Greek: *yavana* m.
greet, to: *vand*; *vad + abhi*, caus.
grieve, to: *du*.
ground: *bhūmi* f.; on the g.: *adhas*.
grind, to: *piç*.
guard, to: *rakç*; *gopāya*.
guest: *athiti* m.
guilt: *pāpa* n.; *enas* n.

hand: *kara* m.; *pāni* m.; *hasta* m.
hang, to: *sañj*; *lag*.
happiness: *sukha* n.

happy, to be: *mud*.
 hard to find: *durlabha*.
 harm, to: *lkr + apa*.
 hate, to: *dvīṣ*; *dvīṣ + pra*.
 bear, to: *gru*.
 heart: *hṛdaya* n.; *hṛd* n.
 heaven: *svarga* m.
 heavy: *guru*.
 hell: *naraka* m.
 here: *atra*; *iha*.
 hero: *çūra* m.; *vīra* m.
 hesitation: *çāṅkā* f.
 high: *ucchrita*.
 high water: *pūra* m.
 hold shut, to: *ldhā + api*.
 holy: *sādhu*.
 holy writ: *çruti* f.
 home (adv.); *grham*.
 honey: *madhu* n.
 honor, to: *pūj*; *nam*; *sev*.
 hope: *āçā* f.
 horse: *açva* m.
 house: *grha* n.: master of the h.,
grhastha m.
 householder: *grhastha* m.
 house-priest: *purohita* m.
 how?: *katham*.
 human: *mānuṣa*.
 hunter: *vyādha* m.
 hurl, to: *2as*; *kṣip*.
 husband: *pati* m.; *bhartṛ* m.
 hymn: *sūkta* n.

I: *aham*.
 impart, to: *lvid + ni, caus*.
 inclined, to be: *smih*.
 increase, to: *vṛdh*.
 India: *bharatakhanda* m.
 initiate, to: *nī + upa*.

injustice: *adharma* m.
 intelligence: *buddhi* f.
 iron: *loha* n.

jaw: *hanu* f.
 jewel: *maṇi* m.; *ratna* n.; *bhū-
 çaṇa* n.

kill, to: *mṛ, caus.*; *han*; *han, caus*.
 kindle, to: *idh*.
 king: *nṛpa* m.; *nṛpati* m.; *pā-
 rthiva* m.; *rājan* m.; *bhūbhuj*
 m.; *bhūbhṛt* m.
 kingdom: *rājya* n.
 know, to: *lvid*; *jñā*.
 knowledge: *vidyā* f.; *jñāna* n.

lament, to: *lap + vi*.
 land: *deça* m.
 language: *bhāṣā* f.
 last, at: *ante*.
 law: *dharma* m.; *vidhi* m.
 law-book: *smṛti* f.; *dharmaçā-
 stra* n.
 law-suit: *vyavahāra* m.
 lead, to: *nī*.
 leader: *netṛ*.
 learn, to: *gam + ava*; *lvid*; *i +
 adhi*.
 learned: *vidvāns*; *pañçita*; *kuçala*.
 learning: *vidyā* f.
 leather: *carman* n.
 leavings: *ucchiṣṭa* n.
 lesson: *adhyāya* m.
 lick, to: *lih*; *lih + ava*.
 life: *jivita* n.; *āyus* n.; *carita* n.
 light: *jyotis* n.
 light (not heavy): *laghu*.
 like: *iva*.

limb: *aṅga* n.
 lion: *siṅha* m.
 lip: *oṣṭha* m.
 listen, to: *gru*.
 live, to: *jiv*; *vṛt*; *an + pra*.
 long: *dīrgha*; (adv.) *ciram*.
 look at, to: *īkṣ + pra*.
 lord: *īçvara* m.; *pati* m.
 lotus: *padma* m. n.
 love, to: *smih*.
 love, god of l.: *kāma* m.
 lunar mansion: *nakṣatra* n.

maiden: *kanyā* f.; *bālā* f.
 maidservant: *dāsī* f.
 make, to: *lkr*.
 man (*vir*): *nara* m.; *pumāns* m.;
puruṣa m.; (*homo*): *jana* m.;
mānava m.; *manuṣya* m.; *nara* m.
 mankind: *jana* m. pl.
 many: *bahu*; *prabhūta*.
 march, to: *cal + pra*.
 marriage: *vivāha* m.
 marry, to: *nī + pari*.
 master: *bhartṛ* m.; *pati* m.
 mat: *kaṭa* m.
 means: *sādhana* n.
 meet, to (intr.): *gam + sam* (mid.).
 meeting: *sanāgama* m.
 melted butter: *ghṛta* n.
 mention, to: *hr + ud-ā*.
 merchant: *vaṇij* m.
 merit: *puṇya* n.
 mighty: *balin*; *balavant*; *vibhu*.
 milk, to: *duh*.
 milk: *kṣīra* n.; *payas* n.
 mind: *manas* n.; *mati* f.
 minister: *mantrin* m.

misfortune: *duḥkha* n.; *āpad* f.
 modesty: *hrī* f.
 moisten, to: *sic*.
 monarch; *saṁrāj* m.
 money: *dhana* n.; *vasu* n.
 month: *māsa* m.
 moon: *candramas* m.; *candra* m.;
indu m.
 mostly: *bhūyas*.
 morning, in the: *prātar*.
 mother: *mātṛ* f.; *ambā* f.
 mother-in-law: *çvaçṛū* f.
 mountain: *giri* m.; *parvata* m.
 mouth: *mukha* n.
 much: *prabhūta*; *bahu*.
 mouthful: *grāsa* m.
 murder, to: *mṛ, caus.*; *han*; *han,*
caus.
 must: *ark*; cf. § 320 and Exer-
 cise 30.

name: *nāman* n.; by n.: *nāma*.
 name, to: *vac*; *vad*; (reckon)
gaṇaya.
 neck: *kaṅṭha* m.
 neglect, to: *lhā*.
 net: *jāla* n.
 never: *na kadā + api, cid, or
 cana*.
 news: *vṛttānta* m.
 night: *rātri* f.
 no one: *na ka + api, cid, or cana*.
 north, northern: *udañc*; the N.:
udīci f., sc. *diç*.
 not: *na*; *mā*.
 nothing: *na kim + api, cid, or
 cana*.
 now: *adhunā*; *sāmpratam*.

O: *he*.
 obedient: *vidheya*.
 oblation: *havis* n.
 occur, to: *dr̥ç*, pass.; *2vid*, pass.
 ocean: *udadhi* m.; *samudra* m.
 offend, to: *han + prati*; *lhā*.
 offering (sacrificial): *havis* n.
 old: *vṛddha*; older: *jyāyas*.
 omnipresent: *vibhu*.
 once: *sakṛt*.
 one: *eka*.
 only: *eva*.
 opinion; *mati* f.; *mata* n.
 or; *vā*, postpos.; *athavā*.
 ordain, to: *klp*, caus.; *ldhā + vi*;
 ordained: *vihita*.
 order, to: *jñā + ā*, caus.
 other; *anya*; *itara*, *apara*.
 outskirts: *sīman* f.
 overcome, to: *2pr*.
 overwhelm, to: *vṛs*.
 own, one's own: *sva*.
 ox: *anaḍuh* m.
 pair: *yugma* n.
 palace: *prāsāda* m.
 parents: *pitṛ*, m. du.
 part: *bhāga* m.
 path: *mārga* m.; *panthan* m.
 peak: *çikhara* m.
 pearl: *muktā* f.
 peasant: *kr̥ṣivāla* m.
 penance: *tapas* n.; *prāyaçcitta* n.
 people: *jana*, pl.; *loka*, s. and pl.
 perform, to: *sidh*, caus.; *car*;
car + sam ā; (a sacrifice) *tan*.
 perfume: *gandha* m.
 perish, to: *naç + vi*.
 pestle: *musala* m. n.
 pierce, to: *vyadh*.

pilgrimage: *tīrthayātrā* f.
 pious: *sādhu*.
 place, to: *ldhā*; *dhā + sam-ā*.
 place: *pada* n.; *deça* m.
 plan: *abhiprāya* m.
 plant, to: *ruh*, caus.
 play, to: *dīv*.
 please, to: *ruc*.
 pleasure: *sukha* n.; with p., pleas-
 antly: *sukhena*; (wish, choice)
icchā f.; *kāma* m.; at p.: *sve-*
cchayā.
 plough: *lāṅgala* n.; *hala* m. n.
 plough, to: *kr̥ṣ*.
 plunder, to: *luṅṭh*; *hṛ*; *lup*.
 poem: *kāvya* n.
 poet: *kavi* m.
 point out, to; *diç*.
 polluted, to be: *duç*.
 poor: *daridra*.
 possessions: *dhana* n.
 post, sacrificial: *yūpa* m.
 pot: *ghaṭa* m.
 pound, to: *piç*.
 pour, to: *hu*.
 power: *bala* n.
 powerful: *balin*; *balavant*.
 praise, song of p.: *stuti* f.; *stotra* n.
 praise, to: *çaṅs*; *stu*.
 pray for, to: *arth*.
 prescription: *ādeça* m.
 presence: *samīpa* n.
 previous; *pūrva*.
 priest: *ṛtvij* m.
 prince: *kumāra* m.
 property: *vasu* n.; *dhana* n.
 prosperity: *bhūti* f.
 protect, to: *rakṣ*; *2pā*; *pā*, caus.
 protection; *çaraṇa* n.

protector: *rakṣitr* m.
 punish, to: *danḍaya*; *çās*.
 punishment: *danḍa* m.
 put, to: *sthā*, caus.; *ldhā*; *yuj*
 + *ni*.

quadruped: *catuspad*.
 quarter: *pāda* m.; (of the sky)
diç f.
 queen: *devī* f.; *rājñī* f.; *mahiṣī* f.

rain: *vṛṣṭi* f.
 rain, to (give rain): *vṛṣ*.
 raise, to (the voice): *sr̥j + ud*.
 ray: *pāda* m.; *raçmi* m.
 reach, to: *labh*; *āp + pra*.
 read, to: *i + adhi*; (aloud) *paṭh*;
vac, caus.
 realm: *rājya* n.
 receive, to: *labh*; *grah*; *grah*
 + *prati*; *ldā + ā*.
 recitation (private): *svādhyāya* m.
 recite, to: *paṭh*; (tell) *kath*.
 reckon, to: *gaṇaya*.
 recompense, to: *1kr + prati*.
 reduced (in fortune): *kṣīṇa*.
 region: *diç* f.; *deça* m.
 rein: *raçmi* m.
 rejoice, to: *tuç*; *mud*.
 remember, to: *smṛ*.
 restrain, to: *grah + ni*.
 return, to: *vṛt + ni*.
 rice: *tanḍula* m.
 reverence, to: *nam*; *pūj*; *ās + upa*.
 reward: *phala* n.
 rich: *dhanin*; *çrīmant*; *vasumant*
 (comp. and sup. sometimes *va-*
sīyas, *vasiṣṭha*).

riches: *dhana* n.; *vasu* n.; *çrī* f.;
rāi m.
 righteousness: *satya* n.
 right (subst.): *dharma* m.
 Rigveda: *ṛgveda* m.; *ṛcas* f. pl.
 rise, to (of sun, etc.): *gam + ud*;
i + ud.
 river: *nadī* f.; *sarit* f.
 road: *mārga* m.; *panthan* m.
 rob, to: *muç*, *luṅṭh*.
 root: *mūla* n.
 rub, to: *mṛj*; *mṛj*, caus.
 royal: *rāja*-, in cpd.
 rule, to: *sthā + adhi*; *iç*.
 run, to: *dhāv*; *dru*.
 running: *dhāvana* n.

sacrament: *sam̐skāra* m.
 sacrifice, to: *yaj*; (for some one)
yaj, caus.
 sacrifice: *yajña* m.
 sacrificial formula: *yajus* n.
 sage: *ṛṣi* m.
 sake of, for the: *artha* in cpd.
 (cf. 375, 3).
 salt: *lavaṇa* n.
 salvation: *muktī* f.; *bhūti* f.; *hita* n.
 satiated: *tr̥pta*.
 satisfy, to: *tr̥p*, caus.; (oneself)
tr̥p.
 save, to: *hr + ud*.
 Savitar: *savitṛ* m.
 say, to: *vad*; *vac*; *brū*.
 scatter, to: *2kr*.
 scholar: *çīṣya*: (learned man)
paṇḍita m.
 science: *çāstra* n.
 sea: *udadhi* m.; *samudra* m.
 seat oneself, to: *sad + ni*.

second: *dvitīya*.
 see, to: *paç*; *drç*; *ikç*; *ikç + pra*.
 seer: *ṛṣi* m.
 send, to: *sthā + pra*, caus.
 servant: *bhṛtya* m.; *bhṛtaka* m.
 serve: *sev*.
 set, to: (place) *ldhā*; (intr., of sun, etc.) *i + astam*; *gam + astam*.
 shade: *chāyā* f.
 she, etc.: *sā*, f. of *ta*.
 shine, to: *çubh*; *rāj*; *bhā + vi*.
 ship: *nāu* f.
 shoe: *upānah* f.
 show, to: *drç*, caus.
 shrewd: *paṭu*.
 shut, to: *ldhā + api*; *lṛ + sam*.
 sick: *vyādhitā*; *ruçṇa*.
 side: *pakṣa* m.
 sin: *pāpa* n.; *enas* n.
 sing, to: *2gā*.
 singing: *gīta* n.
 sip, to: *cam + ā*.
 sister: *svasṛ* f.
 sit, to: *sad*; *sad + ni*.
 situated, to be: *vṛt*.
 six: *ṣaṣ*.
 sixth: *ṣaṣṭha*.
 skilled: *paṭu*.
 sky: *div* f.; *diç* f. pl.; *ākāça* n.
 slave: *dāsa* m.; *dāsi* f.
 slay, to: *mṛ*, caus.; *han*.
 sleep, to: *svap*; *çī*.
 smell, to: *ghrā*.
 smite, to: *hr + pra*; *han + abhi*.
 so: *iti*; *evam*; *tathā*.
 soldier: *sāinika* m.
 some (pl.): *eka* pl.; some . . others: *ke cit . . ke cit*.
 sometimes: *kva cit*.

son: *putra* m.; *sūta* m.
 son-in-law: *jāmātr* m.
 song: *gir* f.; *gīta* n.; (of praise) *stotra* n.; *stuti* f.
 soul: *ātman* m.
 sow, to: *vap*.
 speak, to: *vad*; *vac*; *bhāç*.
 spear: *kunta* m.
 speech: *vāc* f.; *bhāçā* f.
 spoon: *juhū* f.
 stand, to (intr.): *sthā*.
 state, to: *brū*.
 steal, to: *cur*; *muç*; *luṅth*.
 steer: *go* m.
 stick: *daṇḍa* m.
 stone: *dr̥ṣad* f.; (precious) *maṇi* m.
 stop, to (tr.): *rudh*.
 strange (another's): *para*.
 street: *rathyā* f.; *mārga* m.
 strike, to: *taḍ*.
 strive, to: *yat*.
 strongest: *baliṣṭha*.
 study, to: *i + adhi* (mid.); *2as + abhi*.
 subject: *prajā* f.
 such: *īdrç*.
 suffering: *duḥkha* n.
 suffused: *ruddha*.
 suitable: *anurūpa*.
 summit: *çikhara* m.
 sun: *bhānu* m.; *āditya* m.
 survive, to: *çiç + ud*.
 sweet: *svādu*.
 swift: *āçu*.
 sword: *asi* m.
 take, to: *dā + ā*; *grah*; *grah + prati*.
 take place, to: *jan*; *bhū*

take refuge, to: *pad + pra*.
 tasteful: *rasavant*.
 tax: *kara* m.
 teach, to: *i + adhi*, caus.; *diç + upa*.
 teacher: *guru* m.; *ācārya* m.
 tear: *açru* n.; *bāçpa* m.
 tell, to: *kathaya*; *vad*.
 temple: *devakula* n.
 ten: *daça*.
 tend to, to: *kḷp*.
 terrify, to: *bhī*, caus.; *vij + ud*, caus.
 text-book: *çāstra* n.
 that: *ta*; *ayam*; *asāu*.
 then: *tadā*.
 there: *tatra*.
 thereupon: *tatas*.
 thief: *stena* m.; *cāura* m.
 think, to: *cint*; *man*; think on: *smṛ*; *dhyā*.
 third: *tṛtīya*.
 thirty: *triṅçat*.
 thirty-three: *trayastrīṅçat*.
 this: *ta*; *ayam*.
 thou: *tvam*.
 three: *tri*.
 threefold: *trivṛt*.
 thrice: *tris*.
 thus: *iti*; *evam*; *tathā*.
 time: *kāla* m.
 to-day: *adya*.
 to-morrow: *çvas*.
 tongue: *jihvā* f.
 torment, to: *pīḍ*; *vyath*, caus.
 touch, to: *sprç*.
 trade: *vyavahāra* m.; *vāṇijya*.
 travel, to: *vas + pra*; *sthā + pra* n. (mid.).

treasury: *koça* m.
 tree: *vṛkṣa* m.; *taru* m.
 tremble, to: *kamp*.
 true: *satya*; (faithful) *bhakta*.
 truth: *satya* n.
 twelfth: *dvādaça*.
 twelve: *dvādaça*.
 twenty-eight: *aṣṭaviṅçati*.
 twenty-seven: *saptaviṅçati*.
 twice: *dvīs*.
 twilight: *sandhyā* f.
 twine: *bandh*.
 two: *dva*.
 umbrella: *chattra* n.
 understand, to: *gam + ava*.
 unite, to (intr.): *gam + sam* (mid.).
 untruth: *anṛta* n.; *asatya* n.
 upaniṣad: *upaniṣad* f.
 useful, to be: *sev*.
 vassal: *sāmanta* m.
 Veda: *veda* m.
 verse: *çloka* m.; (of Rigveda) *ṛc* f.
 vessel: *pātra* n.
 victorious, to be: *ji*.
 victory: *jaya* m.
 view (opinion): *mati* f.; *mata* n.
 village: *grāma* m.
 virtue: *dharma* m.; *punya* n.
 visit, to: *gam + abhi*.
 voice: *vāc* f.; *gir* f.
 wagon: *ratha* m.
 warrior: *çatriya* m.
 wash, to: *kṣal*; *sprç*.
 water: *jala* n.; *vāri* n.; *ap* f. pl.
 wave: *vici* m.
 we: *vayam*.

wear, to: *dhṛ*, caus.; *bhṛ*.
 weary, to become: *ḡram*.
 weave, to: *granth*; *bandh*.
 wedding: *vivāha* m.
 weep, to: *rud*.
 west, western: *pratyañc*; the
 West: *praticī* f., sc. *diç*.
 what (rel.): *ya*.
 wheel: *cakra* n.
 when (rel.): *yadā*.
 when?: *kadā*.
 whence?: *kutas*.
 where (rel.): *yatra*.
 where?: *kva*; *kutra*.
 which (rel.): *ya*.
 which (of two)?: *katara*.
 white: *çveta*.
 whither?: *kva*; *kutra*.
 who (rel.): *ya*.
 who?: *ka*.
 whoever: *ya ka + api*, *cid* or
cana; often by rel. alone.
 whole: *kṛtsna*.
 why?: *kutas*; *kasmāt*.
 wicked: *pāpa*.
 wife: *bhāryā* f.; *nārī* f.; *patnī* f.
 win, to: *jī*.
 wind: *vāyu* m.; *vāta* m.

winter: *hemanta* m.
 wipe, to: *mṛj*; *mṛj + apa* or *pari*.
 wish, to: *iç*.
 with: *saha*, w. inst.; or by instr.
 alone.
 withered: *mlāna*.
 without: *vinā* (instr., acc.).
 witness: *sākṣin* m.
 wolf: *vṛka* m.
 woman: *nārī* f.; *vadhū* f.; *strī* f.;
jāyā f.
 woman-servant: *dāsī* f.
 wood: *kāṣṭha* n.; (forest) *vana* n.
 word: *vāc* f.; *çabda* m.
 work: *karman* n.; (literary) *grantha* m.
 world: *loka* m.; *jagat* n.; *bhuvana* n.
 world-spirit: *brāhman* n.
 worship, to: *pūj*.
 worthy: *sadṛça*.
 wound, to: *kṣan*.
 wreath: *mālā* f.; *sraçj* f.
 year: *sañvatsara* m.; *varça* m. n.
 yoke, to: *yuj*, caus.
 yonder: *tatra*.
 young: *yuvan*.

Appendix.

Hindu Names of Letters.

The Hindus call the different sounds, and the characters representing them, by the word *kāra* ('maker') added to the sound of the letter, if a vowel, or to the letter followed by *a*, if a consonant. Thus, *a* (both sound and character) is called *akāra*; *ū*, *ūkāra*; *k*, *kakāra*; and so on. But sometimes *kāra* is omitted, and *a*, *ū*, *ka*, etc., are used alone. The *r*, however, is never called *rakāra*, but only *ra* or *repha* ('snarl'). The *anusvāra* and *visarga* are called by these names alone.

Modern Hindu Accentuation of Sanskrit.

In the pronunciation of Sanskrit almost all Brāhmins employ, with insignificant variations, an ictus-accent, which is quite different from the older musical accent (*svāra*) described in Indian and European grammars, and employed nowadays exclusively in the recitation of the Veda. The older system, moreover, as marked in the Vedic texts, has been subjected to very considerable modifications by the Hindus in the traditional recitations of the Vedic schools.

The modern ictus-accent is weaker than that of English. The more important rules governing its use are as follows:

1. *a*. In primitive verbs and derivatives from them the root-syllable is usually accented. *b*. But the accent never goes further back than the fourth place, and seldom back of the third. It may rest on the third syllable only if the penult be short; on the fourth, only if both antepenult and penult be short; thus, *kāraṇam*, *kāraṇāt*, but *karaṇēna*; *bōdhati*, *kṣīpasi*, *nāçyatha*, but *bodhāvah*, *kṣīpāmah*, *naçyānti*; *dūhitā*, *dūhitaram*, but *dūhitṛṇām*.

2. Derivatives from nouns generally retain the accent of the

primitive, with the limitations given in 1. b.; thus, *rdñku*, *rdñkava*; *gārga*, *gārgyah*, but *gārgyāyañi*. A naturally short vowel in the penult, if followed by a group of consonants containing *y* or *v*, does not generally become long by position; thus, *prābala*, *prābalyam*; *ūkta*, *ūktavāt*.

3. In verbs and verbal derivatives joined with prepositions, in augmented and reduplicated forms, and sometimes in declensional forms, the accent is recessive, if the root or stem-syllable be short; thus, *āgamat*, *ānatam*, *anūṣṭhitam*, but *utkrīṣtam*, *nirūktam*; *āgamat*, *ākṣipat*, but *bibhārti*, *tuṣṭāva*, *jaḡāu*. Polysyllabic prepositions, when prefixed to other words, retain their own accent as secondary accent; thus, *ūpagūcchati*, *ūpagūmatām*.

4. In compounds, unless the first member be a monosyllabic word, each part generally retains its own accent, but that of the principal member is the strongest; thus, *rājapūruṣam*, *pārvataçikharākāram*; but *ūnmukham*, *diggajam*, *praçīṣyam*.

The division of syllables is much more apparent in Sanskrit than in English. In reading Sanskrit prose the Hindus generally drop into a sort of sing-song *recitativo*. Verses are always chanted.

